

# Xerox<sup>®</sup> C245, C255a, C303a

## Color Multifunction Printers

### User's Guide

## Copyright and trademarks

© 2026 Xerox Corporation. All rights reserved. Xerox® and the Xerox logo are trademarks of Xerox Corporation in the United States and/or other countries. Lexmark® is a trademark of Lexmark International, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Gmail, Android, Google Play, and Google Chrome are trademarks of Google LLC.

Macintosh, macOS, Safari, and AirPrint are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. iCloud is a service mark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Use of the Works with Apple badge means that an accessory has been designed to work specifically with the technology identified in the badge and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

Microsoft, Microsoft 365, Microsoft Edge, Outlook, and Windows are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies.

The Mopria™ word mark is a registered and/or unregistered trademark of Mopria Alliance, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. PCL is Hewlett-Packard Company's designation of a set of printer commands (language) and functions included in its printer products. This printer is intended to be compatible with the PCL language. This means the printer recognizes PCL commands used in various application programs, and that the printer emulates the functions corresponding to the commands.

PostScript is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Wi-Fi®, Wi-Fi Direct®, and Wi-Fi Protected Access® are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®. WPA™, WPA2™, and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

BR42450

## Contents

|                                                               |    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Copyright and trademarks .....                                | 2  |
| Safety information .....                                      | 8  |
| Conventions.....                                              | 8  |
| Product statements .....                                      | 8  |
| Learn about the printer .....                                 | 13 |
| Finding information about the printer.....                    | 13 |
| Finding the printer serial number.....                        | 14 |
| Printer configurations .....                                  | 15 |
| Using the control panel .....                                 | 16 |
| Adding applications to the home screen.....                   | 17 |
| Changing the language of the on-screen keyboard.....          | 17 |
| Colors of the indicator light .....                           | 17 |
| Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass.....    | 18 |
| Locating the security slot .....                              | 18 |
| Selecting paper .....                                         | 19 |
| Additional printer features and support.....                  | 25 |
| Set up, install, and configure.....                           | 27 |
| Selecting a location for the printer .....                    | 27 |
| Printer ports and socket .....                                | 28 |
| Xerox Easy Assist (XEA) .....                                 | 30 |
| Configuring the email SMTP settings.....                      | 34 |
| Configuring apps and solutions .....                          | 44 |
| Setting up the printer to fax .....                           | 45 |
| Loading paper and specialty media .....                       | 54 |
| Installing and updating software, drivers, and firmware ..... | 67 |
| Installing hardware options .....                             | 77 |
| Networking.....                                               | 82 |
| Secure the printer .....                                      | 86 |
| Erasing printer memory .....                                  | 86 |
| Erasing data from a storage drive.....                        | 86 |
| Restoring factory default settings.....                       | 86 |
| Statement of Volatility .....                                 | 87 |
| Print.....                                                    | 90 |
| Printing from a computer .....                                | 90 |
| Printing from a mobile device.....                            | 91 |
| Printing from a flash drive .....                             | 92 |
| Managing secure or confidential print jobs .....              | 93 |

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Releasing print jobs from Lexmark Cloud Services ..... | 96  |
| Printing from a Cloud Connector profile .....          | 96  |
| Printing a font sample list.....                       | 96  |
| Canceling a print job.....                             | 96  |
| Adjusting toner darkness .....                         | 96  |
| Copy .....                                             | 99  |
| Making copies.....                                     | 99  |
| Copying photos.....                                    | 99  |
| Copying on letterhead .....                            | 99  |
| Copying on both sides of the paper .....               | 100 |
| Reducing or enlarging copies.....                      | 100 |
| Collating copies.....                                  | 100 |
| Placing separator sheets between copies .....          | 101 |
| Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet.....        | 101 |
| Copying cards .....                                    | 101 |
| Creating a copy shortcut.....                          | 101 |
| Fax .....                                              | 104 |
| Sending a fax .....                                    | 104 |
| Creating a fax destination shortcut .....              | 104 |
| Changing the fax resolution .....                      | 104 |
| Adjusting the fax darkness.....                        | 105 |
| Printing a fax log.....                                | 105 |
| Blocking junk faxes .....                              | 105 |
| Forwarding a fax.....                                  | 105 |
| Scan .....                                             | 107 |
| Scanning to a computer.....                            | 107 |
| Creating an email shortcut .....                       | 107 |
| Scanning to email.....                                 | 107 |
| Scanning to an FTP server using a shortcut.....        | 108 |
| Scanning to a network folder using a shortcut .....    | 108 |
| Scanning to a flash drive .....                        | 109 |
| Scanning to a Cloud Connector profile.....             | 110 |
| Splitting a scan job .....                             | 110 |
| Printer menus.....                                     | 113 |
| Menu map.....                                          | 113 |
| Device.....                                            | 114 |
| Print .....                                            | 132 |
| Paper .....                                            | 142 |
| Copy.....                                              | 143 |
| Fax.....                                               | 147 |
| Email .....                                            | 164 |
| FTP.....                                               | 170 |
| USB Drive .....                                        | 173 |



|                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Network/Ports .....                             | 178 |
| Security .....                                  | 196 |
| Cloud Services .....                            | 204 |
| Reports .....                                   | 205 |
| Troubleshooting .....                           | 207 |
| Supplies Plan .....                             | 207 |
| Maintain the printer.....                       | 210 |
| Checking the status of parts and supplies ..... | 210 |
| Configuring supply notifications .....          | 210 |
| Setting up email alerts.....                    | 210 |
| Printing printer reports and logs.....          | 211 |
| Ordering parts and supplies.....                | 212 |
| Replacing parts and supplies.....               | 214 |
| Cleaning printer parts.....                     | 234 |
| Saving energy and paper.....                    | 243 |
| Moving the printer to another location.....     | 244 |
| Troubleshoot a problem.....                     | 247 |
| Print quality issues .....                      | 247 |
| Printer error codes.....                        | 268 |
| Paper jams.....                                 | 275 |
| Printing problems .....                         | 308 |
| Connectivity problems .....                     | 309 |
| Hardware options problems .....                 | 310 |
| Issues with supplies.....                       | 311 |
| Paper handling problems.....                    | 319 |
| Emailing problems .....                         | 321 |
| Faxing problems.....                            | 322 |
| Scanning problems.....                          | 324 |
| System problems .....                           | 330 |
| Color quality problems.....                     | 332 |
| Contacting customer support.....                | 334 |
| Recycling and disposal.....                     | 336 |
| All Countries.....                              | 336 |
| North America .....                             | 336 |
| European Union.....                             | 336 |
| Other Countries .....                           | 337 |
| Notices.....                                    | 339 |
| Product information.....                        | 339 |
| Edition and legal notices.....                  | 339 |
| Specifications.....                             | 340 |
| Environmental and sustainability notices .....  | 342 |
| Notices for fax products .....                  | 345 |
| Notices for wireless products.....              | 348 |

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| Class B device notices.....    | 351 |
| Other regulatory notices ..... | 353 |

# Safety information

This chapter contains

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| Conventions.....        | 8 |
| Product statements..... | 8 |

# 1. Safety information

## Conventions

**Note:** A *note* identifies information that could help you.

**Warning:** A *warning* identifies something that could damage the product hardware or software.

**WARNING (in full capitals):** A *WARNING* indicates a risk of death or serious injury if not avoided.

**CAUTION:** A *caution* indicates a potentially hazardous situation that could injure you.

Different types of caution statements include:

|                                                                                    |                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | <b>CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY</b><br>Indicates a risk of injury.                        |
|   | <b>CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD</b><br>Indicates a risk of electrical shock.                  |
|   | <b>CAUTION—HOT SURFACE</b><br>Indicates a risk of burn if touched.                    |
|  | <b>CAUTION—PINCH HAZARD</b><br>Indicates a risk of being caught between moving parts. |

## Product statements

|                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <b>CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY</b><br>To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.                                                                                                      |
|  | <b>CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY</b><br>To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.                                                                                                                                              |
|  | <b>CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY</b><br>Do not use this product with extension cords, multioutlet power strips, multioutlet extenders, or UPS devices. The power capacity of these types of accessories can be easily overloaded by a laser printer and may result in a risk of fire, property damage, or poor printer performance.  |
|  | <b>CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY</b><br>Only a Lexmark Inline Surge Protector that is properly connected between the printer and the power cord provided with the printer may be used with this product. The use of non-Lexmark surge protection devices may result in a risk of fire, property damage, or poor printer performance. |
|  | <b>CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY</b><br>To reduce the risk of fire, use only a 26 AWG or larger telecommunications (RJ-11) cord when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. For users in Australia, the cord must be approved by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.                       |
|  | <b>CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD</b><br>To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.                                                                                                                                                                                             |

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power cord, fax feature, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

Do not cut, twist, bind, crush, or place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not subject the power cord to abrasion or stress. Do not pinch the power cord between objects such as furniture and walls. If any of these things happen, a risk of fire or electrical shock results. Inspect the power cord regularly for signs of such problems. Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before inspecting it.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, make sure that all external connections (such as Ethernet and telephone system connections) are properly installed in their marked plug-in ports.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, if you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

If the printer weight is greater than 20 kg (44 lb), then it may require two or more people to lift it safely.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

When moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Make sure that all doors and trays are closed.
- Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer.
- If the printer has separate floor-standing optional trays or output options attached to it, then disconnect them before moving the printer.
- If the printer has a caster base, then carefully roll it to the new location. Use caution when passing over thresholds and breaks in flooring.
- If the printer does not have a caster base but is configured with optional trays or output options, then remove the output options and lift the printer off the trays. Do not try to lift the printer and any options at the same time.
- Always use the handholds on the printer to lift it.
- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer.
- Any cart used to move the hardware options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the options.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.

- Make sure that your fingers are not under the printer when you set it down.
- Make sure that there is adequate clearance around the printer.

|                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | <b>CAUTION—HOT SURFACE</b><br>The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.                                                                                                                                                                                |
|   | <b>CAUTION—PINCH HAZARD</b><br>To avoid the risk of a pinch injury, use caution in areas marked with this label. Pinch injuries may occur around moving parts, such as gears, doors, trays, and covers.                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <b>CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY</b><br>This product uses a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified in the <i>User's Guide</i> may result in hazardous radiation exposure.                                                                                                                           |
|   | <b>CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY</b><br>Do not use aerosol cleaners. Aerosol cleaners can cause explosions or fires when used on electromechanical equipment.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|   | <b>CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY</b><br>When handling cartridges, for example toner cartridges, avoid skin and eye contact. Eye contact with toner can cause irritation and inflammation. Do not attempt to disassemble the cartridge, which can increase the risk of skin or eye contact.                                                                 |
|  | <b>CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY</b><br>The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations. |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  <h2 style="display: inline;">WARNING</h2>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                       |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>INGESTION HAZARD:</b> This product contains a button cell or coin battery.</li> <li>• <b>DEATH</b> or serious injury can occur if ingested.</li> <li>• A swallowed button cell or coin battery can cause <b>Internal Chemical Burns</b> in as little as <b>2 hours</b>.</li> <li>• <b>KEEP</b> new and used batteries <b>OUT OF REACH</b> of <b>CHILDREN</b>.</li> <li>• <b>Seek immediate medical attention</b> if a battery is suspected to be swallowed or inserted inside any part of the body.</li> </ul> |  |

Remove and immediately recycle or dispose of used batteries according to local regulations and keep away from children. Do not dispose of batteries in household trash or incinerate. Even used batteries may cause severe injury or death. Call a local poison control center for treatment information.

Battery type: MS621

Nominal battery voltage: 3V

Do not force discharge, recharge, disassemble, heat above 60°C (140°F), or incinerate. Doing so may result in injury due to venting, leakage, or explosion resulting in chemical burns.

For the latest battery information, go to [https://www.xerox.com/downloads/usa/en/e/environment\\_batterydirectivematrix.pdf](https://www.xerox.com/downloads/usa/en/e/environment_batterydirectivematrix.pdf).

This product is designed, tested, and approved to meet strict global safety standards with the use of specific manufacturer's components. The safety features of some parts may not always be obvious. The manufacturer is not responsible for the use of other replacement parts. Refer service or repairs, other than those described in the user documentation, to a service representative. **SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.**

# Learn about the printer

This chapter contains

- Finding information about the printer ..... 13
- Finding the printer serial number ..... 14
- Printer configurations..... 15
- Using the control panel..... 16
- Adding applications to the home screen ..... 17
- Changing the language of the on-screen keyboard..... 17
- Colors of the indicator light..... 17
- Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass ..... 18
- Locating the security slot..... 18
- Selecting paper ..... 19
- Additional printer features and support ..... 25



## 2. Learn about the printer

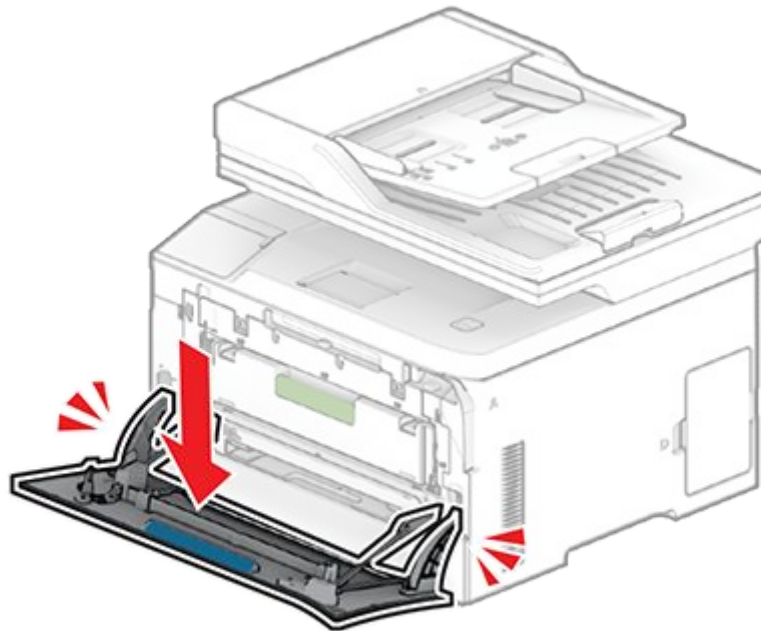
### Finding information about the printer

| What are you looking for?                                                                                                                                                | Find it here                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Initial setup instructions                                                                                                                                               | See the setup documentation that came with the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Printer software</li><li>• Print or fax driver</li><li>• Printer firmware</li><li>• Utility</li></ul>                            | Go to <a href="http://www.support.xerox.com">www.support.xerox.com</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Interactive <i>User's Guide</i></li><li>• How-to videos</li></ul>                                                                | Go to <a href="http://www.support.xerox.com">www.support.xerox.com</a> and search for your printer model.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Documentation</li><li>• Live chat support</li><li>• Email support</li><li>• Voice support</li></ul>                              | <p>Go to <a href="http://www.support.xerox.com">www.support.xerox.com</a>.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> Select your country or region, and then select your product to view the appropriate support site.</p> <p>Support contact information for your country or region can be found on the website or on the printed warranty that came with the printer.</p> <p>Have the following information ready when you contact customer support:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Place and date of purchase</li><li>• Machine type and serial number</li></ul> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Finding the printer serial number on page 14</a>.</p> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Safety information</li><li>• Regulatory information</li><li>• Warranty information</li><li>• Environmental information</li></ul> | <p>Warranty information varies by country or region:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>In the U.S.</b>—See the Statement of Limited Warranty included with the printer, or go to <a href="http://www.support.xerox.com">www.support.xerox.com</a>.</li><li>• <b>In other countries and regions</b>—See the printed warranty that came with the printer.</li></ul> <p><i>Safety, Regulatory, Recycling, and Disposal Reference Guide</i>—See the documentation that came with the printer or go to <a href="http://www.support.xerox.com">www.support.xerox.com</a>.</p>                                                                                                                                                          |

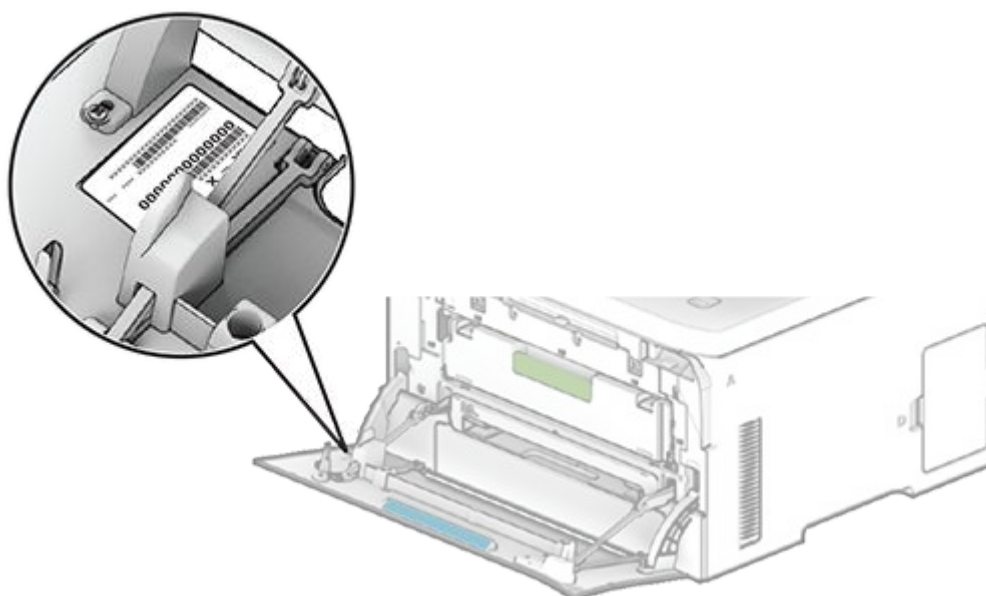
| What are you looking for?                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Find it here                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Xerox product environment, health, safety, and sustainability information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Carbon footprint</li> <li>• Circular economy</li> <li>• Chemical management</li> <li>• Health and safety</li> </ul> | <p>Go to <a href="https://www.xerox.com/en-us/about/ehs">https://www.xerox.com/en-us/about/ehs</a>.</p> <p>For country- or region-specific packaging information, go to <a href="https://www.xerox.com/en-us/about/ehs/reduce-waste/packaging-and-sorting">https://www.xerox.com/en-us/about/ehs/reduce-waste/packaging-and-sorting</a>.</p> |

## Finding the printer serial number

1. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down until it clicks into place.

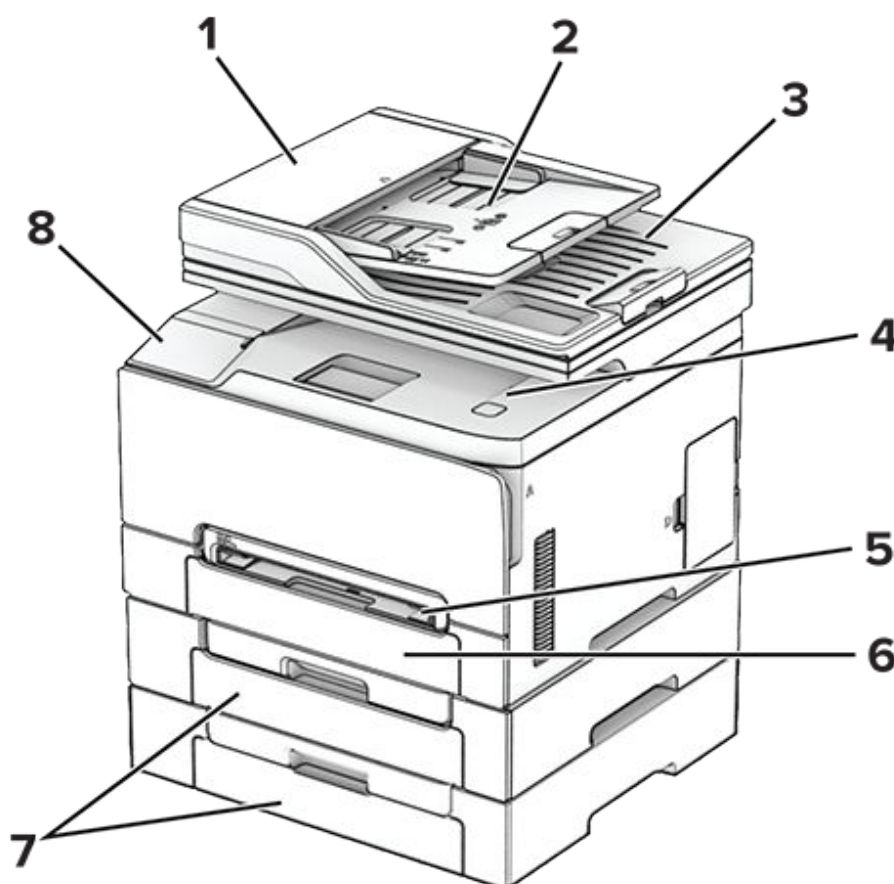


2. Locate the printer serial number behind the front door.



 **Note:** The serial number is 9, 10, or 13 digits long. Look for **SN** or **XSN** on the label.

## Printer configurations

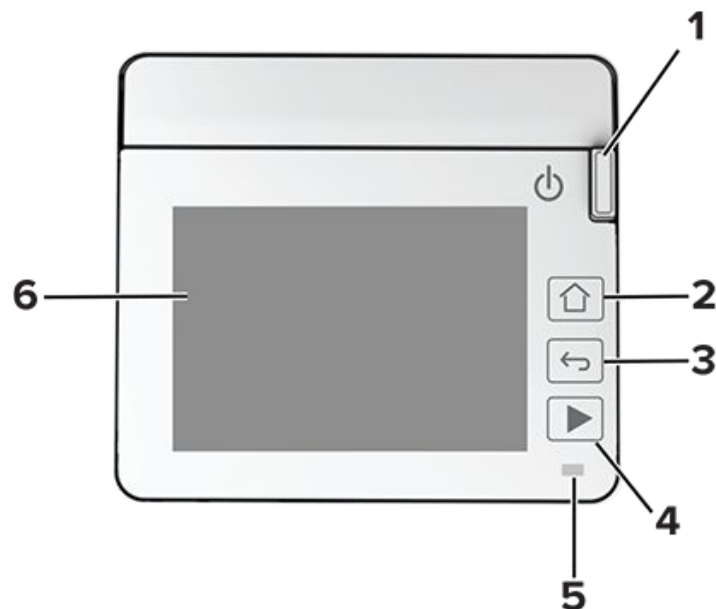


1

Automatic document feeder (ADF)

|   |                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | ADF tray                                                                                                                                                             |
| 3 | ADF bin                                                                                                                                                              |
| 4 | Standard bin                                                                                                                                                         |
| 5 | Manual feeder                                                                                                                                                        |
| 6 | Standard 250-sheet tray                                                                                                                                              |
| 7 | Optional 250-sheet trays<br> <b>Note:</b> Supported only in certain printer models. |
| 8 | Control panel                                                                                                                                                        |

## Using the control panel



| Control panel part |              | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1                  | Power button | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn on or turn off the printer.</li> <li> <b>Note:</b> To turn off the printer, press and hold the power button for five seconds.</li> <li>Set the printer to sleep mode.</li> <li>Wake the printer from sleep or hibernate mode.</li> </ul> |
| 2                  | Home button  | Go to the home screen.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

| Control panel part |                 | Function                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3                  | Back button     | Return to the previous screen.                                                                                                          |
| 4                  | Start button    | Start a job, depending on which mode is selected.                                                                                       |
| 5                  | Indicator light | Check the status of the printer. For more information, see <a href="#">Colors of the indicator light on page 17</a> .                   |
| 6                  | Display         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• View printer messages and supply status.</li> <li>• Set up and operate the printer.</li> </ul> |

## Adding applications to the home screen

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Visible Home Screen Icons**.
2. Select an application, and then select **Display**.

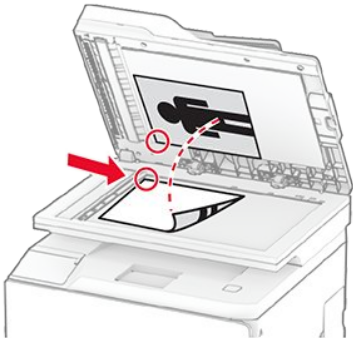
## Changing the language of the on-screen keyboard

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Preferences** › **Keyboard** › **Keyboard Type**.
2. Select a language.

## Colors of the indicator light

| Color of the indicator light              | Printer status                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Off                                       | The printer is off.                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Solid blue                                | The printer is ready.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Blinking blue                             | The printer is printing or processing data.                                                                                                                                                         |
| Blinking red                              | The printer requires user intervention.                                                                                                                                                             |
| Solid amber                               | The printer is in sleep mode.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Blinking amber                            | The printer is in deep sleep or hibernate mode.                                                                                                                                                     |
| Alternating between blue and blinking red | <p>The printer is not responding or showing anything on the display.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Indicator light is alternating between blue and blinking red on page 330</a>.</p> |

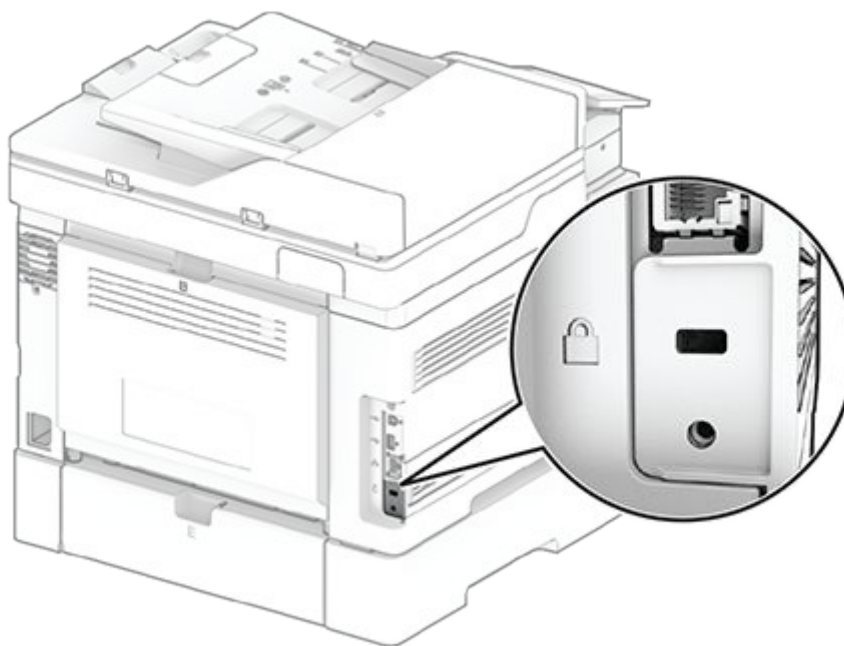
## Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass

| Automatic document feeder (ADF)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Scanner glass                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use the ADF for multiple-page or two-sided documents.</li><li>• Load an original document face up. For multiple-page documents, make sure to align the leading edge before loading.</li><li>• Make sure to adjust the ADF guides to match the width of the paper that you are loading.</li></ul> |  <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Use the scanner glass for single-page documents, book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).</li><li>• Place the document face down in the corner with the arrow.</li></ul> |

## Locating the security slot

 **Note:** This feature is available only in certain printer models.

The printer is equipped with a security lock feature. Attach a security lock compatible with most laptop computers in the location shown to secure the printer in place.



## Selecting paper

### PAPER GUIDELINES

Use the appropriate paper to prevent jams and help ensure trouble-free printing.

- Always use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading paper, know the recommended printable side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, types, or weights in the same tray.
- Do not use coated papers unless they are specifically designed for electrophotographic printing.

For more information on recommended paper, see the following:

- Recommended Media List (United States): <https://www.xeroxpaperusa.com/resources/recommended-media-list>
- Recommended Media List (Europe): <https://www.xerox.co.uk/en-gb/printer-supplies/recommended-printer-papers-and-specialty-media>

### PAPER CHARACTERISTICS

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Consider these factors before printing on them.

#### Weight

Trays can feed paper of varying weights. Paper lighter than 60 gsm (16 lb-bond) may not be stiff enough to feed properly, and may cause jams. For more information, see [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

#### Curl

Curl is the tendency for paper to curl at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl can occur after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped in hot, humid, cold, or dry conditions can contribute to paper curling before printing and can cause feeding problems.

#### Smoothness

Paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If paper is too rough, toner cannot fuse to it properly. If paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding or print quality issues. We recommend the use of paper with 50 Sheffield points.

#### Moisture content

The amount of moisture in paper affects both print quality and the printer ability to feed the paper correctly. Leave the paper in its original wrapper until you use it. Exposure of paper to moisture changes can degrade its performance.

Before printing, store paper in its original wrapper for 24 to 48 hours. The environment in which the paper is stored must be the same as the printer. Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.

## Grain direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either *grain long*, which runs the length of the paper or *grain short*, which runs the width of the paper. For recommended grain direction, see [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

## Fiber content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100 percent chemically treated pulped wood. This content provides the paper with a high degree of stability, resulting in fewer paper feeding problems and better print quality. Paper containing fibers such as cotton can negatively affect paper handling.

## UNACCEPTABLE PAPER

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated papers that are used to make copies without carbon paper. They are also known as carbonless papers, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper.
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the printer.
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser.
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than  $\pm 2.3$  mm ( $\pm 0.09$  in.). For example, optical character recognition (OCR) forms.

Sometimes, registration can be adjusted with a software app to print successfully on these forms.

- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, or thermal papers.
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers, or curled papers.
- Papers that fail EN12281:2002 (European).
- Paper weighing less than 60 gsm (16 lb-bond).
- Multiple-part forms or documents.

## USING RECYCLED PAPER

Xerox works to reduce the environmental impact of paper by providing customers choices when it comes to printing. One way we achieve this is by testing products to ensure recycled paper may be used—specifically, papers made with 30%, 50%, and 100% post-consumer recycled content. While no official standard exists for office equipment use of paper, Xerox uses European Standard EN 12281 as a minimum properties standard. To ensure breadth of testing, test paper includes 100% recycled papers from North America, Europe, and Asia, and tests are conducted at 8–80% relative humidity. Testing includes duplex printing. Office paper using renewable, recycled, or chlorine-free content may all be used.

## STORING PAPER

Use these paper storage guidelines to help avoid jams and uneven print quality:

- Store paper in its original wrapper in the same environment as the printer for 24 to 48 hours before printing.
- Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.
- For best results, store paper where the temperature is 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40 percent.



- Most label manufacturers recommend printing in a temperature range of 18 to 24°C (65 to 75°F) with relative humidity between 40 and 60 percent.
- Store paper in cartons, on a pallet or shelf, rather than on the floor.
- Store individual packages on a flat surface.
- Do not store anything on top of individual paper packages.
- Take paper out of the carton or wrapper only when you are ready to load it in the printer. The carton and wrapper help keep the paper clean, dry, and flat.

## SELECTING PREPRINTED FORMS AND LETTERHEAD

- Use grain long paper.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Avoid paper with rough or heavily textured surfaces.
- Use inks that are not affected by the resin in the toner. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based generally meet these requirements; latex inks might not.
- Print samples on preprinted forms and letterheads considered for use before buying large quantities. This action determines whether the ink in the preprinted form or letterhead affects print quality.
- When in doubt, contact your paper supplier.
- When printing on letterhead, load the paper in the proper orientation for your printer.

## SUPPORTED PAPER SIZES

 **Note:** The optional 250-sheet tray is supported only in certain printer models.

| Paper size                                                                            | Standard or optional 250-sheet tray | Manual feeder | Two-sided printing | Automatic document feeder |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>A4</b><br>210 x 297 mm<br>(8.27 x 11.7 in.)                                        | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| <b>A5 Portrait (Short-edge feed)<sup>1</sup></b><br>148 x 210 mm<br>(5.83 x 8.27 in.) | ✓                                   | ✓             | X                  | ✓                         |
| <b>A5 Landscape (Long-edge feed)<sup>2</sup></b><br>210 x 148 mm (8.27 x 5.83 in.)    | ✓                                   | ✓             | X                  | ✓                         |
| <b>JIS B5</b><br>182 x 257 mm<br>(7.17 x 10.1 in.)                                    | ✓                                   | ✓             | X                  | ✓                         |

| Paper size                                                     | Standard or optional 250-sheet tray | Manual feeder  | Two-sided printing | Automatic document feeder |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>A6</b><br>105 x 148 mm<br>(4.13 x 5.83 in.)                 | ✓                                   | ✓              | X                  | ✓                         |
| <b>1/3 A4</b><br>95 x 210 mm (3.7 x 8.3 in.)                   | ✓ <sup>3</sup>                      | ✓ <sup>3</sup> | X                  | X                         |
| <b>Statement</b><br>139.7 x 215.9 mm<br>(5.5 x 8.5 in.)        | ✓                                   | ✓              | X                  | ✓                         |
| <b>Letter</b><br>215.9 x 279.4 mm<br>(8.5 x 11 in.)            | ✓                                   | ✓              | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| <b>Folio</b><br>215.9 x 330.2 mm<br>(8.5 x 13 in.)             | ✓                                   | ✓              | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| <b>Oficio (Mexico)</b><br>215.9 x 340.4 mm<br>(8.5 x 13.4 in.) | ✓                                   | ✓              | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| <b>Legal</b><br>215.9 x 355.6 mm<br>(8.5 x 14 in.)             | ✓                                   | ✓              | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| <b>Executive</b><br>184.2 x 266.7 mm<br>(7.25 x 10.5 in.)      | ✓                                   | ✓              | X                  | ✓                         |
| <b>Hagaki</b><br>100 x 148 mm<br>(3.94 x 5.83 in.)             | ✓                                   | ✓              | X                  | X                         |
| <b>7 3/4 Envelope</b><br>98.4 x 190.5 mm<br>(3.875 x 7.5 in.)  | ✓                                   | ✓              | X                  | X                         |
| <b>9 Envelope</b><br>98.4 x 225.4 mm<br>(3.875 x 8.9 in.)      | ✓                                   | ✓              | X                  | X                         |

| Paper size                                                                                          | Standard or optional 250-sheet tray | Manual feeder    | Two-sided printing | Automatic document feeder |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>10 Envelope</b><br>104.8 x 241.3 mm<br>(4.12 x 9.5 in.)                                          | ✓                                   | ✓                | X                  | X                         |
| <b>DL Envelope</b><br>110 x 220 mm<br>(4.33 x 8.66 in.)                                             | ✓                                   | ✓                | X                  | X                         |
| <b>C5 Envelope</b><br>162 x 229 mm<br>(6.38 x 9.01 in.)                                             | ✓                                   | ✓                | X                  | X                         |
| <b>B5 Envelope</b><br>176 x 250 mm<br>(6.93 x 9.84 in.)                                             | ✓                                   | ✓                | X                  | X                         |
| <b>Monarch</b><br>98.425 x 190.5 mm<br>(3.875 x 7.5 in.)                                            | ✓                                   | ✓                | X                  | X                         |
| <b>Other Envelope</b><br>98.4 x 162 mm<br>(3.87 x 6.38 in.) to<br>176 x 250 mm<br>(6.93 x 9.84 in.) | ✓                                   | ✓                | X                  | X                         |
| <b>Universal</b>                                                                                    | ✓ <sup>4,7</sup>                    | ✓ <sup>4,7</sup> | ✓ <sup>5</sup>     | ✓ <sup>6</sup>            |

## SUPPORTED PAPER TYPES

 **Note:** The optional 250-sheet tray is supported only in certain printer models.

<sup>1</sup> When running on short-edge feed, A5 is treated as narrow paper.

<sup>2</sup> The default support is long-edge feed.

<sup>3</sup> Feeding performance may vary and should be evaluated on a case-by-case basis to ensure optimal functionality.

<sup>4</sup> Support paper sizes ranging from 94 x 148 mm (3.7 x 5.83 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).

<sup>5</sup> Support paper sizes ranging from 210 x 279 mm (8.27 x 11 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).

<sup>6</sup> Support paper sizes ranging from 105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).

<sup>7</sup> Feeding performance for widths smaller than 98 mm or 3.86 in. may vary and should be evaluated on a case-by-case basis to ensure optimal functionality.

| Paper type     | Standard or optional 250-sheet tray | Manual feeder | Two-sided printing | Automatic document feeder |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| Plain paper    | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| Card stock     | ✓                                   | ✓             | X                  | X                         |
| Transparencies | X                                   | X             | X                  | X                         |
| Recycled       | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| Glossy         | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| Heavy Glossy   | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | X                         |
| Labels         | ✓                                   | ✓             | X                  | X                         |
| Vinyl Labels   | X                                   | X             | X                  | X                         |
| Bond           | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| Envelope       | ✓                                   | ✓             | X                  | X                         |
| Rough Envelope | ✓                                   | ✓             | X                  | X                         |
| Letterhead     | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| Preprinted     | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| Colored Paper  | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| Light Paper    | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| Heavy Paper    | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | X                         |
| Rough Cotton   | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | ✓                         |
| Custom Type    | ✓                                   | ✓             | ✓                  | ✓                         |

## SUPPORTED PAPER WEIGHTS



### Notes

- The optional 250-sheet tray is supported only in certain printer models.
- For Hagaki and A6, the manual feeder can support up to 209 gsm. Heavier weight must be tested for acceptability.

| Standard 250-sheet tray       | Manual feeder                 | Two-sided printing            | Optional 250-sheet tray       | Automatic document feeder    |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 60–162 gsm<br>(16–43 lb-bond) | 60–200 gsm<br>(16–53 lb-bond) | 60–105 gsm<br>(16–28 lb-bond) | 60–200 gsm<br>(16–53 lb-bond) | 60–90 gsm<br>(16–24 lb-bond) |

## Additional printer features and support

### SUPPORTED FLASH DRIVES AND FILE TYPES

#### Flash drives

- Flash drives that support USB 2.0 or lower.
- Flash drives that support a New Technology File System (NTFS) or the File Allocation Table (FAT32) file system.

#### File types

| Documents                                                                                                                                                       | Images                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• PDF (version 2.0 or earlier)</li><li>• Microsoft file formats (DOC, DOCX, XLS, XLSX, PPT, PPTX)</li><li>• PRN</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• JPEG or JPG</li><li>• TIFF or TIF</li><li>• GIF</li><li>• BMP</li><li>• PNG</li><li>• PCX</li><li>• DCX</li></ul> |

# Set up, install, and configure

This chapter contains

- Selecting a location for the printer..... 27
- Printer ports and socket..... 28
- Xerox Easy Assist (XEA)..... 30
- Configuring the email SMTP settings..... 34
- Configuring apps and solutions..... 44
- Setting up the printer to fax..... 45
- Loading paper and specialty media..... 54
- Installing and updating software, drivers, and firmware ..... 67
- Installing hardware options ..... 77
- Networking ..... 82

### 3. Set up, install, and configure

#### Selecting a location for the printer

- Leave enough room to open trays, covers, and doors and to install hardware options.
- Set up the printer near an electrical outlet.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

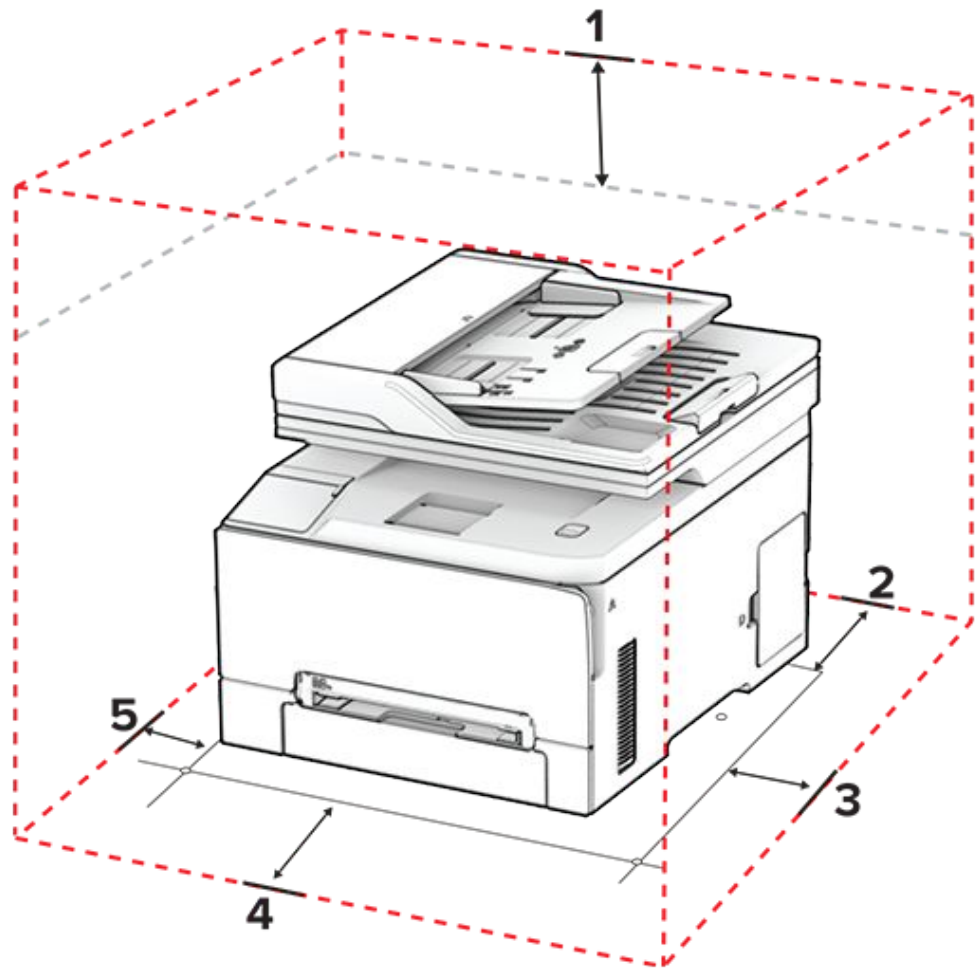
**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.

- Make sure that airflow in the room meets the latest revision of the ASHRAE 62 standard or the CEN Technical Committee 156 standard.
- Provide a flat, sturdy, and stable surface.
- Keep the printer:
  - Clean, dry, and free of dust.
  - Away from stray staples and paper clips.
  - Away from the direct airflow of air conditioners, heaters, or ventilators.
  - Free from direct sunlight and humidity extremes.
- Observe the recommended temperatures and avoid fluctuations:

|                     |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Ambient temperature | 10 to 32.2°C (50 to 90°F)   |
| Storage temperature | 15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F) |

- Allow the following recommended amount of space around the printer for proper ventilation:



|   |            |                 |
|---|------------|-----------------|
| 1 | Top        | 305 mm (12 in.) |
| 2 | Rear       | 102 mm (4 in.)  |
| 3 | Right side | 76 mm (3 in.)   |
| 4 | Front      | 76 mm (3 in.)   |
| 5 | Left side  | 76 mm (3 in.)   |

## Printer ports and socket



### CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power cord, fax feature, or telephone, during a lightning storm.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

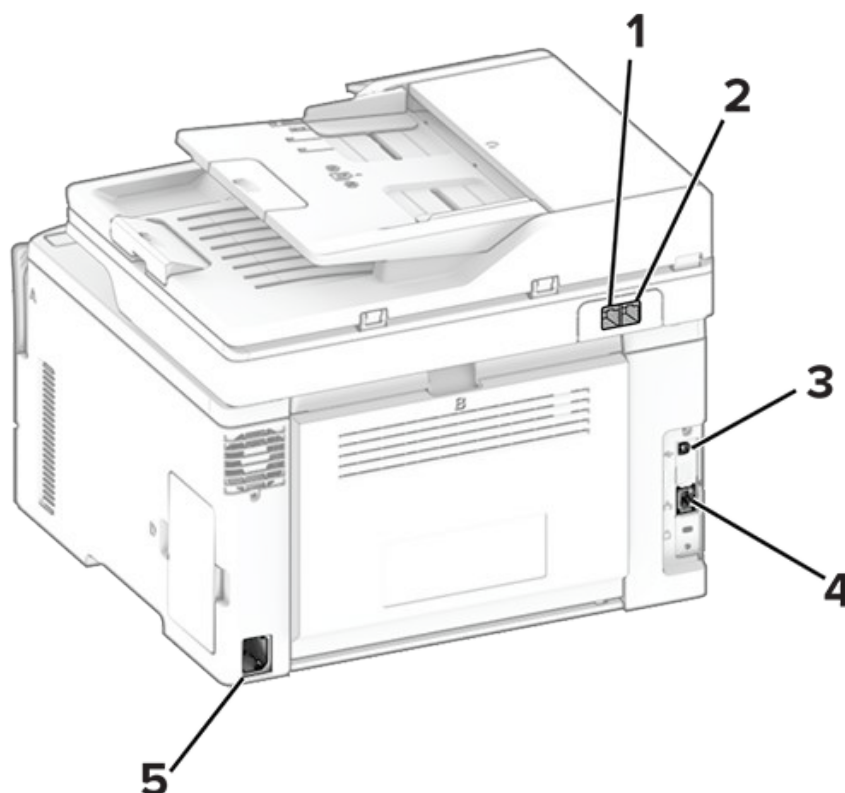


**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To reduce the risk of fire, use only a 26 AWG or larger telecommunications (RJ-11) cord when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. For users in Australia, the cord must be approved by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

**Warning—Potential Damage**

To avoid loss of data or printer malfunction, do not touch the USB cable, any wireless network adapter, or the printer in the areas shown while actively printing.



| Printer port |                                                                                                                                                         | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1            | LINE port<br> <b>Note:</b> Available only in certain printer models. | Connect the printer to an active telephone line through a standard wall jack (RJ-11), DSL filter, or VoIP adapter, or any other adapter that allows you to access the telephone line to send and receive faxes.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> To enable manual fax in models that have only a LINE port, use a corded fax splitter. |

| Printer port |                                                                                                                                                      | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2            | EXT port<br> <b>Note:</b> Available only in certain printer models. | Connect more devices (telephone or answering machine) to the printer and the telephone line. Use this port if you do not have a dedicated fax line for the printer and if this connection method is supported in your country or region. |
| 3            | USB printer port                                                                                                                                     | Connect the printer to a computer.                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 4            | Ethernet port                                                                                                                                        | Connect the printer to a network.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 5            | Power cord socket                                                                                                                                    | Connect the printer to a properly grounded electrical outlet.                                                                                                                                                                            |

## Xerox Easy Assist (XEA)

### XEROX® EASY ASSIST (XEA)

The Xerox Easy Assist app lets you manage your printer from your mobile device. With the app, you can:

- Set up your new printer quickly.
- Manage printer settings and configuration.
- View supply alerts and order supplies.
- Get live troubleshooting support.

To install the Xerox Easy Assist app, scan the QR code or search for the app in the Apple App Store or Google Play Store. There are two types of XEA QR codes:

- **QR Code to acquire the XEA app**—Scan this QR Code with your mobile device to install the Xerox Easy Assist app for the first time. You can find the QR Code on the printer packaging or in the *Setup Sheet* that came with the printer.
- **QR Code to connect your mobile device to the printer**—Use this QR Code to set up a wireless connection between your mobile device and the printer (for example, Wi-Fi Direct). On printers with a touchscreen interface, you can find this QR Code on the control panel during the Install Wizard. The QR Code contains all the information needed to connect your mobile device and printer without entering any technical details. To connect, scan the QR Code using the Xerox Easy Assist app. For more information, see [Connecting Xerox Easy Assist app to already installed printers on page 33](#).

If the printer has network connection, you can connect to the XEA app in your mobile device by typing the IP address of the printer.

Primary features of the Xerox Easy Assist app:

- **Set up a new printer**

If you have the QR Code or IP Address, you can set up a new Xerox printer using the Xerox Easy Assist app. On the My Printers screen, tap **Add**, then select **Set Up Your New Printer** and follow the app instructions.

For more information, see [Adding multiple printers to the Xerox Easy Assist app on page 34](#).

- **Alerts**



The app notifies you of printer errors or issues. To view the error details, tap the icon.

- **Printer status**

Displays printer information such as readiness, toner level, and tray status. For more information, tap the



**Printer** icon. To reorder toner, select the icon, and then tap **Reorder**.

- **Order supplies**

Order parts and supplies through the app. If toner is low, tap **Supplies**. You can add your own supplier if not listed:

1. Tap **Add Supplier** when prompted.
2. Enter details in **Device Settings** › **Supplier Profile**
3. After setup, tap **Buy** to visit the supplier web page.

**Xerox Retail Store** is the default supplier. You can also view the **Supplies Plan** and **Supplies Log** in the **Order Supplies** page.

- **Print**

Print directly from the app. Select your printer, tap **Print**, choose the document, and confirm.

- **Device settings**

You can view and edit printer settings in the **Device Settings** tab. If you did not set a password during setup, you must create one to access or modify settings. The **Device Settings** tab includes:

- **About**
- **Language**
- **Wi-Fi Setup**
- **Measurements**
- **Date & Time**
- **Sound**
- **Power Saver**
- **Supplier Profile**
- **Email**
- **Fax**
- **Admin Password**

- **Support center**

Use the **Support Center** in the Xerox Easy Assist app to request help and find solutions for printer-related issues. Available services include:

- **Printer's Website**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center** › **Printer's Website** to view full printer configuration and access the printer web page. The **Additional Printer Settings** page also includes **Share Link** to email the printer IP address and other details.
- **Chat**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center** › **Chat** to connect with a Xerox Support chatbot.
- **Support Website**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center** › **Support Website** to access the official website for product support and resources.

- **Print Driver**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center › Print Driver** to download print and scan drivers. Enter your email in the **Email** field, tap **+** to add it, and the app sends a Quick Link for driver installation.
  - **Print Test Page**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center › Print Test Page** to print a test page and confirm settings.
  - **Product Registration**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center › Product Registration** to access the registration webpage for your printer.
  - **Sustainability**—Select your printer, and then navigate to **Support Center › Sustainability** to access **Xerox Sustainability Efforts**, including waste management, health and safety data, and other initiatives.
- **Remove a printer**

To remove a printer from the Xerox Easy Assist app, select the printer, and then tap the printer icon. At the bottom of Printer Status, tap **Remove From My Printers**.

## PRIOR TO INSTALLING THE PRINTER: INITIAL SET UP WITH THE XEROX EASY ASSIST APP

To complete the initial setup and install the Xerox Easy Assist app for the first time, do the following:

1. Turn on the printer.
2. Select your display language and country or region, and then select **Next**.
3. Select **Use Phone**.
4. Select **Download**, and then scan the QR code on the control panel using your mobile device.
5. Install the app on your mobile device.
6. Select **Next Get Connected**, and then select **Show QR Code**.
7. Open the app and accept the Privacy Statement and End-User License Agreement (EULA) by checking both boxes. Tap **Continue**.



**Note:** The Xerox Easy Assist app provides instructions for unpacking your printer. To watch an unpacking video, scan the QR code on the packaging. You can also refer to the setup sheet that came with your printer.

8. To add a new printer on the app, navigate to **Add Printer › Set Up Your New Printer**.
9. Select your printer model from the list.
10. Tap **I've unboxed my printer**.
11. Tap **Scan QR Code**, and then tap **I'm ready to scan**.
12. Scan the QR code on the printer control panel.
13. The Wi-Fi Direct Name of the printer appears. Tap **Connect**.
14. Tap **Continue to printer setup**.
15. Using the Xerox Easy Assist app, configure the general settings.
16. To complete the initial setup in the app, enter the required printer information, and then tap **Complete Setup**.

After completing the setup, you can use the Xerox Easy Assist app to:

- Add another printer
- Check printer status
- Order supplies
- Download print and scan drivers
- Print
- Scan
- Access troubleshooting support
- Access the printer website or Embedded Web Server
- View Environment, Health, and Safety information
- Remove a printer from the XEA app My Printers list

For more information on the Xerox Easy Assist app features, see [Xerox® Easy Assist \(XEA\) on page 30](#).

## CONNECTING XEROX EASY ASSIST APP TO ALREADY INSTALLED PRINTERS

To use the Xerox Easy Assist (XEA) app for a printer that is already installed and connected to your network, you can connect through QR code or IP address.

Before you begin, make sure that the printer and mobile device are connected to the same network.

### Connecting through QR Code

1. Download the Xerox Easy Assist (XEA) app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. Tap **Add Printer**, and then tap **Connect to an Existing Printer**.
3. The app searches for printers on your network. To connect through QR Code, tap **Skip**, and then select your printer model from the list of valid printers.
4. Tap **Scan QR code**, and then tap **I'm Ready to Scan**.



5. On the printer control panel, select .
6. From the Control Center, select **Xerox Easy Assist**.
7. Select **Show QR Code**.
8. Scan the QR Code using the XEA app and follow the on-screen instructions.

### Connecting through IP address

1. Download the Xerox Easy Assist (XEA) app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. Tap **Add Printer**, and then tap **Connect to an Existing Printer**.
3. The app searches for printers on your network. To connect through QR Code, tap **Skip**, and then select your printer model from the list of valid printers.
4. Tap **Enter IP Address**, and then tap **Enter IP Address**.



**Note:** You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.

5. Enter the IP Address, tap **OK**, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

## ADDING MULTIPLE PRINTERS TO THE XEROX EASY ASSIST APP

If your printer is already set up on your network and the initial setup is complete, you can add additional printers to the My Printers list in the XEA app. The app lets you view printer status, install drivers, and access Chatbot support. To add printers on the same network:

1. Open the XEA app on your mobile device.

2. Tap , and then tap **My Printers**.

3. Tap **Add**.

4. Select **Connect to Existing Printer**. You can add a printer using any of the following methods:

- **QR Code**

Use the XEA app scanner to scan the printer QR code. Tap **Scan QR Code** in the app. For more information, see [Connecting Xerox Easy Assist app to already installed printers on page 33](#).

- **IP Address**

Add the printer manually by entering its IP address. Tap **IP Address**, enter the printer IP address, then tap **OK**. For more information, see [Connecting Xerox Easy Assist app to already installed printers on page 33](#).

- **Finding the Nearby Network Printers**

When your mobile device is connected to the same wireless or wired network as the printer, the app automatically searches for printers.

- If the app finds the printer, you can select it and add it directly.
- If the app does not find the printer, you can still add it manually using the IP address.



**Note:** If the printer and mobile device fail to communicate, ensure both are connected to the same network.

## Configuring the email SMTP settings

Configure the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) settings to send a scanned document through email. The settings vary with each service provider. For more information, see [Email service providers](#).

Before you begin, make sure that the printer is connected to a network and the network is connected to the Internet.

## USING THE EMBEDDED WEB SERVER

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- Notes**

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** › **Email**.

3. Configure the email settings. For more information, see [Email service providers](#).



- For email service providers that are not on the list, contact your provider and ask for the settings.
- For Microsoft 365 or Outlook Live email service provider, you must register your printer to OAuth 2.0 Authentication. For more information, see [Setting up OAuth 2.0 Authentication for Email Server using the Embedded Web Server](#).

4. Click **Save**.

## SETTING UP OAUTH 2.0 AUTHENTICATION FOR EMAIL SERVER USING THE EMBEDDED WEB SERVER

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** > **Email**.
3. Click **Set Up OAuth 2 for Email Server**, and then click **Register**.
4. Go to <https://microsoft.com/devicelogin>.
5. Enter the code that was generated in the Embedded Web Server.
6. Log in to your Outlook account.
7. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## USING THE EMAIL SETUP WIZARD

Before using the wizard, make sure that the printer firmware is updated. For more information, see the **Updating firmware** section.



- These instructions apply only to certain printer models.
- Setting up the SMTP settings using the email setup wizard is not applicable for OAuth 2.0 Authentication.

1. From the control panel, select **Email**.
2. Select **Set up Now**, type your email address and then select **Next**.
3. Type the password, and then select **Done**.

 **Notes**

- Depending on your email service provider, type your account password, app password, or authentication password. For more information on the password, see [Email service providers](#), and then look for Device Password.
- If your provider is not listed, then contact your provider and ask for the **Primary SMTP Gateway**, **Primary SMTP Gateway Port**, **Use SSL/TLS**, and **SMTP Server Authentication** settings. Proceed with the setup after getting the settings.

4. Select **Next**.
5. Configure the settings, and then select **Next**.
6. Select **Test Setup**.

## USING THE SETTINGS MENU

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Email** › **Email Setup**.
2. Configure the email settings. For more information, see [Email service providers](#).



**Note:** If your service provider is not listed, then contact your provider.

## EMAIL SERVICE PROVIDERS

Use the following table to determine the SMTP settings of your service provider.

 **Notes**

- If you encounter errors using the settings provided, then contact your service provider.
- If your service provider is not listed, then contact your provider.

- [AOL Mail](#)
- [Comcast Mail](#)
- [Gmail](#)
- [iCloud Mail](#)
- [Mail.com](#)
- [NetEase Mail \(mail.126.com\)](#)
- [NetEase Mail \(mail.163.com\)](#)
- [NetEase Mail \(mail.yeah.net\)](#)
- [Outlook Live or Microsoft 365](#)
- [QQ Mail](#)
- [Sina Mail](#)
- [Sohu Mail](#)
- [Yahoo! Mail](#)
- [Zoho Mail](#)

### AOL Mail



| Setting                     | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.aol.com                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Reply Address               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Device UserID               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Device Password             | App password<br> <b>Note:</b> To create an app password, go to the <a href="#">AOL Account Security</a> page, log in to your account, and then click <b>Generate app password</b> . |

#### Comcast Mail

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.comcast.net            |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |
| Device UserID               | Your email address          |
| Device Password             | Account password            |

#### Gmail™

 **Note:** Make sure that two-step verification is enabled on your Google account. To enable two-step verification, go to the [Google Account Security](#) page, log in to your account, and then from the **Security & sign-in** section, enable **2-Step Verification**.

| Setting                   | Value          |
|---------------------------|----------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway      | smtp.gmail.com |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port | 587            |

| Setting                     | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Reply Address               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Device UserID               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Device Password             | App password<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To create an app password, go to <a href="https://myaccount.google.com/apppasswords">https://myaccount.google.com/apppasswords</a>.</li> <li>"App passwords" is available only if two-step verification is enabled.</li> </ul> |

#### iCloud Mail

 **Note:** Make sure that two-step verification is enabled on your account.

| Setting                     | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.mail.me.com                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Reply Address               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Device UserID               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Device Password             | App password<br><br> <b>Note:</b> To create an app password, go to the <a href="#">iCloud Account Management</a> page, log in to your account, and then from the <b>Security</b> section, click <b>Generate Password</b> . |

#### Mail.com

| Setting              | Value         |
|----------------------|---------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway | smtp.mail.com |

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |
| Device UserID               | Your email address          |
| Device Password             | Account password            |

NetEase Mail (mail.126.com)

 **Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the NetEase Mail home page, click **Settings** > **POP3/SMTP/IMAP**, and then enable either **IMAP/SMTP service** or **POP3/SMTP service**.

| Setting                     | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.126.com                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 465                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Reply Address               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Device UserID               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Device Password             | Authorization password<br><br> <b>Note:</b> The authorization password is provided when IMAP/SMTP service or POP3/SMTP service is enabled. |

NetEase Mail (mail.163.com)

 **Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the NetEase Mail home page, click **Settings** > **POP3/SMTP/IMAP**, and then enable either **IMAP/SMTP service** or **POP3/SMTP service**.

| Setting              | Value        |
|----------------------|--------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway | smtp.163.com |

| Setting                     | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 465                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Reply Address               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Device UserID               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Device Password             | Authorization password<br> <b>Note:</b> The authorization password is provided when IMAP/SMTP service or POP3/SMTP service is enabled. |

NetEase Mail (mail.yeah.net)

 **Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the NetEase Mail home page, click **Settings** > **POP3/SMTP/IMAP**, and then enable either **IMAP/SMTP service** or **POP3/SMTP service**.

| Setting                     | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.yeah.net                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 465                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Reply Address               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Device UserID               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Device Password             | Authorization password<br> <b>Note:</b> The authorization password is provided when IMAP/SMTP service or POP3/SMTP service is enabled. |

Outlook Live or Microsoft 365

| Setting              | Value (OAuth2.0 Authentication) |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway | smtp.office365.com              |

| Setting                     | Value (OAuth2.0 Authentication)                             |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                                                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                    |
| Reply Address               | The email address used to register OAuth 2.0 Authentication |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | OAuth2.0                                                    |
| User-Initiated Email        | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                 |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                 |
| Device UserID               | N/A                                                         |
| Device Password             | N/A                                                         |

 **Note:** For more setup options for business using Microsoft 365, go to the [Microsoft 365 help page](#).

#### QQ Mail

 **Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the QQ Mail home page, click **Settings > Account**, and then from the POP3/IMAP/SMTP/Exchange/CardDAV/CalDAV Service section, enable either **POP3/SMTP service** or **IMAP/SMTP service**.

| Setting                     | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.qq.com                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Reply Address               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Device UserID               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Device Password             | Authorization code<br><br> <b>Note:</b> To generate an authorization code, from the QQ Mail home page, click <b>Settings &gt; Account</b> . From the POP3/IMAP/SMTP/Exchange/CardDAV/CalDAV Service section, click <b>Generate authorization code</b> . |

#### Sina Mail

 **Note:** Make sure that the POP3/SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the Sina Mail home page, click **Settings** › **More settings** › **User-end POP/IMAP/SMTP**, and then enable POP3/SMTP service.

| Setting                     | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.sina.com                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Reply Address               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Device UserID               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Device Password             | Authorization code<br><br> <b>Note:</b> To create an authorization code, from the email home page, click <b>Settings</b> › <b>More settings</b> › <b>User-end POP/IMAP/SMTP</b> , and then enable <b>Authorization code status</b> . |

#### Sohu Mail

 **Note:** Make sure that the SMTP service is enabled on your account. To enable the service, from the Sohu Mail home page, click **Options** › **Settings** › **POP3/SMTP/IMAP**, and then enable either **IMAP/SMTP service** or **POP3/SMTP service**.

| Setting                     | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.sohu.com                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 465                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Reply Address               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Device UserID               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Device Password             | Independent password<br><br> <b>Note:</b> The independent password is provided when IMAP/SMTP service or POP3/SMTP service is enabled. |

## Yahoo! Mail

| Setting                     | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.mail.yahoo.com                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Reply Address               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Device UserID               | Your email address                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Device Password             | App password<br> <b>Note:</b> To create an app password, go to the <a href="#">Yahoo Account Security</a> page, log in to your account, and then click <b>Generate app password</b> . |

## Zoho Mail

| Setting                     | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | smtp.zoho.com               |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 587                         |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Required                    |
| Require Trusted Certificate | Disabled                    |
| Reply Address               | Your email address          |
| SMTP Server Authentication  | Login / Plain               |
| Device-Initiated Email      | Use Device SMTP Credentials |
| Device UserID               | Your email address          |

| Setting         | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Device Password | <p>Account password or app password</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For accounts with two-step verification disabled, use your account password.</li> <li>• For accounts with two-step verification enabled, use an app password. To create an app password, go to the <b>Zoho Mail Account Security</b> page, log in to your account, and then from the Application-Specific Passwords section, click <b>Generate New Password</b>.</li> </ul> |

## Configuring apps and solutions

### CONFIGURING BOOKMARKS

#### Creating bookmarks

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



#### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Bookmarks** › **Add Bookmark**, and then type a bookmark name.
3. Select an **Address** protocol type, and then do one of the following:
  - For HTTP and HTTPS, type the URL that you want to bookmark.
  - For HTTPS, make sure to use the host name instead of the IP address. For example, type **myWebsite.com/sample.pdf** instead of typing **123.123.123.123/sample.pdf**. Make sure that the host name also matches the Common Name (CN) value in the server certificate. For more information on obtaining the CN value in the server certificate, see the help information for your web browser.
  - For FTP, type the FTP address. For example, **myServer/myDirectory**. Enter the FTP port number. Port 21 is the default port for sending commands.
  - For SMB, type the network folder address. For example, **myServer/myShare/myFile.pdf**. Type the network domain name.
  - If necessary, select the **Authentication** type for FTP and SMB.



#### Notes

- The application supports the following file types: PDF, JPEG, and TIFF. Other file types such as DOCX and XLSX are supported in certain printer models.
- To limit access to the bookmark, enter a PIN.

4. Click **Save**.



## Creating folders

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Navigate to **Bookmarks > Add Folder**, and then type a folder name.



**Note:** To limit access to the folder, enter a PIN.

3. Click **Save**.

## CREATING A CLOUD CONNECTOR PROFILE

1. From the control panel, select **Cloud Connector**.

2. Select a cloud service provider.

3. Select **Create** or .

4. Type a unique profile name, and then select **Done**.



**Note:** We recommend creating a PIN to protect the profile.

5. Take note of the authorization code.



**Note:** The authorization code is valid only for 24 hours.

6. Open a web browser, and then go to <https://lexmark.cloud-connect.co>.

7. Select **Next**, and then enter the authorization code.

8. Select **Connect**, and then accept the Terms of Use.

9. Log in to your cloud service provider account.

10. Grant permissions.



**Note:** To complete the authorization process, open the profile within 72 hours.

## Setting up the printer to fax

### SUPPORTED FAX

| Printer model | Analog fax | etherFAX <sup>1</sup> | Native fax server (SMTP) | Integrated fax server (eSF App) <sup>2</sup> | Fax over IP (FoIP) <sup>2</sup> |
|---------------|------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Xerox® C245   | X          | ✓                     | ✓                        | X                                            | ✓                               |
| Xerox® C255a  | ✓          | ✓                     | ✓                        | X                                            | ✓                               |
| Xerox® C303a  | ✓          | ✓                     | ✓                        | X                                            | ✓                               |

<sup>1</sup> Needs a subscription. For more information, go to <https://www.etherfax.net/> or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

<sup>2</sup> Needs an installed license bundle. For more information, contact the place where you purchased the printer.

## SETTING UP THE FAX FUNCTION USING ANALOG FAX

### Notes

- This feature is available only in certain printer models.
- A fax card must be installed for the printer to use analog fax.
- Some connection methods are applicable only in some countries or regions.
- If the fax function is enabled and not fully set up, then the indicator light may blink red.
- If you do not have a TCP/IP environment, then use the control panel to set up analog fax.

### Warning—Potential Damage

To avoid loss of data or printer malfunction, do not touch cables or the printer in the area shown while actively sending or receiving a fax.



### Using the control panel

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **General Fax Settings**.
2. Configure the settings.

### Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

 **Notes**

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **General Fax Settings**.
3. Configure the settings.
4. Apply the changes.

## SETTING UP THE FAX FUNCTION USING ETHERFAX

 **Notes**

- The printer firmware must be updated to the latest version. For more information, see the **Printer firmware instructions** section.
- An appropriate license bundle must be installed in your printer. For more information, contact etherFAX.
- Make sure that you have registered your printer to the etherFAX portal. For more information, go to <https://www.etherfax.net/>.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

 **Notes**

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **General Fax Settings**.



**Note:** **Fax Setup** appears only if **Fax Mode** is set to **Fax**.

3. In the **Fax Name** field, type a unique name.
4. In the **Fax Number** field, enter the fax number that etherFAX provided.
5. From the **Fax Transport** menu, select **etherFAX**.

 **Notes**

- This menu shows up only when more than one fax transport is available.
- If the printer only has etherFAX installed, then it is automatically configured.

6. Apply the changes.

## SETTING UP THE FAX FUNCTION USING FAX SERVER

 **Notes**

- This feature lets you send fax messages to a fax service provider that supports email receiving.
- This feature supports outgoing fax messages only. To support fax receive, make sure that you have a device-based fax, such as analog fax, etherFAX, or Fax over IP (FoIP), configured in your printer.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** > **Fax**.
3. From the **Fax Mode** menu, select **Fax Server**, and then click **Save**.
4. Click **Fax Server Setup**.
5. In the **To Format** field, type **[#]@myfax.com**, where **[#]** is the fax number and **myfax.com** is the fax provider domain.



- If necessary, configure the **Reply Address**, **Subject**, or **Message** fields.
- To let the printer receive fax messages, enable the device-based fax receive setting. Make sure that you have a device-based fax configured.

6. Click **Save**.
7. Click **Fax Server Email Settings**, and then enable **Use Email SMTP Server**.



If the settings are not configured, then see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 34](#).

8. Apply the changes.

## SETTING UP FAX USING A STANDARD TELEPHONE LINE



**Note:** These instructions apply only to printers that have a fax card installed.



### CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power cord, fax feature, or telephone, during a lightning storm.



### CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

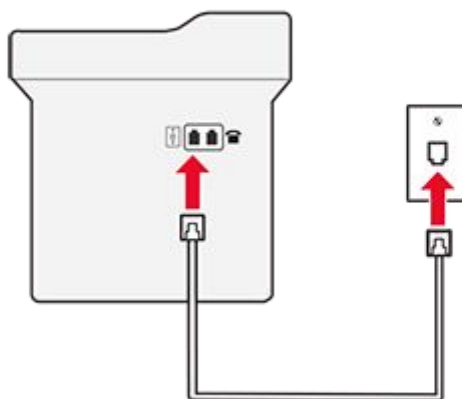
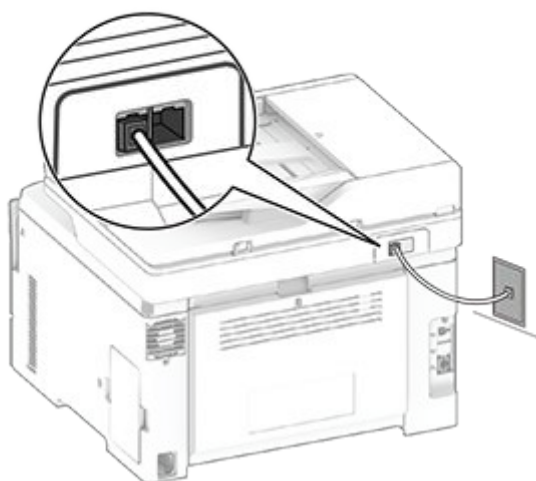
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To reduce the risk of fire, use only a 26 AWG or larger telecommunications (RJ-11) cord when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. For users in Australia, the cord must be approved by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

### Setup 1: Printer is connected to a dedicated fax line



1. Connect one end of the telephone cable to the line port of the printer.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.

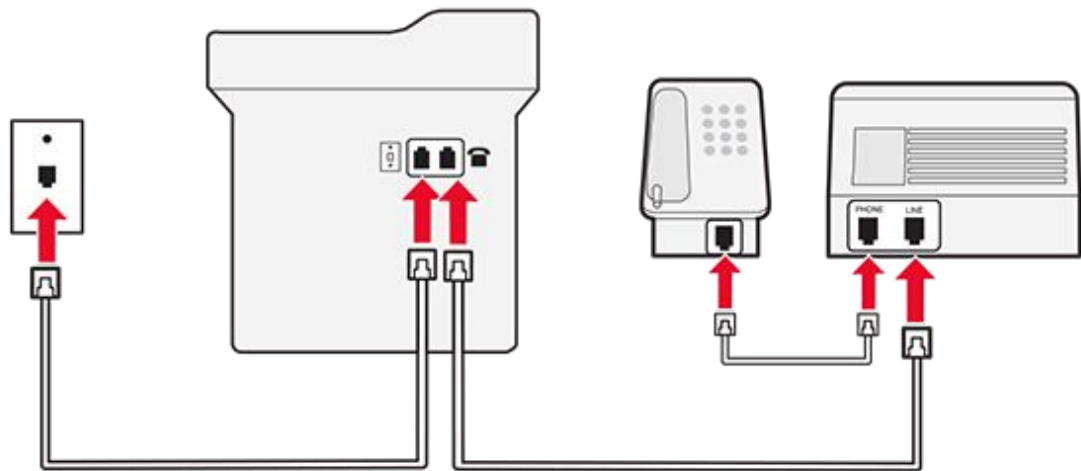
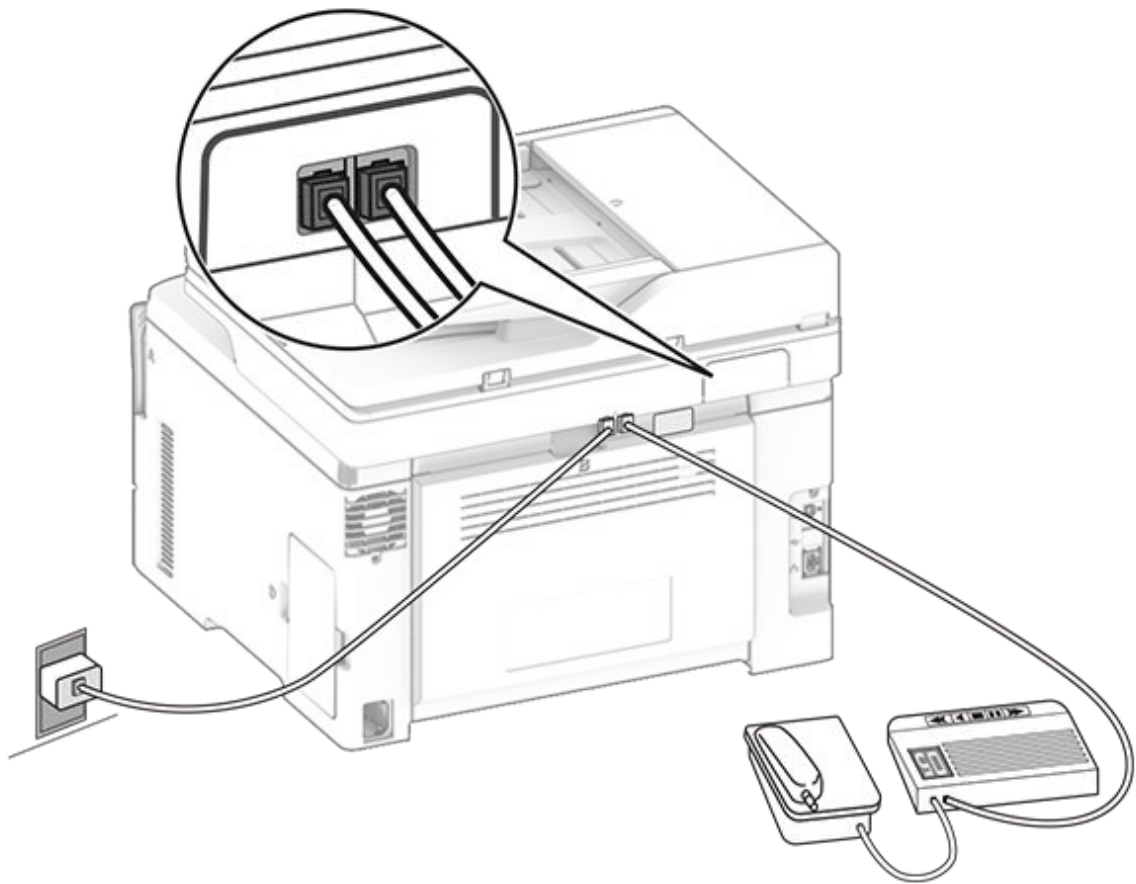
#### Notes

- You can set the printer to receive faxes automatically (set **Auto Answer** to **On**) or manually (set **Auto Answer** to **Off**).
- If you want to receive faxes automatically, then set the printer to pick up on a specified number of rings.

### Setup 2: Printer is sharing the line with an answering machine

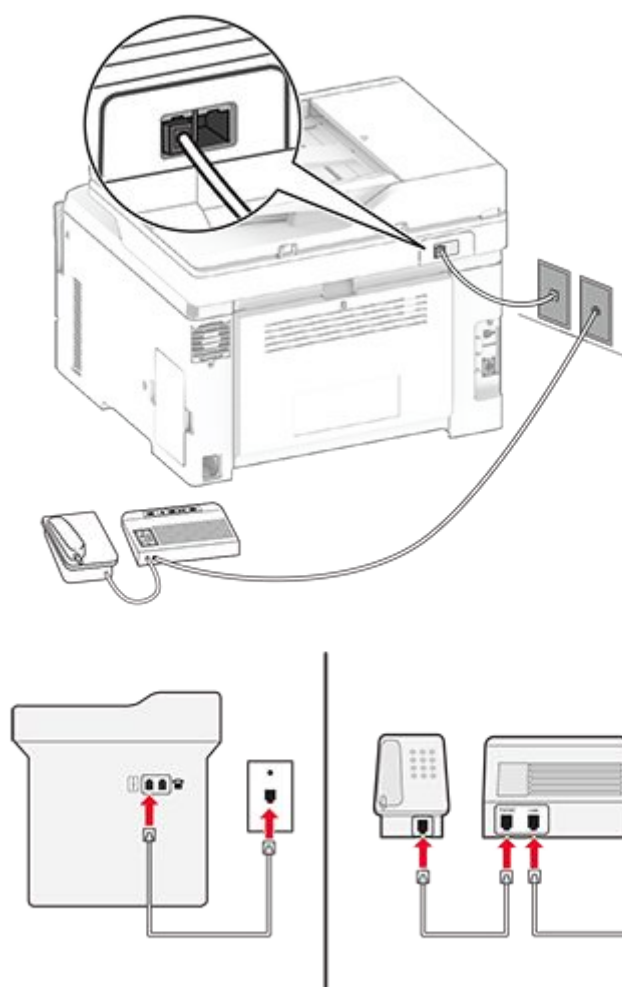
 **Note:** If you subscribe to a distinctive ring service, then make sure that you set the correct ring pattern for the printer. Otherwise, the printer does not receive faxes even if you have set it to receive faxes automatically.

#### Connected to the same telephone wall jack



1. Connect one end of the telephone cable to the line port of the printer.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to an active analog wall jack.
3. Connect the answering machine to the telephone port of the printer.

**Connected to different wall jacks**



1. Connect one end of the telephone cable to the line port of the printer.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to an active analog wall jack.

#### Notes

- If you have only one telephone number on your line, then set the printer to receive faxes automatically.
- Set the printer to pick up calls two rings after the answering machine. For example, if the answering machine picks up calls after four rings, then set the printer **Rings to Answer** setting to **6**.

## SETTING UP FAX IN COUNTRIES OR REGIONS WITH DIFFERENT TELEPHONE WALL JACKS AND PLUGS

 **Note:** These instructions apply only to printers that have a fax card installed.



### CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the power cord, fax feature, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD**

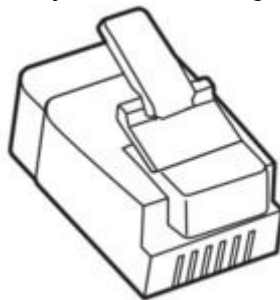
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To reduce the risk of fire, use only a 26 AWG or larger telecommunications (RJ-11) cord when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. For users in Australia, the cord must be approved by the Australian Communications and Media Authority.

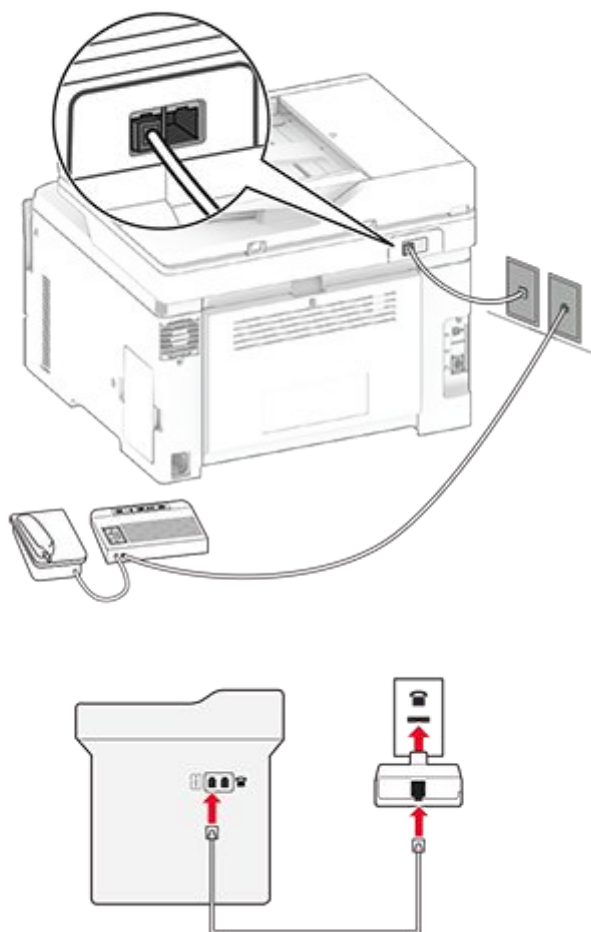
The standard wall jack adopted by most countries or regions is RJ-11. If the wall jack or equipment in your facility is not compatible with this type of connection, then use a telephone adapter. An adapter for your country or region may not come with your printer, and you may need to purchase it separately.

There may be an adapter plug installed in the telephone port of the printer. Do not remove the adapter plug from the telephone port of the printer if you are connecting to a serial or cascaded telephone system.





## Connecting the printer to a non-RJ-11 wall jack



1. Connect one end of the telephone cable to the line port of the printer.
2. Connect the other end of the cable to the RJ-11 adapter, and then connect the adapter to the wall jack.

 **Note:** If you want to connect another device with a non-RJ-11 connector to the same wall jack, then connect it directly to the telephone adapter.

## CONNECTING TO A DISTINCTIVE RING SERVICE

A distinctive ring service lets you have multiple telephone numbers on one telephone line. Each telephone number is assigned a different ring pattern.

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **Fax Receive Settings** › **Admin Controls** › **Answer On**.
2. Select a ring pattern.

## SETTING THE FAX DATE AND TIME

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Preferences** › **Date and Time** › **Configure**.
2. Configure the settings.

## CONFIGURING THE FAX SPEAKER SETTINGS

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **Speaker Settings**.
2. Do the following:
  - Set **Speaker Mode** to **Always On**.
  - Set **Speaker Volume** to **High**.
  - Activate **Ringer Volume**.

## Loading paper and specialty media

### SETTING THE PAPER SIZE AND TYPE

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Paper** › **Tray Configuration** › **Paper Size/Type**.
2. Select a paper source.
3. Set the paper size and type.

### SETTING THE PAPER WEIGHT AND TEXTURE

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Paper** › **Media Configuration** › **Media Type Setup**.
2. Select the paper type, and then adjust the **Weight** and **Texture** settings.



**Note:** Check the ream packaging to confirm the weight of the paper loaded.

Use the following table for reference. The table lists the recommended settings for paper weight, texture, and other print parameters.



**Note:** Paper type and paper weight support vary by printer model. For more information, see [Supported paper types on page 23](#) and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

| Printer settings             |             |              |               |                    |                           |
|------------------------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| Paper weight specs           | Paper type  | Paper weight | Paper texture | Fuser temperature  | Toner transfer setting    |
| 60–74 gsm<br>(16–20-lb bond) | Plain Paper | Light        | Smooth        | Light paper low    | Light weight, Copy/Office |
| 60–74 gsm<br>(16–20-lb bond) | Plain Paper | Light        | Normal        | Light paper normal | Light weight, Copy/Office |
| 60–74 gsm<br>(16–20-lb bond) | Plain Paper | Light        | Rough         | Light paper high   | Light weight, Copy/Office |

| Printer settings                    |              |              |               |                    |                            |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| Paper weight specs                  | Paper type   | Paper weight | Paper texture | Fuser temperature  | Toner transfer setting     |
| 74–90 gsm (20–24-lb bond)           | Plain Paper  | Normal       | Smooth        | Plain paper low    | Normal weight, Copy/Office |
| 74–90 gsm (20–24-lb bond)           | Plain Paper  | Normal       | Normal        | Plain paper normal | Normal weight, Copy/Office |
| 74–90 gsm (20–24-lb bond)           | Plain Paper  | Normal       | Rough         | Plain paper high   | Normal weight, Copy/Office |
| 90–120 gsm (24–32-lb bond)          | Plain Paper  | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy paper low    | Heavyweight, Premium       |
| 90–120 gsm (24–32-lb bond)          | Plain Paper  | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy paper normal | Heavyweight, Premium       |
| 90–120 gsm (24–32-lb bond)          | Plain Paper  | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy paper high   | Heavyweight, Premium       |
| 60–74 gsm Cotton (16–20-lb bond)    | Rough/Cotton | Light        | Rough         | Heavy paper normal | Up to 25 % cotton          |
| 74–90 gsm Cotton (20–24-lb bond)    | Rough/Cotton | Normal       | Rough         | Heavy paper normal | Up to 25 % cotton          |
| 90–120 gsm Cotton (24–32-lb bond)   | Rough/Cotton | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy paper normal | 100 % cotton               |
| 105–165 gsm Coated (39–60-lb cover) | Glossy       | Light        | Smooth        | Light paper normal | High gloss/ Glossy         |
| 105–165 gsm Coated (39–60-lb cover) | Glossy       | Light        | Normal        | Light paper normal | High gloss/ Glossy         |
| 105–165 gsm Coated (39–60-lb cover) | Glossy       | Light        | Rough         | Light paper normal | High gloss/ Glossy         |
| 165–220 gsm Coated (60–80-lb cover) | Glossy       | Normal       | Smooth        | Light paper high   | High gloss/ Glossy         |

| Printer settings                     |            |              |               |                    |                        |
|--------------------------------------|------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| Paper weight specs                   | Paper type | Paper weight | Paper texture | Fuser temperature  | Toner transfer setting |
| 165–220 gsm Coated (60–80-lb cover)  | Glossy     | Normal       | Normal        | Light paper high   | High gloss/ Glossy     |
| 165–220 gsm Coated (60–80-lb cover)  | Glossy     | Normal       | Rough         | Light paper high   | High gloss/ Glossy     |
| 220–300 gsm Coated (80–110-lb cover) | Glossy     | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy paper high   | High gloss/ Glossy     |
| 220–300 gsm Coated (80–110-lb cover) | Glossy     | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy paper high   | High gloss/ Glossy     |
| 220–300 gsm Coated (80–110-lb cover) | Glossy     | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy paper high   | High gloss/ Glossy     |
| 120–160 gsm (66–90-lb index)         | Card Stock | Light        | Smooth        | Heavy paper low    | Card Stock             |
| 120–160 gsm (66–90-lb index)         | Card Stock | Light        | Normal        | Heavy paper low    | Card stock             |
| 120–160 gsm (66–90-lb index)         | Card Stock | Light        | Rough         | Heavy paper low    | Card stock             |
| 160–220 gsm (90–120-lb index)        | Card Stock | Normal       | Smooth        | Heavy paper normal | Card stock             |
| 160–220 gsm (90–120-lb index)        | Card Stock | Normal       | Normal        | Heavy paper normal | Card stock             |
| 160–220 gsm (90–120-lb index)        | Card Stock | Normal       | Rough         | Heavy paper normal | Card stock             |
| 220–300 gsm (120–166-lb index)       | Card Stock | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy paper high   | Card stock             |
| 220–300 gsm (120–166-lb index)       | Card Stock | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy paper high   | Card stock             |

| Printer settings                  |             |              |               |                    |                        |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| Paper weight specs                | Paper type  | Paper weight | Paper texture | Fuser temperature  | Toner transfer setting |
| 220–300 gsm<br>(120–166-lb index) | Card Stock  | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy paper high   | Card stock             |
| 80–130 gsm                        | Label       | Light        | Smooth        | Heavy paper low    | Paper label            |
| 80–130 gsm                        | Label       | Light        | Normal        | Heavy paper low    | Paper label            |
| 80–130 gsm                        | Label       | Light        | Rough         | Heavy paper low    | Paper label            |
| 130–180 gsm                       | Label       | Normal       | Smooth        | Heavy paper normal | Paper label            |
| 130–180 gsm                       | Label       | Normal       | Normal        | Heavy paper normal | Paper label            |
| 130–180 gsm                       | Label       | Normal       | Rough         | Heavy paper normal | Paper label            |
| 180–230 gsm                       | Label       | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy paper high   | Paper label            |
| 180–230 gsm                       | Label       | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy paper high   | Paper label            |
| 180–230 gsm                       | Label       | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy paper high   | Paper label            |
| 160–180 gsm                       | Vinyl Label | Light        | Smooth        | Heavy paper low    | Vinyl label            |
| 160–180 gsm                       | Vinyl Label | Light        | Normal        | Heavy paper low    | Vinyl label            |
| 160–180 gsm                       | Vinyl Label | Light        | Rough         | Heavy paper low    | Vinyl label            |
| 180–220 gsm                       | Vinyl Label | Normal       | Smooth        | Heavy paper normal | Vinyl label            |
| 180–220 gsm                       | Vinyl Label | Normal       | Normal        | Heavy paper normal | Vinyl label            |
| 180–220 gsm                       | Vinyl Label | Normal       | Rough         | Heavy paper normal | Vinyl label            |
| 220–300 gsm                       | Vinyl Label | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy paper high   | Vinyl label            |

| Printer settings       |             |              |               |                    |                        |
|------------------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| Paper weight specs     | Paper type  | Paper weight | Paper texture | Fuser temperature  | Toner transfer setting |
| 220–300 gsm            | Vinyl Label | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy paper high   | Vinyl label            |
| 220–300 gsm            | Vinyl Label | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy paper high   | Vinyl label            |
| 52–75 gsm (14-lb bond) | Envelope    | Light        | Smooth        | Plain paper low    | Envelope               |
| 52–75 gsm (14-lb bond) | Envelope    | Light        | Normal        | Plain paper low    | Envelope               |
| 52–75 gsm (14-lb bond) | Envelope    | Light        | Rough         | Plain paper low    | Envelope               |
| 75–90 gsm (20-lb bond) | Envelope    | Normal       | Smooth        | Heavy paper low    | Envelope               |
| 75–90 gsm (20-lb bond) | Envelope    | Normal       | Normal        | Heavy paper low    | Envelope               |
| 75–90 gsm (20-lb bond) | Envelope    | Normal       | Rough         | Heavy paper low    | Envelope               |
| > 90 gsm (24-lb bond)  | Envelope    | Heavy        | Smooth        | Heavy paper normal | Envelope               |
| > 90 gsm (24-lb bond)  | Envelope    | Heavy        | Normal        | Heavy paper normal | Envelope               |
| > 90 gsm (24-lb bond)  | Envelope    | Heavy        | Rough         | Heavy paper normal | Envelope               |

### Notes

- Light Paper uses the same transfer and fuser settings as Plain Paper–Light, based on the selected texture.
- Letterhead, Preprinted, Colored Paper, Bond, and Recycled use the same transfer and fuser settings as Plain Paper–Normal, based on the selected texture.
- Heavy Paper has the same transfer and fuser settings as Plain Paper–Heavy, based on the selected texture.
- Toner transfer is the process of placing the toner on the paper.
- Fusing is the process of melting and fixing the toner to the paper.

## CONFIGURING UNIVERSAL PAPER SETTINGS

The **Universal Setup** menu lets you set the width and height of a paper size that is not preset in the printer.

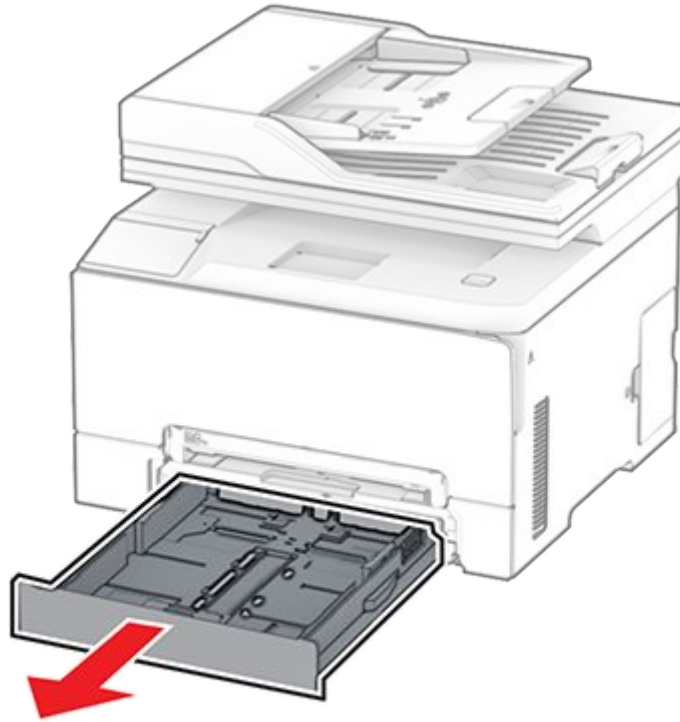
1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Paper** › **Media Configuration** › **Universal Setup**.

2. Select **All Input Trays**, and then configure the settings for the paper size that you want to customize.

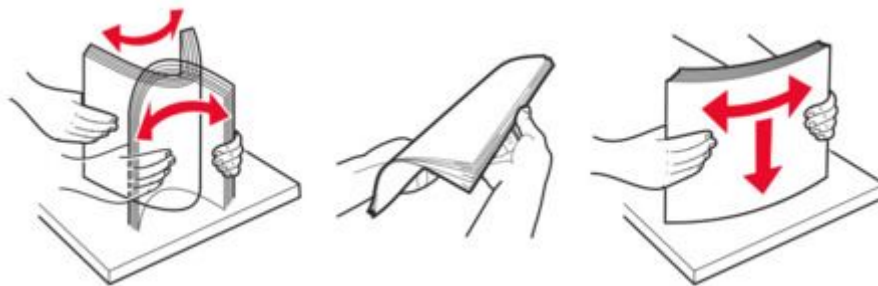
## LOADING TRAYS

1. Remove the tray.

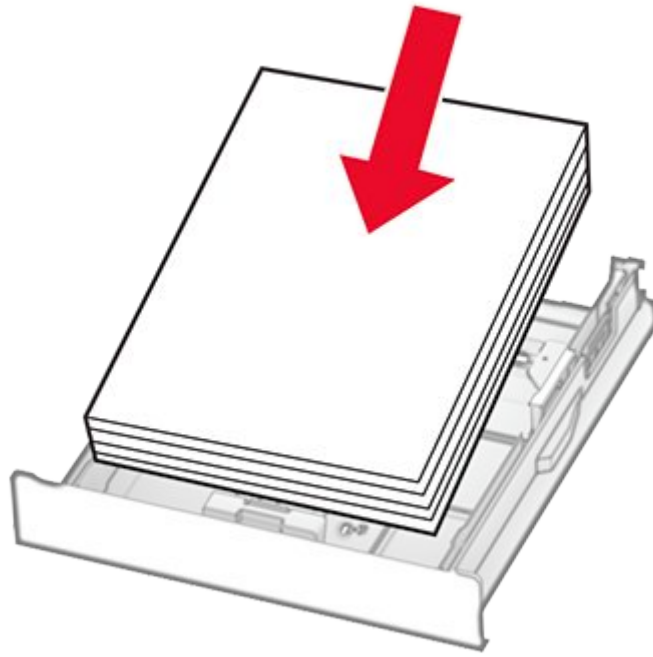
 **Note:** To avoid paper jams, do not remove trays while the printer is busy.



2. Flex, fan, and align the paper edges before loading.



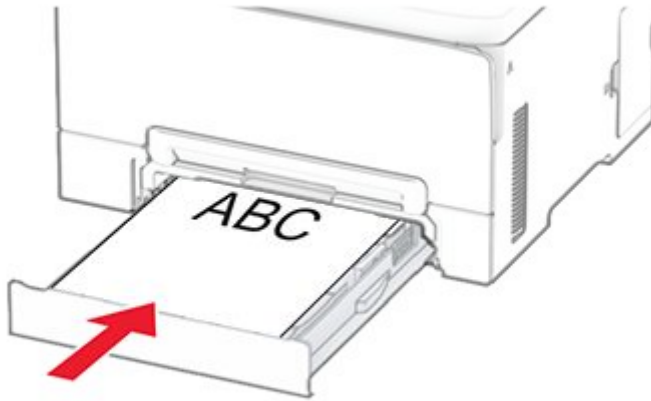
3. Load the paper stack with the printable side face up.



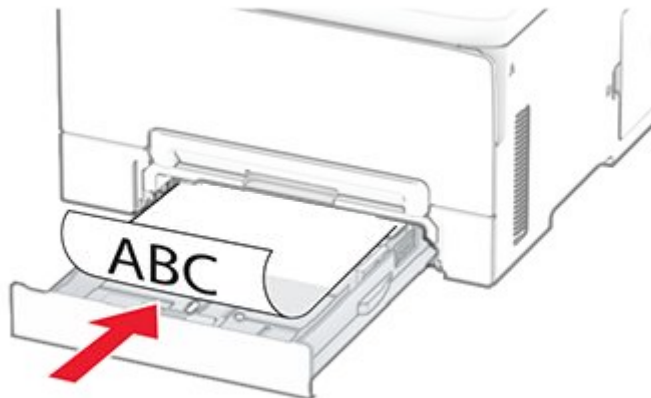


 Notes

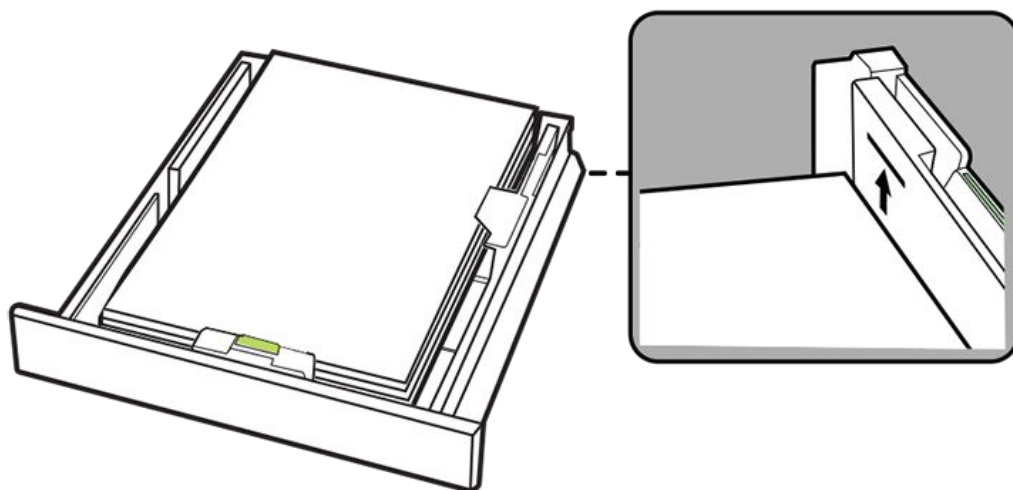
- Load letterhead face up with the header toward the back of the tray for one-sided printing.



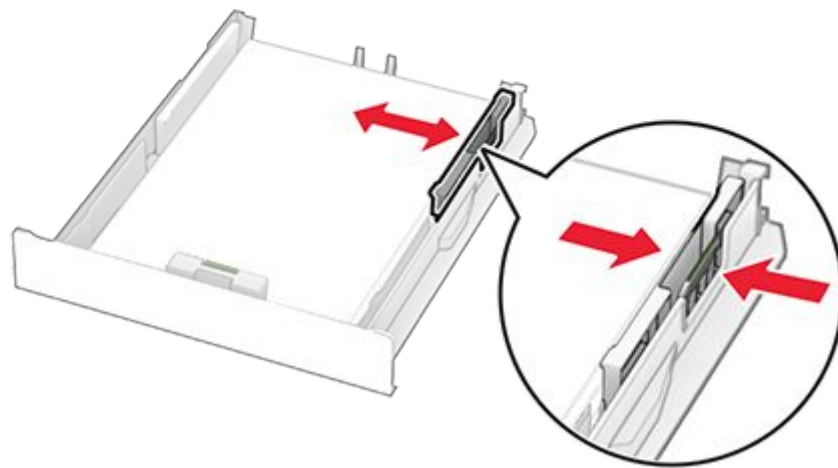
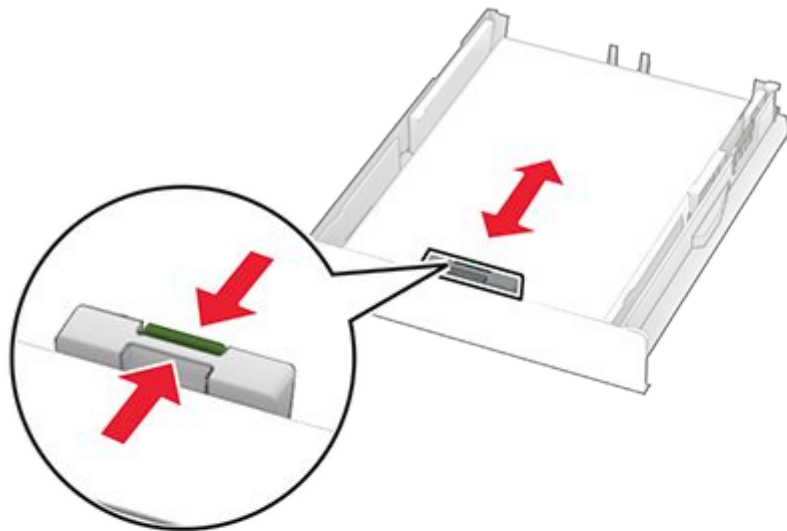
- Load letterhead face down with the header toward the front of the tray for two-sided printing.



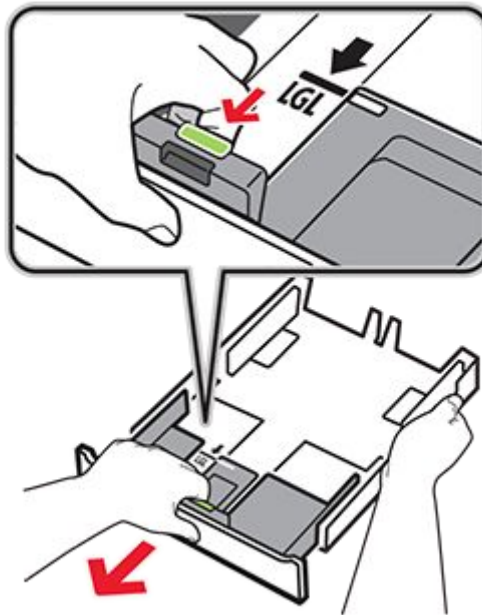
- Do not slide paper into the tray.
- To avoid paper jams, make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line.



4. Adjust the guides to match the size of the paper that you are loading.



 **Note:** When loading paper longer than A4, such as folio or legal, hold the side of the tray, and then press and pull the front guide to extend it.



5. Insert the tray.

 **Note:** The tray does not fully close when paper longer than A4 is loaded.

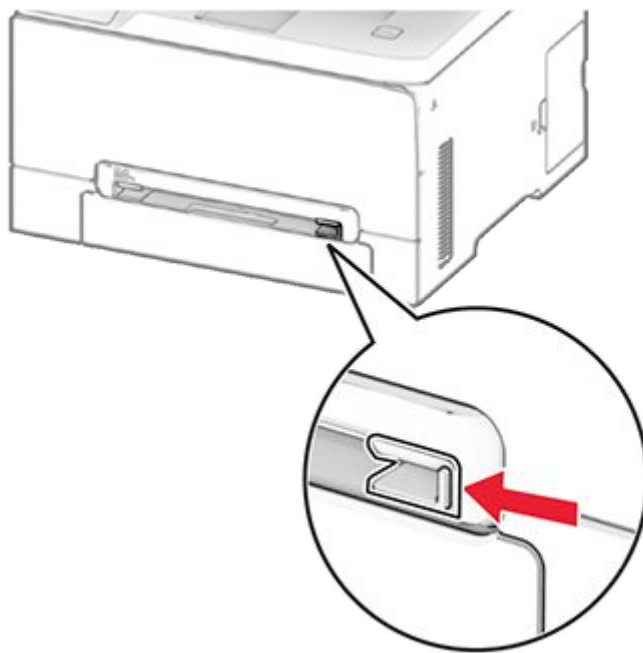
If necessary, set the paper size and paper type from the control panel to match the paper loaded. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).

## LOADING THE MANUAL FEEDER

### Notes

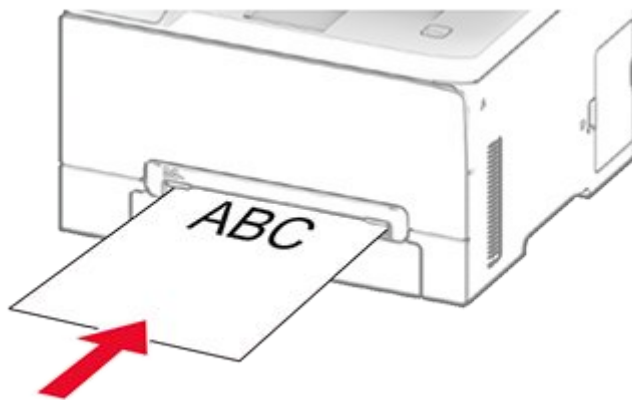
- Do not load the manual feeder until all previous print jobs are complete and the printer has returned to Ready.
- Load only one sheet at a time into the manual feeder.
- If you load a sheet into the manual feeder, the printer will print that sheet next.

1. Adjust the guide to match the size of the paper that you are loading.



2. Load a sheet of paper with the printable side face up.

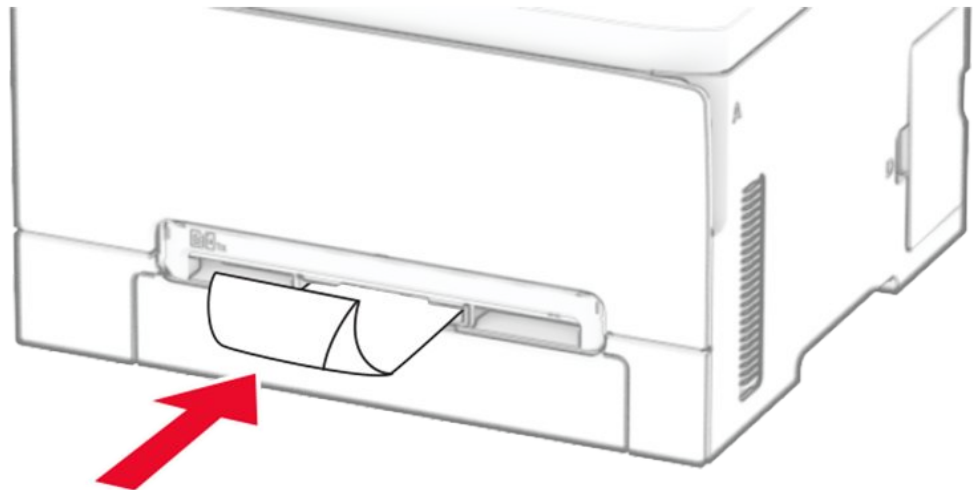
- For one-sided printing, load letterhead with the printable side face up and the top edge entering the printer first.



- For two-sided printing, load letterhead with the printable side face down and the top edge entering the printer last.



- Load envelope with the flap side down and against the right side of the paper guide.



3. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in.

 **Note:** To avoid paper jams, do not force paper into the manual feeder.

## LINKING TRAYS

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Paper** > **Tray Configuration** > **Paper Size/Type**.
2. Select the trays that you want to link, and then set the paper size and paper type.



- Make sure the trays are loaded with the same paper size and paper type.
  - Make sure the paper in each tray is loaded in the same direction.
3. Return to the control panel, and then navigate to **Settings › Device › Maintenance › Configuration Menu › Tray Configuration**.
  4. Set **Tray Linking** to **Automatic**.

To unlink the trays, make sure that no trays have the same paper size and paper type settings.



The temperature of the fuser varies according to the specified paper type. To avoid printing issues, match the paper type setting in the printer with the paper loaded in the tray.

## Installing and updating software, drivers, and firmware

### DOWNLOADING THE PRINTER SOFTWARE

The printer software may include the print, fax, and scan drivers. Before installing the printer software, verify that the printer is plugged in, powered on, connected correctly, and has a valid IP address.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
- Download the latest drivers from [www.support.xerox.com](http://www.support.xerox.com).

After installing the print driver software, you can set printing preferences and default driver settings.

Printing settings, such as banner pages and Page Description Language options, are configured through the Embedded Web Server. To change these settings, contact your system administrator or see the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* at [www.support.xerox.com](http://www.support.xerox.com).

### Supported operating systems

- Windows 11, Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2019, Windows Server 2022, and Windows Server 2025
- Macintosh OS version 14 and later
- UNIX and Linux—Your printer supports connection to various UNIX platforms through the network interface

### INSTALLING THE PRINT DRIVER FOR A WINDOWS NETWORK PRINTER

1. Go to [www.support.xerox.com](http://www.support.xerox.com).
2. In the **Find a product** field, enter your printer model, and then click **Drivers & Downloads**.
3. In the **Xerox Smart Start – Driver Installer** section, select the checkbox for **I agree to the Terms and Conditions**.
4. Click **Download**.

5. When the download completes, double-click **XeroxSmartStart\_(version).exe**.
6. Accept the License Agreement by clicking **Agree**.
7. From the list of discovered printers, select your printer.

If your printer is not listed, then do the following:

- a. Click **Don't See Your Printer?**
  - b. Enter the printer IP address, and then click **Advanced Search**.
  - c. Configure the settings, and then click **Install**.
8. Click **Advanced Install**.
  9. Click **Install**.

## INSTALLING THE PRINT DRIVERS FOR A WINDOWS USB PRINTER

1. Connect the B end of a standard A/B USB 2.0 or USB 3.0 cable to the USB port at the rear of the printer.



**Note:** Make sure the USB port is enabled. For more information, see [Enabling the USB port on page 309](#).

2. Connect the A end of the cable to the USB port on the computer.
3. If the Windows Found New Hardware Wizard appears, click **Cancel**.
4. Go to [www.support.xerox.com](http://www.support.xerox.com).
5. In the **Find a product** field, enter your printer model, and then click **Drivers & Downloads**.
6. Find Xerox Smart Start, and then click **Agree** to accept the license agreement.
7. Click **Download**.
8. When the download completes, double-click **XeroxSmartStart\_(version).exe**.
9. Accept the License Agreement by clicking **Agree**.
10. Select your printer, and then click **Quick Install**.

A confirmation message appears when installation is successful.

11. Click **Done**.

## INSTALLING THE DRIVERS AND UTILITIES FOR MACINTOSH OS (MACOS)

1. Go to [www.support.xerox.com](http://www.support.xerox.com).
2. In the **Find a product** field, enter your printer model, and then click **Drivers & Downloads**.
3. Select your Macintosh operating system, and then click **Apply filters**.
4. Agree to the terms and conditions and download the driver.
5. Open the Downloads folder, and then double-click the downloaded .dmg file.
6. In the installer window, double-click the driver installer package (.pkg).
7. Click **Continue**.
8. Review the license agreement, click **Continue**, and then click **Agree**.
9. Click **Install** to begin the installation.
10. If prompted, enter the administrator name and password, and then click **Install Software**.



11. From the list of discovered printers, select your printer, and then click **Continue**.

If your printer does not appear in the list, do the following:

- a. Click **Don't See Your Printer?**
- b. Type the printer IP address.
- c. Select your printer and click **Continue**.



**Note:** If your printer is not detected, then make sure it is powered on and the Ethernet or USB cable is securely connected.

12. Click **Continue**, and then click **Close**.

## INSTALLING PRINT DRIVERS AND UTILITIES FOR UNIX AND LINUX PRINTING

To enable network printing, UNIX-based printing uses LPD/LPR port 515 or TCP/IP to port 9100. Xerox printers can support both protocols. For more information on installing print drivers and utilities for UNIX and Linux, go to [www.support.xerox.com](http://www.support.xerox.com).

### Xerox® Print Manager

Xerox® Printer Manager is an application that helps you manage and print to multiple printers in UNIX and Linux environments.

With Xerox® Print Manager, you can:

- Check the status of and configure network-connected printers.
- Set up printers on your network and monitor their operation.
- Perform maintenance checks and view supplies status any time.
- Ensure a consistent look and feel across different UNIX and Linux operating systems.

### Installing Xerox® Print Manager

Before you begin, make sure that you have admin privileges.

1. Download the appropriate package for your operating system from [www.support.xerox.com](http://www.support.xerox.com). Available files include:
  - XeroxOSDPkg-AIXpowerpc-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.rpm to support IBM PowerPC family
  - XeroxOSDPkg-HPUIa64-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.depot.gz to support HP Itanium workstations
  - XeroxOfficev5Pkg-Linuxix86-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.rpm to support RPM-based 32-bit Linux environments
  - XeroxOfficev5Pkg-Linuxix86-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.deb to support Debian-based 32-bit Linux environments
  - XeroxOfficev5Pkg-Linuxx86\_64-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.rpm to support RPM-based 64-bit Linux environments
  - XeroxOfficev5Pkg-Linuxx86\_64-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.deb to support Debian-based 64-bit Linux environments
  - XeroxOSDPkg-SunOSi386-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.pkg.gz to support Sun Solaris x86 systems
  - XeroxOSDPkg-SunOSSparc-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.pkg.gz to support Sun Solaris SPARC systems
2. To install the custom print driver, log in as root, and then type the appropriate command for your operating system:

- AIX

```
rpm -U XeroxOSDPkg-AIXpowerpc-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.rpm
```

- HPUX

```
swinstall -s XeroxOSDPkg-HPUXia64-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.depot.gz \*
```

- Solaris, x86 based

```
pkgadd -d XeroxOSDPkg-Sun0Si386-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.pkg
```

- Solaris, SPARC based

```
pkgadd -d XeroxOSDPkg-Sun0Ssparc-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.pkg
```

The installation creates a Xerox directory in `/opt/Xerox/prtsys`.

3. To install the Xerox® Office Standard Driver on Linux, log in as root, and then type the appropriate command for your operating system:

- Linux, RPM based

```
rpm -U XeroxOfficev5Pkg-Linuxi686-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.rpm
```

- Linux, Debian based

```
dpkg -i XeroxOfficev5Pkg-Linuxi686-x.xx.xxx.xxxx.deb
```

The installation creates a XeroxOffice directory in `/opt/XeroxOffice/prtsys`.

## Launching Xerox® Print Manager

1. Open a command window on your computer. At the prompt, log in as root, and then type `xerxofficeprtmgr`.
2. Press **Enter** or **Return**.

## ADDING PRINTERS TO A COMPUTER

### Adding a printer to a computer using the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app

1. Open the **Xerox® Print and Scan Experience** app.

If you do not have the app, then do the following:

- a. Go to [www.xerox.com](http://www.xerox.com) and search for **Xerox Print and Scan Experience**.
- b. Click **Print and Scan Experience App for Windows 10 and 11 and macOS - Xerox**.
- c. Click **Download now** and choose a location for the file.
- d. Download the application.
- e. Run the installer.

Follow the on-screen instructions. Your computer must have internet access for the installer to work.

2. Click **Add printer**.

If your printer is not listed, then do the following:

- a. Click **Don't See Your Printer?**
  - b. Type the printer IP address.
3. Click **Install**.

## Adding a printer as a TCP/IP device

Before you begin, do one of the following:

- Connect the printer and computer to the same network, either Wi-Fi or Ethernet. For more information on Wi-Fi setup, see [Connecting the printer to a Wi-Fi network on page 82](#).
- Enable **Wi-Fi Direct**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Network/Ports > Wi-Fi Direct > Enable Wi-Fi Direct**.

## Using Xerox Smart Start - Driver Installer

1. Go to [www.support.xerox.com](http://www.support.xerox.com).
2. In the **Find a product** field, enter your printer model, and then click **Drivers & Downloads**.
3. In the **Xerox Smart Start – Driver Installer** section, select the checkbox for **I agree to the Terms and Conditions**.
4. Click **Download**.
5. When the download completes, double-click **XeroxSmartStart\_(version).exe**.
6. Accept the License Agreement by clicking **Agree**.
7. From the list of discovered printers, select your printer.

If your printer is not listed, then do the following:

- a. Click **Don't See Your Printer?**
  - b. Enter the printer IP address, and then click **Advanced Search**.
  - c. Configure the settings, and then click **Install**.
8. Click **Advanced Install**.
9. Click **Install**.

## Adding a printer to a Windows computer as an IPP device

1. Open **Printers & scanners**.
2. Click **Add device**.

If the printer that you want to add is not listed, then do the following:

- a. Click **Add a new device manually**.
  - b. In the **Add Printer** window select **Add a printer using an IP address or hostname**, and then click **Next**.
  - c. In **Device type**, select **IPP Device**.
  - d. In the **Hostname or IP address** field, type the printer IP address, and then click **Next**.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

e. Click **Finish**.

## Adding a printer as a Web Service on Devices

Web Services on Devices (WSD) lets you discover and access remote devices and their services across a network. WSD supports device discovery, control, and use.

### Adding a WSD Printer using the Add Device Wizard

1. Open **Printers and scanners**.
2. Click **Add a Device**.
3. From the list of available devices, select your printer, and then click **Next**.



**Note:** If your printer is not listed, then click **Cancel**. To add the printer manually, use its IP address.

4. Click **Close**.

## Adding a printer to a Mac computer

### Using AirPrint

1. Open **Printers & Scanners**.
2. Click **Add Printer, Scanner, or Fax**, and then select a printer.



#### Notes

- If you want custom printing features, then install the macOS Print Driver Installer. For more information, see [Downloading the printer software on page 67](#).
- If the macOS Print Driver Installer is already installed, then do the following:
  - a. In the **Use** menu, choose **Select Software**, and then choose the macOS Print Driver.
  - b. Click **OK**.

3. Click **Add**.



**Note:** Depending on your printer model, a dialog may appear asking you to add a Fax printer.

### Adding the printer by specifying the IP address

1. From the computer Applications folder or from the dock, open **System Preferences**.
2. Click **Printers & Scanners**.
3. In the list of printers, click the Plus (+) icon.

4. Click **IP**.
5. From the Protocol list, select the protocol.
6. In the **Address** field, enter the IP address of the printer.
7. In the **Name** field, enter a name for the printer.
8. From the Use list, choose **Select a driver to use**.
9. From the printer software list, select the print driver for your printer model.
10. Click **Add**.

## EXPORTING A CONFIGURATION FILE

Exporting a configuration file lets you save the current settings of your printer to a file, which you can use as a backup or apply to another printer.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. In the Embedded Web Server, click **Export Configuration**.
3. Select a configuration to export.



**Note:** Depending on the configuration that you selected, the files are exported in either ZIP or CSV format.

## IMPORTING A CONFIGURATION FILE

Importing a configuration file lets you apply previously saved settings to your printer. This is useful when restoring a backup or setting up another printer with the same configuration.

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. In the Embedded Web Server, click **Import Configuration**.
3. Browse to the location where the file is saved.



**Note:** Depending on the configuration that you selected, the files are saved in either ZIP or CSV format.

4. Click **Import**.

## PRINTER FIRMWARE INSTRUCTIONS

### Checking the printer firmware version

#### Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Reports** › **Device** › **Device Information**.
3. Look for **Base**.



**Note:** The firmware version appears as sets of letters and numbers separated by periods. For example, ABCDE.123.123.

#### Using the control panel

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **About this Printer**.
2. Look for **Firmware Version**.



**Note:** The firmware version appears as sets of letters and numbers separated by periods. For example, ABCDE.123.123.

### Downloading the printer firmware



**Note:** Download the firmware only if you plan to update it using the Embedded Web Server with a firmware flash file or a flash drive.

1. Go to [www.support.xerox.com](http://www.support.xerox.com).
2. In the **Find a product** field, enter the printer model.
3. Go to **Drivers & Downloads**.
4. In the **Category** menu, select **Firmware**, and then click **Apply Filters**.
5. Select **I agree to the Terms and Conditions**.
6. Click **Download**.

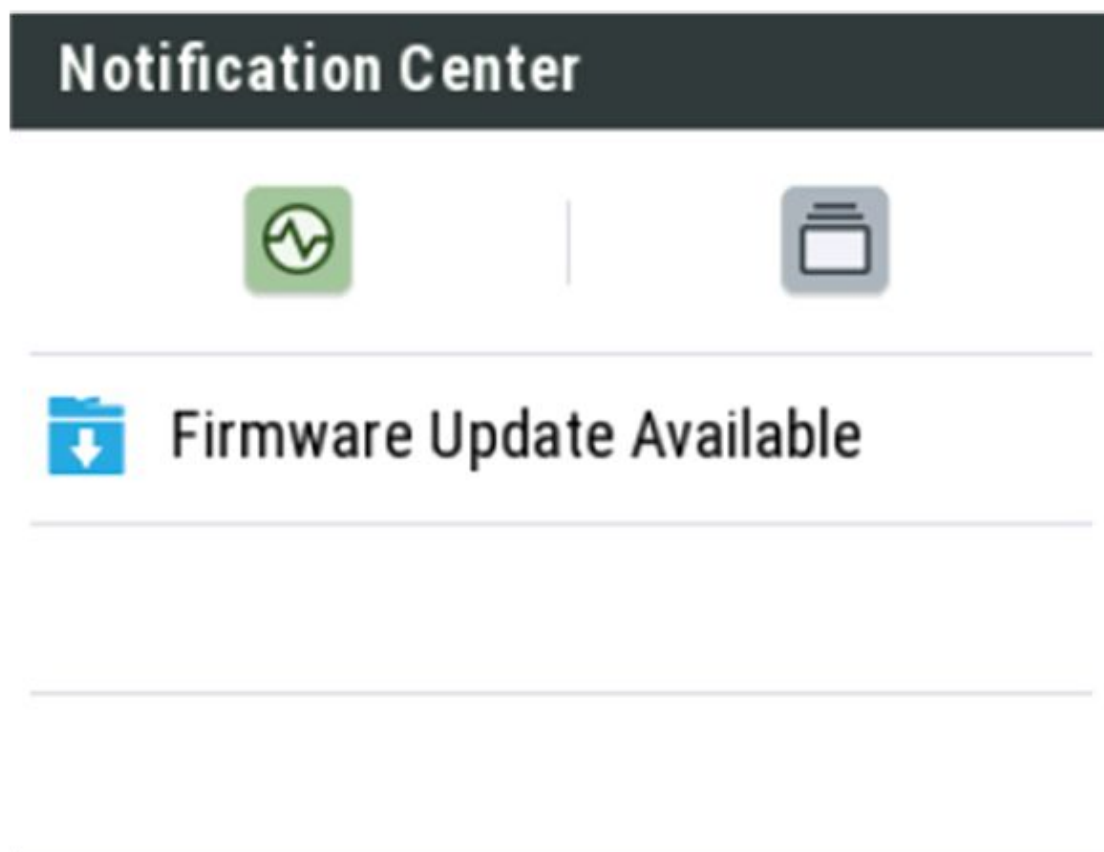
### Updating firmware

#### Updating the firmware using the control panel

Keeping your printer firmware updated helps it run efficiently and securely. Firmware updates can improve performance, add new features, fix firmware or hardware issues, and enhance the security of your printer and network.

## Using Notification Center

1. From the home screen, select the notification icon to go to the Notification Center screen.
2. Select **Firmware update available**.



3. Select **Install now**.



The printer restarts automatically after the update.

### Using the Settings menu

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device**.
2. Depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Firmware Update › Check for updates**.
  - Select **Update firmware › Check for updates now**.
3. If an update is available, then select **Install now**.

The printer restarts automatically after the update.

### Updating the firmware using the Embedded Web Server

Keeping your printer firmware up-to-date helps it run efficiently and securely. Firmware updates can improve performance, add new features, fix firmware or hardware issues, and enhance the security of your printer and network.

#### Using the update button

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
  - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
2. Click **Device**.
  3. Depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
    - Select **Firmware Update › Check for updates**.
    - Select **Update firmware › Check for updates now**.
  4. If an update is available, then select **Install now**.

The printer restarts automatically after the update.

#### Using the firmware flash file (.fls)

Before you begin, make sure that:

- The printer and computer are connected to the same network.
- You have downloaded the firmware file (.fls). For more information, see [Downloading the printer firmware on page 74](#).

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.





You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.

2. Click **Device**.
3. Click **Firmware Update**.
4. In the **Update Firmware from File** section, click **Browse**.
5. Search, and then select the **.fls** file.
6. Click **Upload**.

The printer restarts automatically after the update.

### Updating the firmware using a flash drive

Before you begin, make sure that:

- You have downloaded the firmware to your computer or flash drive. For more information, see [Downloading the printer firmware on page 74](#).
- The flash drive is formatted to FAT32.

1. Insert the flash drive into the front USB port of the printer.

The flash drive contents appear automatically on the display. If they do not, select **USB Drive** on the control panel.

2. Locate and select the **.fls** file.
3. Select **Update Code**.

The printer restarts automatically after the update.

## Installing hardware options

### AVAILABLE INTERNAL OPTIONS

- Intelligent storage drive

 **Note:** Supported only in certain printer models.

- Fonts
  - Simplified Chinese
  - Traditional Chinese
  - Japanese
  - Korean
  - Arabic
- Licensed features
  - IPDS
  - Bar Code
- Formsmerge support

- PRESCRIBE support

## INSTALLING OPTIONAL TRAYS

 **Note:** Optional trays are available only in certain printer models.



### CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

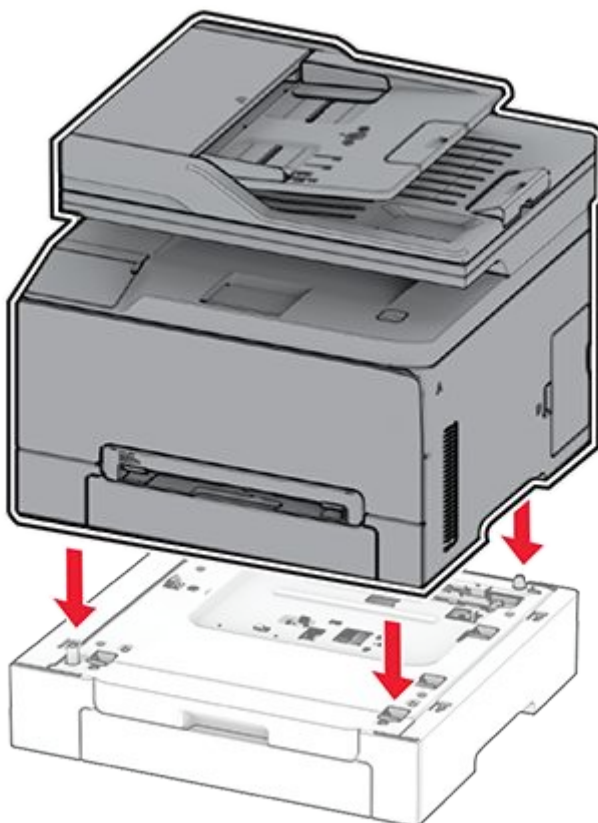
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, if you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Unpack the optional tray, and then remove all packing material.
4. Align the printer with the optional tray, and then lower the printer into place.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

If the printer weight is greater than 20 kg (44 lb), then it may require two or more people to lift it safely.



5. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

6. Turn on the printer.

## INSTALLING THE INTELLIGENT STORAGE DRIVE

 **Note:** The intelligent storage drive is available only in certain printer models.



### CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

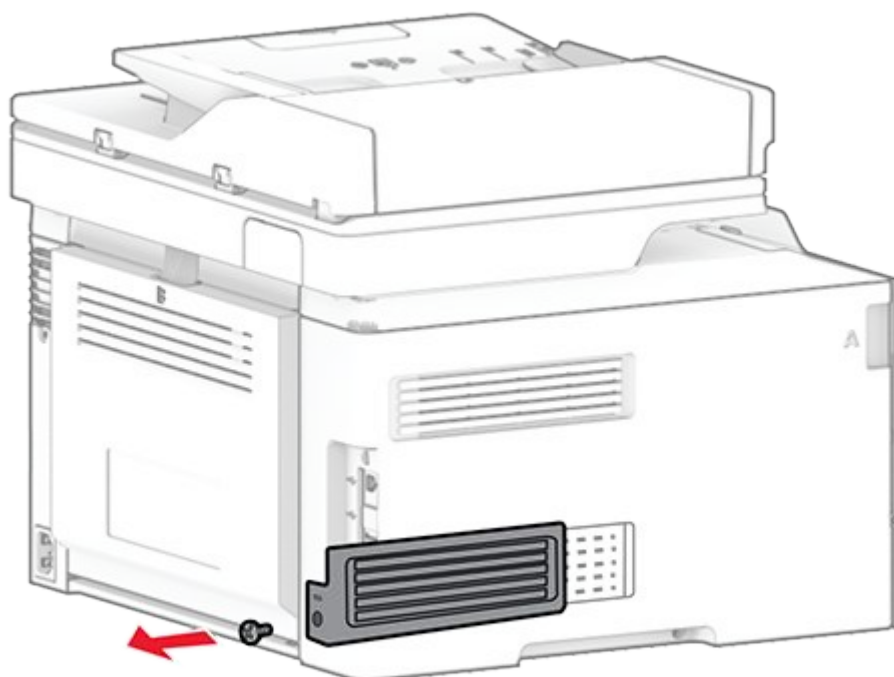
To avoid the risk of electrical shock, if you are accessing the controller board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Using a flat-head screwdriver, open the controller board access cover.



### Warning—Potential Damage

Controller board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch a metal surface on the printer before touching any controller board components or connectors.

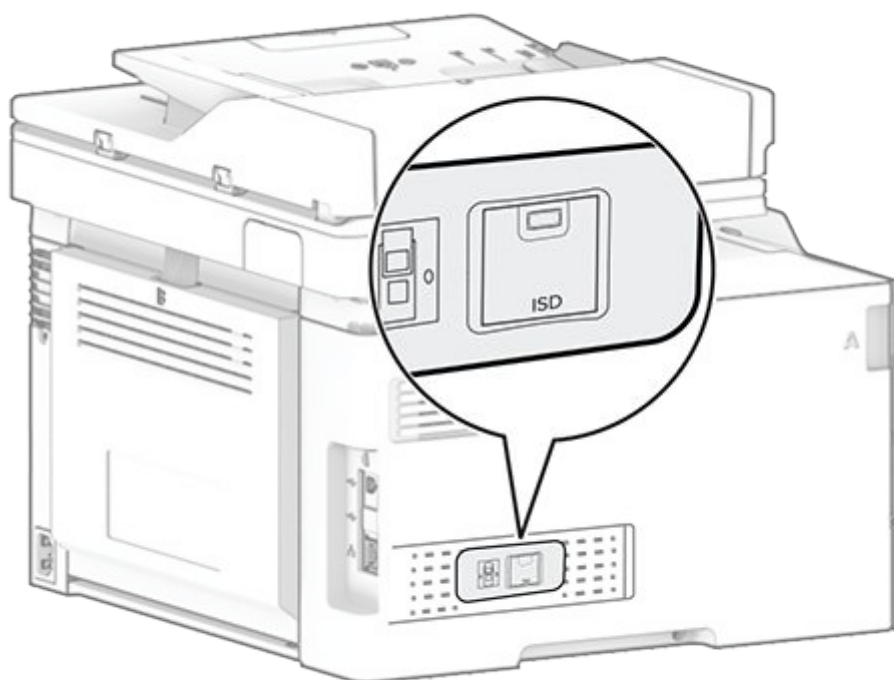


4. Unpack the intelligent storage drive (ISD).

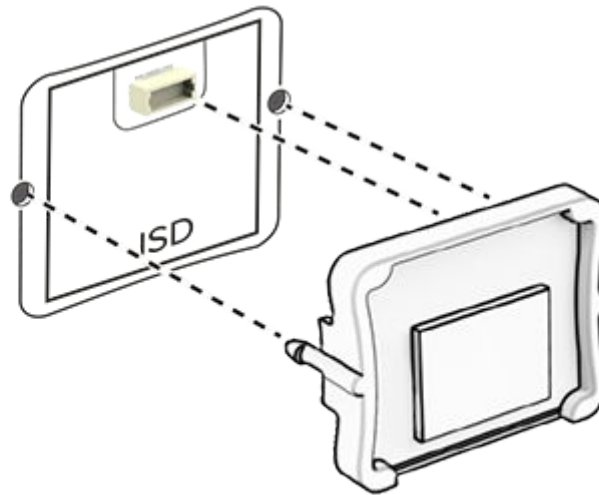
 **Warning—Potential Damage**

Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the storage drive.

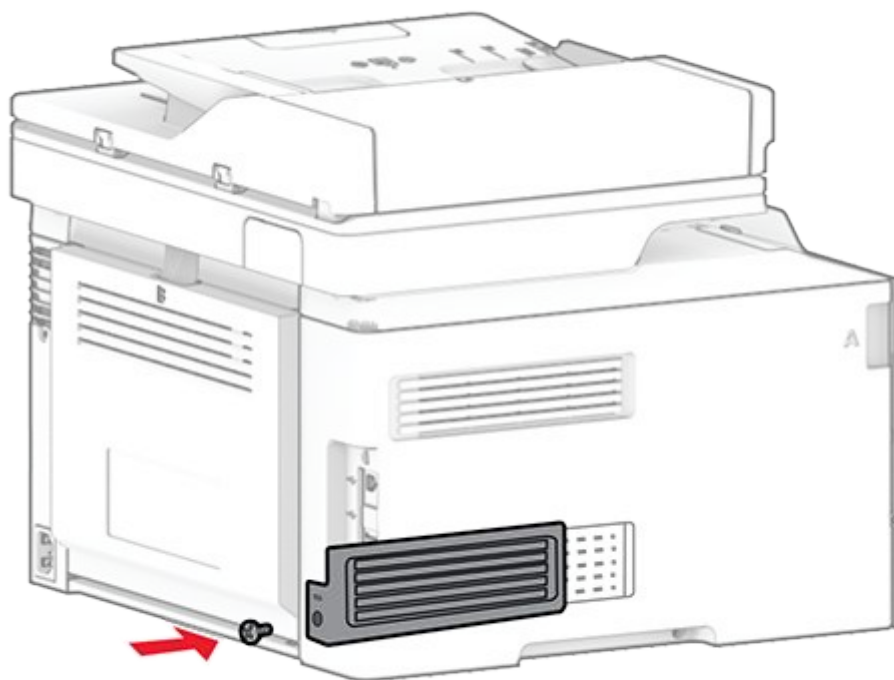
5. Locate the ISD connector.



6. Insert the ISD to its connector.



7. Close the controller board access cover, and then install the screw.



8. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.



**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

9. Turn on the printer.

## Networking

### CONNECTING THE PRINTER TO A WI-FI NETWORK

Before you begin, make sure that:

- **Active Adapter** is set to **Auto**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Network Overview** › **Active Adapter**.
  - The Ethernet cable is not connected to the printer.
1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Wireless** › **Setup On Printer Panel** › **Choose Network**.
  2. Select a Wi-Fi network, and then type the network password.

 **Note:** For printers with built-in Wi-Fi capability, a prompt for setting up the Wi-Fi network appears during initial setup.

## CONFIGURING WI-FI DIRECT

Wi-Fi Direct® lets devices connect directly without using an access point (wireless router).

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Wi-Fi Direct**.
2. Configure the settings.
  - **Enable Wi-Fi Direct**—Allow the printer to broadcast its Wi-Fi Direct network.
  - **Wi-Fi Direct Name**—Set a name for the network.
  - **Wi-Fi Direct Password**—Set a password for a secure peer-to-peer connection.
  - **Show Password on Setup Page**—Show the password on the Network Setup Page.
  - **Preferred Channel Number**—Choose the preferred channel of the Wi-Fi Direct network.
  - **Group Owner IP Address**—Assign the IP address of the group owner.
  - **Auto-Accept Push Button Requests**—Let the printer accept connection requests automatically.

 **Note:** Accepting push-button requests automatically is not secured.

 **Note:** To find the Wi-Fi Direct password without showing it on the printer display, print the **Network Setup Page**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Reports** › **Network** › **Network Setup Page**.

## CONNECTING A MOBILE DEVICE TO THE PRINTER USING WI-FI DIRECT

Before connecting your mobile device, make sure that **Wi-Fi Direct** has been configured. For more information, see [Configuring Wi-Fi Direct on page 83](#).

### Using the Wi-Fi Direct menu

 **Note:** These instructions apply only to mobile devices running on the Android™ platform.

1. On your mobile device, open the **Wi-Fi** menu.
2. Enable **Wi-Fi**, and then tap .
3. Tap **Wi-Fi Direct**.
4. Select the printer Wi-Fi Direct name.
5. Confirm the connection on the printer control panel.

### Using the Wi-Fi menu

1. On your mobile device, open the **Wi-Fi** menu.

2. Enable **Wi-Fi**, and then select the printer Wi-Fi Direct name.



**Note:** The string **DIRECT-xy** (where *x* and *y* are two random characters) is added before the Wi-Fi Direct name.

3. Enter the Wi-Fi Direct password.

## DEACTIVATING THE WI-FI NETWORK

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Network Overview** › **Active Adapter** › **Standard Network**.
2. Select **Yes** to restart the printer.

## CHECKING THE PRINTER CONNECTIVITY

1. Print the **Network Setup Page** report. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Reports** › **Network** › **Network Setup Page**.
2. In the **Network Overview** section, check if **Card Status** is connected.

If the status is not connected, then the wireless network or LAN is inactive or the network cable may be damaged. Contact your administrator for assistance.



# Secure the printer

This chapter contains

|                                         |    |
|-----------------------------------------|----|
| Erasing printer memory.....             | 86 |
| Erasing data from a storage drive ..... | 86 |
| Restoring factory default settings..... | 86 |
| Statement of Volatility .....           | 87 |

## 4. Secure the printer

### Erasing printer memory

To erase volatile memory or buffered data in your printer, turn off the printer.

To erase nonvolatile memory, device and network settings, security settings, and embedded solutions, do the following:

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Maintenance › Out of Service Erase**.
2. Select **Sanitize all information on nonvolatile memory**, and then select **OK**.
3. Select **Start initial setup wizard** or **Leave printer offline**, and then select **OK**.
4. Start the process.

 **Note:** This process deletes the encryption key used to protect user data, making the data unrecoverable.

### Erasing data from a storage drive

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Maintenance › Out of Service Erase**.
2. Depending on the storage drive installed on your printer, do either of the following:
  - For hard disk, select **Sanitize all information on hard disk**, select **OK**, and then select a method to erase data.

 **Note:** The process to sanitize the hard disk can take from several minutes to more than an hour, making the printer unavailable for other tasks.

- For intelligent storage drive, select **Erase Intelligent Storage Drive**, and then select **OK**.

### Restoring factory default settings

Restoring the printer to its factory default settings resets all customized configurations and settings to their original state.

#### USING THE CONTROL PANEL

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Restore Factory Defaults**.
2. Select the settings that you want to restore.
  - **Restore printer settings**
  - **Restore network settings**
  - **Restore fax settings**
  - **Restore app settings**

 **Notes**

- This setting is supported only in certain printer models.
- When this setting is selected, all apps that are not preinstalled on the printer are removed.

3. Select **Restore**.
4. Select **Start**.

The printer restarts automatically after the reset is completed.

## USING THE EMBEDDED WEB SERVER

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Settings** › **Device** › **Restore Factory Defaults**.
3. Select the settings that you want to restore.

- **Restore printer settings**
- **Restore network settings**
- **Restore fax settings**
- **Restore app settings**



### Notes

- This setting is supported only in certain printer models.
- When this setting is selected, all apps that are not preinstalled on the printer are removed.

4. Click **Start**.

The printer restarts automatically after the reset is completed.

## Statement of Volatility

| Type of memory                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Volatile memory                 | The printer uses standard random access memory (RAM) to buffer temporarily user data during simple print and copy jobs.                                                                                                                      |
| Nonvolatile memory              | The printer may use two forms of nonvolatile memory: EEPROM and NAND (flash memory). Both types store the operating system, printer settings, and network information. They also store scanner and bookmark settings and embedded solutions. |
| Hard disk                       | Some printers may have a hard disk drive installed. The printer hard disk is designed for printer-specific functionality. The hard disk lets the printer retain buffered user data from complex print jobs, form data, and font data.        |
| Intelligent storage drive (ISD) | Some printers may have an ISD installed. ISD uses nonvolatile flash memory to store user data from complex print jobs, form data, and font data.                                                                                             |

Erase the content of any installed printer memory in the following circumstances:

- The printer is decommissioned.
- The printer hard disk or ISD is replaced.
- The printer is moved to a different department or location.
- The printer is serviced by someone from outside your organization.
- The printer is removed from your premises for service.
- The printer is sold to another organization.



**Note:** To dispose a hard disk or ISD, follow the policies and procedures of your organization.

# Print

This chapter contains

- Printing from a computer ..... 90
- Printing from a mobile device ..... 91
- Printing from a flash drive ..... 92
- Managing secure or confidential print jobs ..... 93
- Releasing print jobs from Lexmark Cloud Services ..... 96
- Printing from a Cloud Connector profile ..... 96
- Printing a font sample list ..... 96
- Canceling a print job ..... 96
- Adjusting toner darkness..... 96

## 5. Print

### Printing from a computer

#### USING THE XEROX® PRINT AND SCAN EXPERIENCE APP

1. Open the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app.
2. Select a printer, and then click **Print**.
3. In the File Explorer or Finder window, select a file, and then click **Open**.
4. Configure the print settings, and then click **Print**.

#### USING WINDOWS APPS

If you are printing from Word, PowerPoint, or Adobe Acrobat™, do the following:

1. Click **File** or **Menu > Print** or press **Ctrl + P**.
2. In the Print dialog, select a printer, and then click **Printer Properties** or **Properties**.
3. Configure the settings, and then click **OK**.
4. Click **Print**.

If you are printing from a web browser, do the following:

1. Click the **Settings** menu (the three dots in the upper-right corner) or press **Ctrl + P**.
2. In the Print dialog, depending on your browser, do either of the following:
  - Select a printer, and then click **Print using system dialog**.
  - Select a printer, click **More settings**, and then click **Print using system dialog**.
3. In the system dialog, click **More settings**.
4. Configure the settings, and then click **OK**.
5. Click **Print**.

#### USING AIRPRINT

If you are printing from Preview, Safari, Word, or PowerPoint, do the following:

1. Click **File > Print** or press **command + P**.
2. In the Print dialog, select a printer, and then configure the print settings.
3. Click **Print**.

If you are printing from a browser other than Safari, do the following:

1. Click **File > Print** or press **command + P**.
2. In the Adobe Print dialog, at the lower-left corner, click **Printer**.
3. In the Print dialog, select a printer, and then configure the print settings.
4. Click **Print** to return to the Adobe Print dialog, and then click **Print** to send the print job.

If you are printing from a browser other than Safari, do the following:

1. Click **File > Print** or press **command + P**.
2. In the Print dialog, depending on your browser, do either of the following:
  - Click **Print using system dialog**.
  - Click **More settings**, and then click **Print using system dialog**.
3. In the system dialog, select a printer, and then configure the print settings.
4. Click **Print**.

## Printing from a mobile device

### PRINTING FROM A MOBILE DEVICE USING XEROX® EASY ASSIST APP

 **Note:** Before printing, make sure the Xerox® Easy Assist app is already installed. For more information, see [Xerox® Easy Assist \(XEA\) on page 30](#).

1. On your mobile device, open the Xerox® Easy Assist app, and then select **Print**.
2. Select a document from the file manager and adjust the print settings if needed.
3. Tap **Print**.

### PRINTING FROM A MOBILE DEVICE USING MOPRIA™ PRINT SERVICE

Mopria Print Service is a mobile printing solution for mobile devices running on the Android™ platform version 5.0 or later. It lets you print directly to any Mopria™ certified printer.

Before printing, ensure the following:

- Mopria Print Service is installed from the Google Play™ store and enabled.
- The mobile device and the printer are connected to the same network.
- Wi-Fi Direct is enabled on both the mobile device and the printer.
- The printer is added in the Mopria Print Service.

1. On your mobile device, open a compatible application or select a document from the file manager.

2. Tap  **> Print**.

3. Select a printer and adjust the settings if needed.

4. Tap .

### PRINTING FROM A MOBILE DEVICE USING AIRPRINT

AirPrint lets you print directly from Apple devices to an AirPrint-certified printer.

 **Note:** Make sure the Apple device and the printer are connected to the same network. If multiple wireless hubs exist, both devices must be on the same subnet.

1. On your mobile device, open a compatible application or select a document from the file manager.

2. Tap  **> Print**.

3. Select a printer and adjust the settings if needed.
4. Print the document.

## PRINTING FROM A MOBILE DEVICE USING WI-FI DIRECT®

Use this feature to print documents to a Wi-fi direct-ready printer.

 **Note:** Make sure that the mobile device is connected to the printer wireless network. For more information, see [Connecting a mobile device to the printer using Wi-Fi Direct on page 83](#).

1. From your mobile device, launch a compatible application or select a document from your file manager.
2. Depending on your mobile device, do one of the following:

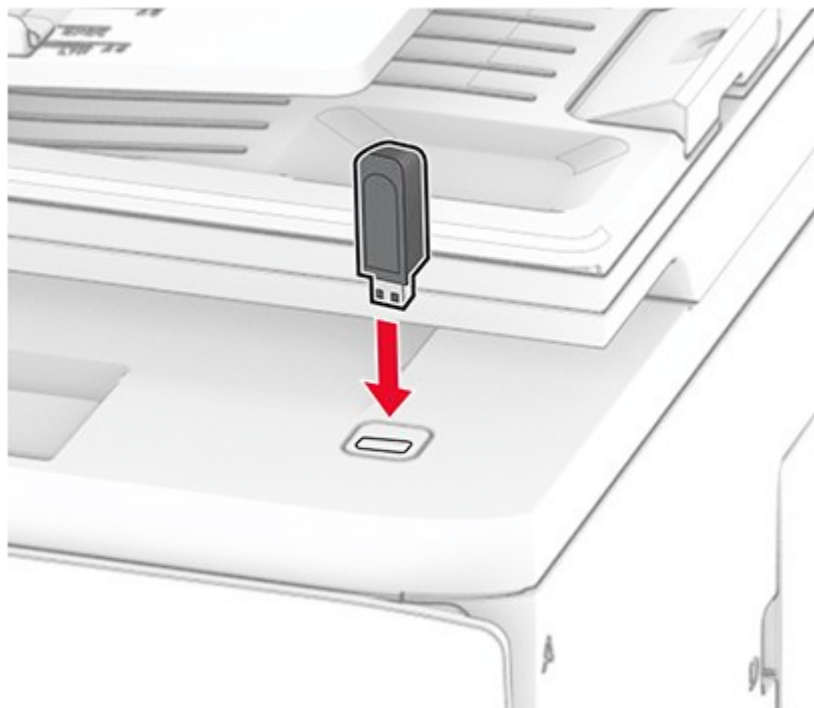
- Tap  › **Print**.
- Tap  › **Print**.
- Tap  › **Print**.

3. Select a printer and adjust the settings if needed.
4. Print the document.

## Printing from a flash drive

1. Insert the flash drive into the front USB port.

For more information on supported flash drives, see [Supported flash drives and file types on page 25](#).





#### Notes

- If you insert the flash drive when an error message appears, then the printer ignores the flash drive.
- If you insert the flash drive while the printer is processing other print jobs, then **Busy** appears on the display.

2. From the control panel, select **Print from USB**.
3. Select the document that you want to print and configure the print settings if needed.
4. From the control panel, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Print**.

- Select 

#### Warning—Potential Damage

To avoid loss of data or printer malfunction, do not touch the flash drive or the printer in the area shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device.

To print another document, select **USB Drive**.



## Managing secure or confidential print jobs

### CONFIGURING HELD JOBS

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Security** > **Held Jobs Setup**.

 **Note:** A held job is either **Confidential**, **Repeat**, **Reserve**, or **Verify**.

2. Configure the settings.

| Setting                            | Submenu item           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Require All Jobs to be Held</b> | N/A                    | Hold all print jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Keep Duplicate Documents</b>    | N/A                    | Keep all documents with the same file name.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Confidential Jobs</b>           | <b>Max Invalid PIN</b> | Set the maximum number of invalid PIN attempts.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> When the limit is reached, the print jobs for that username are deleted. |
|                                    | <b>Job Expiration</b>  | Set the expiration time for confidential held jobs before they are automatically deleted from the printer memory or intelligent storage drive.                                                                                   |
|                                    | <b>Keep Held Jobs</b>  | Keep confidential held jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Repeat Job</b>                  | <b>Job Expiration</b>  | Set the expiration time for repeat print jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                    | <b>Keep Held Jobs</b>  | Keep repeat print jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Verify Job</b>                  | <b>Job Expiration</b>  | Set the expiration time for printing a copy of a job to check its quality before printing the remaining copies.                                                                                                                  |
|                                    | <b>Keep Held Jobs</b>  | Keep verify print jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

## CREATING A SECURE PRINT JOB

### Notes

- Download and install the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app before proceeding. For more information, see [Downloading the printer software on page 67](#).
- Held jobs may get deleted before they expire or without any intervention if memory resources become low. If your printer supports a storage drive, then install an intelligent storage drive to increase storage for held jobs.

### Using the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app

1. Open the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app.

2. Select a printer, and then click **Print**.
3. In the File Explorer or Finder window, select a file, and then click **Open**.
4. Enable **Secure Print (Confidential)**, enter a 4- to 10-digit PIN, and then click **Done**.
5. Click **Print**.

## Using Windows apps

If you are printing from Word, PowerPoint, or Adobe Acrobat™, do the following:

1. Click **File** or **Menu > Print** or press **Ctrl + P**.
2. In the Print dialog, select a printer, and then click **Printer Properties** or **Properties**.
3. Enable **Secure Print (Confidential)**.
4. Enter a 4- to 10-digit PIN, and then click **Done**.
5. Click **Print**.

If you are printing from a web browser, do the following:

1. Click the **Settings** menu (the three dots in the upper-right corner) or press **Ctrl + P**.
2. In the Print dialog, depending on your browser, do either of the following:
  - Select a printer, and then click **Print using system dialog**.
  - Select a printer, click **More settings**, and then click **Print using system dialog**.
3. In the system dialog, click **More settings**.
4. Enable **Secure Print (Confidential)**.
5. Enter a 4- to 10-digit PIN, and then click **Done**.
6. Click **Print**.

## Using Macintosh apps

1. With a document open, choose **File > Print**.
2. Select a printer.
3. In the **Print Job Security** menu, enable **Print with PIN**, and then enter a four-digit PIN.
4. Click **Print**.
5. From the printer control panel, release the print job.
  - a. Select **Held jobs**, and then select the computer name.
  - b. Select **Confidential**, and then enter the PIN.
  - c. Select the print job, and then select **Print**.

## PRINTING A SECURE OR CONFIDENTIAL PRINT JOB

 **Note:** These instructions apply only if you have already created a secure or confidential print job. For more information, see [Creating a secure print job on page 94](#).

1. From the control panel, select **Held Jobs**.

2. Select your username, and then select **Confidential**.
3. Enter your PIN, and then select **OK**.
4. Select a print job, and then select **Print**.

## Releasing print jobs from Lexmark Cloud Services

 **Note:** These instructions apply only to users whose organization has a Lexmark Cloud Services subscription.

1. From the control panel, select **Cloud Print Release**.
2. To release the print job, do either of the following:
  - For enabled automatic print release, log in, and then select **OK**
  - Log in, select **OK**, and then select a print job.

## Printing from a Cloud Connector profile

1. From the control panel, select **Cloud Connector**.
2. Select a cloud service provider, and then select a profile.

 **Note:** For more information on creating a Cloud Connector profile, see [Creating a Cloud Connector profile on page 45](#).

3. Select **Print**, and then select a file.

 **Note:** Make sure to select a supported file. For more information, see [Supported flash drives and file types on page 25](#).

4. Select  .

## Printing a font sample list

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Reports › Print › Print Fonts**.
2. Select the font type.

## Canceling a print job

1. From the control panel, select **Job Queue**.
2. Select **Print**, and then select a job to cancel.

 **Note:** If a document is already printing, select **Cancel job** in the lower-right corner of the display to stop printing.

## Adjusting toner darkness

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality**.

2. Adjust the setting for **Toner Darkness**.

# Copy

This chapter contains

- Making copies ..... 99
- Copying photos..... 99
- Copying on letterhead..... 99
- Copying on both sides of the paper ..... 100
- Reducing or enlarging copies ..... 100
- Collating copies ..... 100
- Placing separator sheets between copies ..... 101
- Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet..... 101
- Copying cards..... 101
- Creating a copy shortcut ..... 101

## 6. Copy

### Making copies

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).



**Note:** To avoid a resized image, make sure the original document and output have the same paper size.

2. From the control panel, select **Copy**, and then specify the number of copies.

If necessary, adjust the copy settings.

3. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Copy**.



- Select .

### Copying photos

1. Place a photo on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy** › **Content Type** › **Photo**.
3. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Copy**.



- Select .

### Copying on letterhead

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy** › **Copy From**.
3. Select the size of the original document.
4. Select **Copy To**, and then select the paper source that contains the letterhead.

If you loaded the letterhead into the manual feeder, navigate to **Copy To** › **Manual Feeder**, select a paper size, and then select **Letterhead**.

5. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Copy**.



- Select .

## Copying on both sides of the paper

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy › Sides**.
3. Depending on the original document, select either **1 sided to 2 sided** or **2 sided to 2 sided**.
4. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Copy**.



## Reducing or enlarging copies

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. From the control panel, depending on your printer model, do any of the following:
  - Navigate to **Copy › Scale**.
  - Navigate to **Copy › Settings › Scale**.
  - Navigate to **Copy › More Settings › Scale**.
3. Select - or + to decrease or increase the value by 1 %.



- In certain printer models, select **Custom** to adjust the size manually.
  - You can also select a size from the preset values, between 25 % and 400 %.
  - Changing the size of the original document or output after setting **Scale** restores the scale value to **Auto**.
4. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
    - Select **Copy**.



- Select , and then select **Finish the job**.

## Collating copies

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy › Collate › On [1,2,1,2,1,2]**.
3. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Copy**.



- Select .



## Placing separator sheets between copies

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Copy** > **Separator Sheets**.
3. Select a setting.
4. Depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Copy**.



◦ Select

## Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. From the control panel, navigate to **Copy** > **Pages per Side**.
3. Select a setting.
4. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Copy**.



◦ Select

## Copying cards

1. Load a card on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Copy**, and then enable **ID Copy**.
3. To send the copy job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Copy**.



◦ Select

## Creating a copy shortcut

### USING THE CONTROL PANEL

1. From the control panel, select **Copy**.

2. Configure the settings, and then select



3. Type a shortcut name, and then click **OK**.

### USING THE EMBEDDED WEB SERVER

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
  - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
2. Click **Shortcuts › Add Shortcut**.
  3. In the **Shortcut Type** menu, select **Copy**.
  4. Configure the settings.
  5. Click **Save**.

# Fax

This chapter contains

- Sending a fax ..... 104
- Creating a fax destination shortcut..... 104
- Changing the fax resolution..... 104
- Adjusting the fax darkness ..... 105
- Printing a fax log ..... 105
- Blocking junk faxes..... 105
- Forwarding a fax..... 105

## 7. Fax

### Sending a fax

 **Note:** Make sure that fax is configured. For more information, see the **Setting up the printer to fax** section.

#### USING THE CONTROL PANEL

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Fax › To**.
3. Enter the fax number and select **Add › Done**.

If necessary, adjust the settings.

4. To send the fax job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Send**.

- Select  .

#### USING THE COMPUTER

##### For Macintosh users

1. With a document open, choose **File › Print**.
2. Select the printer that has **- Fax** added after its name.
3. In the **To** field, enter the recipient number.

If necessary, configure the settings.

4. Send the fax.

### Creating a fax destination shortcut

1. From the control panel, select **Fax › To**.
2. Enter the recipient number, and then select **Add › Done**.

3. Select  .

4. Create a shortcut.

### Changing the fax resolution

 **Note:** Make sure that fax is configured. For more information, see the **Setting up the printer to fax** section.

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Fax › To**, enter the fax number and then select **Add › Done**.

3. Select **Resolution**, and then select a setting.
4. To send the fax job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Send**.



- Select .

## Adjusting the fax darkness

 **Note:** Make sure that fax is configured. For more information, see the **Setting up the printer to fax** section.

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Fax › To**, enter the fax number and then select **Add › Done**.
3. Select **Darkness**, and then adjust setting.
4. To send the fax job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Send**.



- Select .

## Printing a fax log

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Reports › Fax**.
2. Select a fax log.

## Blocking junk faxes

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Fax › Fax Setup › Fax Receive Settings › Admin Controls**.
2. Enable the **Block No Name Fax** menu.

## Forwarding a fax

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Fax › Fax Setup › Fax Receive Settings › Admin Controls**.
2. Select **Fax Forwarding**, and then select **Print and Forward** or **Forward**.
3. In the **Forward to** menu, select a destination and then configure the settings.

# Scan

This chapter contains

- Scanning to a computer ..... 107
- Creating an email shortcut..... 107
- Scanning to email..... 107
- Scanning to an FTP server using a shortcut ..... 108
- Scanning to a network folder using a shortcut ..... 108
- Scanning to a flash drive ..... 109
- Scanning to a Cloud Connector profile ..... 110
- Splitting a scan job..... 110

## 8. Scan

### Scanning to a computer

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).

2. Open the **Xerox Print and Scan Experience** app.

If you have not installed the application, then see [Adding a printer to a computer using the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app on page 70](#).

3. Select a printer, click **Scan**, and then configure the settings.
4. Click **Start Scanning** › **Start Scanning**.

If necessary, edit the scanned document.

5. Click **Save As** and configure the settings.
6. Click **Save As**, choose the destination folder, and then enter a file name.
7. Click **Save**.

### Creating an email shortcut

#### Using the control panel

1. From the control panel, select **Email**.
2. Type the email address, and then select **Next**.

3. Select .
4. Create a shortcut.

#### Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Shortcuts** › **Add Shortcut**.
3. From the **Shortcut Type** menu, select **Email**.
4. Configure the settings.
5. Click **Save**.

### Scanning to email

Before you begin, make sure the SMTP settings are configured. For more information, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 34](#).

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. From the control panel, select **Email**.
3. Enter the needed information and configure the settings if necessary.
4. To send the scan job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:
  - Select **Scan**.



- Select .

## Scanning to an FTP server using a shortcut

1. Create an FTP shortcut.
  - a. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.
2. Load an original document face up, short edge first into the ADF tray or face down on the scanner glass.



### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

- b. Navigate to **Shortcuts** > **Add Shortcut**.
  - c. From the **Shortcut Type** menu, select **FTP**, and then configure the settings.
  - d. Apply the changes.
3. From the control panel, navigate to **Shortcuts** > **FTP**.
  4. Select the shortcut.

## Scanning to a network folder using a shortcut

1. Create a network folder shortcut.
  - a. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.
2. Load an original document face up, short edge first into the ADF tray or face down on the scanner glass.



**Note:** If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.



### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

- b. Navigate to **Shortcuts** > **Add Shortcut**.
- c. From the **Shortcut Type** menu, select **Network Folder**, and then configure the settings.
- d. Apply the changes.

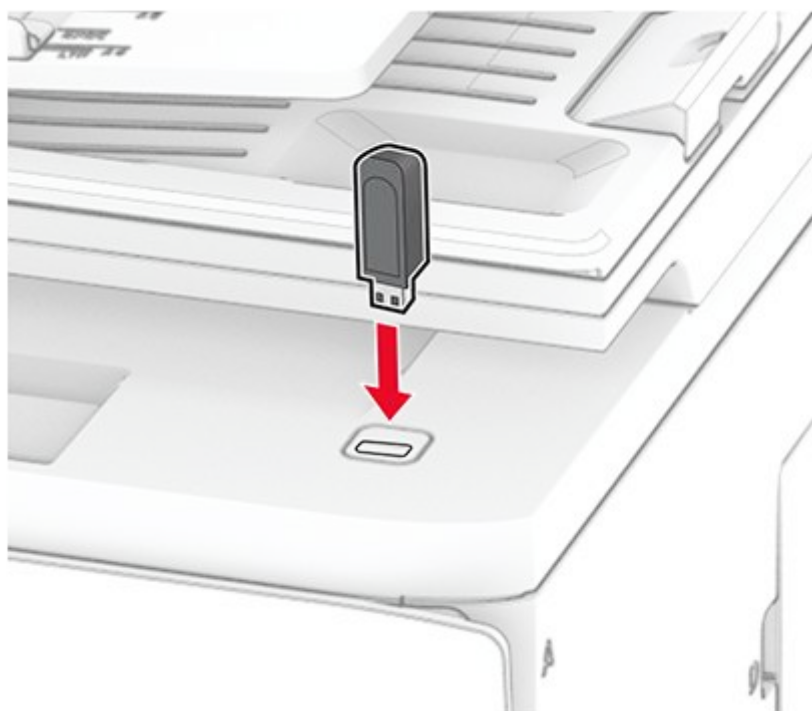


3. From the control panel, navigate to **Shortcuts** > **Scan to Network**.
4. Select the shortcut.

## Scanning to a flash drive

This feature is available only in certain printer models.

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. Insert the flash drive into the front USB port.



3. Touch **Scan to USB** and adjust the settings if necessary.

### Notes

- To save the scanned document to a folder, touch **Scan to**, select a folder, and then touch **Scan Here**.
  - If the USB Drive screen does not appear, then touch **USB Drive** on the control panel.
4. To send the scan job, depending on your printer model, do either of the following:

- Select .

### Warning—Potential Damage

To avoid loss of data or printer malfunction, do not touch the flash drive or the printer in the area shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device.



## Scanning to a Cloud Connector profile

1. Load an original document face up, short edge first into the ADF tray or face down on the scanner glass.



**Note:** If you are loading a document into the ADF tray, then adjust the paper guides.

2. From the control panel, select **Cloud Connector**.
3. Select a cloud service provider, and then select a profile.

If necessary, enter your PIN.



**Note:** For more information on creating a Cloud Connector profile, see [Creating a Cloud Connector profile on page 45](#).

4. Select **Scan**, and then assign a filename and destination folder.
5. Select **Scan Here**.

If necessary, change the scan settings.

6. Select  .

## Splitting a scan job

1. Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
2. Depending on the destination of your scan job, do either of the following:

- From the control panel, navigate to **Email › Split Job by Pages**, enter a number by which the pages are split and sent as separate emails, and then select .
- Create a shortcut.
  - a. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.

 **Notes**

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
  - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
- b. Click **Shortcuts › Add Shortcut**.
  - c. From the Shortcut Type menu, select the desired shortcut type.
  - d. Configure the **Split Job by Pages** setting.
  - e. Apply the changes.
  - f. From the control panel, select **Shortcuts**, and then select the shortcut type.

# Printer menus

This chapter contains

|                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| Menu map.....         | 113 |
| Device.....           | 114 |
| Print.....            | 132 |
| Paper.....            | 142 |
| Copy.....             | 143 |
| Fax .....             | 147 |
| Email.....            | 164 |
| FTP .....             | 170 |
| USB Drive.....        | 173 |
| Network/Ports .....   | 178 |
| Security.....         | 196 |
| Cloud Services.....   | 204 |
| Reports.....          | 205 |
| Troubleshooting ..... | 207 |
| Supplies Plan.....    | 207 |

## 9. Printer menus

### Menu map

|           |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Device    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Preferences</li><li>• Eco-Mode</li><li>• Remote Control Panel</li><li>• Notifications</li><li>• Power Management</li><li>• Share Data with Xerox</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Restore Factory Defaults</li><li>• <b>Maintenance</b></li><li>• Visible Home Screen Icons</li><li>• Firmware Update</li><li>• About this Printer</li></ul> |
| Print     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Layout</li><li>• Setup</li><li>• Quality</li><li>• Job Accounting</li></ul>                                                                                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• PDF</li><li>• PostScript</li><li>• PCL</li><li>• Image</li></ul>                                                                                           |
| Paper     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Tray Configuration</li></ul>                                                                                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Media Configuration</li></ul>                                                                                                                              |
| Copy      | Copy Defaults                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Fax       | Fax Defaults                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Email     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Email Setup</li><li>• Email Defaults</li></ul>                                                                                                             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Web Link Setup</li></ul>                                                                                                                                   |
| FTP       | FTP Defaults                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| USB Drive | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Flash Drive Scan</li></ul>                                                                                                                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Flash Drive Print</li></ul>                                                                                                                                |

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Network/Ports</b>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Network Overview</li> <li>• Wireless</li> <li>• Wi-Fi Direct</li> <li>• Mobile Services Management</li> <li>• Ethernet</li> <li>• TCP/IP</li> <li>• SNMP</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IPSec</li> <li>• 802.1x</li> <li>• LPD Configuration</li> <li>• HTTP/FTP Settings</li> <li>• ThinPrint</li> <li>• USB</li> <li>• Restrict external network access</li> </ul> |
| <b>Security</b>        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Login methods <sup>1</sup></li> <li>• Security Audit Log</li> <li>• Login Restrictions</li> <li>• Held Jobs Setup</li> </ul>                                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Encryption</li> <li>• Erase Temporary Data Files</li> <li>• Solutions LDAP Settings</li> <li>• Miscellaneous</li> </ul>                                                      |
| <b>Cloud Services</b>  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cloud Connector</li> <li>• Cloud Print Release</li> </ul>                                                                                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cloud Services Enrollment</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Reports</b>         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Menu Settings Page</li> <li>• Device</li> <li>• Print</li> </ul>                                                                                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Shortcuts</li> <li>• Fax</li> <li>• Network</li> </ul>                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Troubleshooting</b> | Print Quality Test Pages                                                                                                                                                                                     | Cleaning the Scanner                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Supplies Plan</b>   | Plan Activation                                                                                                                                                                                              | Plan Conversion                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

<sup>1</sup> Appears only in the Embedded Web Server.

## Device

### PREFERENCES



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item               | Submenu item | Settings                       | Description                                                                |
|-------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Display Language</b> | N/A          | [List of languages]            | Set the language of the text that appears on the display.                  |
| <b>Country/Region</b>   | N/A          | [List of countries or regions] | Identify the country or region where the printer is configured to operate. |

| Menu item             | Submenu item   | Settings                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------|----------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Run initial setup     | N/A            | No*<br>Yes              | Run the setup wizard.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Keyboard              | Keyboard Type  | [List of languages]     | Select a language as a keyboard type.<br> <b>Note:</b> All the <b>Keyboard Type</b> values may not appear or may require special hardware to appear. |
| Displayed information | Display Text 1 | None                    | Specify the information to appear on the home screen.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                       |                | IP Address*             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Hostname                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Contact Name            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Location                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Date/Time               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | mDNS/DDNS Service Name  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Zero Configuration Name |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Custom Text 1           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Custom Text 2           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Model Name              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       | Display Text 2 | None*                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | IP Address              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Hostname                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Contact Name            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Location                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Date/Time               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | mDNS/DDNS Service Name  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Zero Configuration Name |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Custom Text 1           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                       |                | Custom Text 2           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

| Menu item                        | Submenu item                  | Settings                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                  |                               | <b>Model Name</b>                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                  | <b>Custom Text 1</b>          | The setting is user-defined.         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                  | <b>Custom Text 2</b>          | The setting is user-defined.         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Date and Time</b>             | <b>Configure</b>              | <b>Current Date and Time</b>         | Configure the printer date and time and network time protocol.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>MM-DD-YYYY</b> is the U.S. factory default setting. <b>DD-MM-YYYY</b> is the international factory default setting.</li> <li><b>UTC (GMT) Offset, DST Start, DST End, and DST Offset</b> appear only when <b>Time Zone</b> is set to <b>(UTC+user) Custom</b>.</li> <li><b>Key ID</b> and <b>Password</b> appear only when <b>Enable Authentication</b> is set to <b>MD5 key</b>.</li> </ul> |
|                                  |                               | <b>Manually Set Date and Time</b>    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                  |                               | <b>Date Format (MM-DD-YYYY*)</b>     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                  |                               | <b>Time Format (24 hour clock*)</b>  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                  |                               | <b>Time Zone</b>                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                  | <b>Network Time Protocol</b>  | <b>Enable NTP (On*)</b>              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                  |                               | <b>NTP Server</b>                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                  |                               | <b>Enable Authentication (None*)</b> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Paper Sizes</b>               | N/A                           | <b>U.S.</b><br><b>Metric</b>         | Specify the unit of measurement for paper sizes.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> The country or region selected in the initial setup wizard determines the initial paper size setting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Screen Brightness</b>         | N/A                           | <b>20–100 % (100*)</b>               | Adjust the brightness of the display.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Flash Drive Access</b>        | N/A                           | <b>Disabled</b><br><b>Enabled*</b>   | Enable access to the flash drive function of the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>One Page Flatbed Scanning</b> | N/A                           | <b>On</b><br><b>Off*</b>             | Set the printer to scan any type of job involving the scanner glass as a single page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Device Sounds</b>             | <b>Mute All Sounds</b>        | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>             | Configure the sound settings of the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                  | <b>Access Device Feedback</b> | <b>On*</b><br><b>Off</b>             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |



| Menu item      | Submenu item    | Settings                                       | Description                                                                                                                         |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                | ADF Loaded Beep | On*<br>Off                                     |                                                                                                                                     |
|                | Alarm Control   | Off<br>Single*<br>Continuous                   |                                                                                                                                     |
|                | Cartridge Alarm | Off<br>Single*<br>Continuous                   |                                                                                                                                     |
|                | Speaker Mode    | Always Off*<br>Always On<br>On until Connected |                                                                                                                                     |
|                | Ringer Volume   | Off*<br>On                                     |                                                                                                                                     |
| Screen Timeout | N/A             | 5 to 300 seconds<br>(60*)                      | Set the idle time in seconds before the display shows the home screen, or before the printer logs out a user account automatically. |

## ECO-MODE



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item | Submenu item | Settings            | Description                                                      |
|-----------|--------------|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Print     | Sides        | 1-Sided<br>2-Sided* | Specify whether to print on one side or both sides of the paper. |

| Menu item   | Submenu item          | Settings                                                                                                                                                                       | Description                                                           |
|-------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             | <b>Pages per Side</b> | Off*<br><br>2 pages per side<br><br>3 pages per side<br><br>4 pages per side<br><br>6 pages per side<br><br>9 pages per side<br><br>12 pages per side<br><br>16 pages per side | Specify the number of pages to print on one side of a sheet of paper. |
|             | <b>Toner Darkness</b> | Light<br><br>Normal*<br><br>Dark                                                                                                                                               | Determine the lightness or darkness of text images.                   |
| <b>Copy</b> | <b>Sides</b>          | 1 sided to 1 sided*<br><br>1 sided to 2 sided<br><br>2 sided to 1 sided<br><br>2 sided to 2 sided                                                                              | Specify the scanning behavior based on the original document.         |
|             | <b>Pages per Side</b> | Off*<br><br>2 Portrait pages<br><br>4 Portrait pages<br><br>2 Landscape pages<br><br>4 Landscape pages                                                                         | Specify the number of pages to copy on one side of a sheet of paper.  |
|             | <b>Darkness</b>       | 1 to 9 (5*)                                                                                                                                                                    | Adjust the darkness of scanned text images.                           |

## REMOTE CONTROL PANEL

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                      | Settings                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>External VNC Connection</b> | <b>Don't Allow*</b><br><b>Allow</b>            | Allow external Virtual Network Computing (VNC) client connections to the remote control panel.                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Authentication Type</b>     | <b>None*</b><br><b>Standard Authentication</b> | Set the authentication type for VNC client access.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>VNC Password</b>            | The setting is user-defined.                   | Specify the password for VNC client access.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if <b>Authentication Type</b> is set to <b>Standard Authentication</b> . |

## NOTIFICATIONS

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                 | Submenu item                                 | Settings                                               | Description                                                                          |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Supplies</b>           | <b>Show Supply Estimates</b>                 | <b>Show estimates*</b><br><b>Do not show estimates</b> | Show the estimated supply status.                                                    |
| <b>Email Alerts Setup</b> | <b>Primary SMTP Gateway</b>                  | The setting is user-defined.                           | Enter the IP address or hostname of the primary SMTP server.                         |
|                           | <b>Primary SMTP Gateway Port</b>             | <b>1 to 65535 (25*)</b>                                | Enter the port number of the primary SMTP server.                                    |
|                           | <b>Secondary SMTP Gateway</b>                | The setting is user-defined.                           | Enter the IP address or hostname of the secondary SMTP server.                       |
|                           | <b>Secondary SMTP Gateway Port</b>           | <b>1 to 65535 (25*)</b>                                | Enter the port number of the secondary SMTP server.                                  |
|                           | <b>SMTP Timeout</b>                          | <b>5 to 30 (30*)</b>                                   | Specify the time that the SMTP server waits before it stops trying to send an email. |
|                           | <b>Reply Address</b>                         | The setting is user-defined.                           | Specify a reply address for emails.                                                  |
|                           | <b>Always use SMTP default Reply Address</b> | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>                               | Use the default reply address in the SMTP server.                                    |

| Menu item | Submenu item                            | Settings                                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                    |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|           | Use SSL/TLS                             | Disabled*<br>Negotiate<br>Required                                                                                                                | Specify whether to use SSL/TLS for communication with the SMTP server.                         |
|           | Require Trusted Certificate             | On*<br>Off                                                                                                                                        | Require a trusted certificate when connecting to the SMTP server.                              |
|           | SMTP Server Authentication              | No authentication required*<br><br>Login /Plain<br><br>NTLM<br><br>CRAM-MD5<br><br>Kerberos 5<br><br>OAuth 2.0                                    | Set the authentication type for the SMTP server.                                               |
|           | Device-Initiated Email                  | None*<br><br>Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                                          | Set whether credentials are required for device-initiated emails.                              |
|           | User-Initiated Email                    | None*<br><br>Use Device SMTP Credentials<br><br>Use Session User ID and Password<br><br>Use Session Email address and Password<br><br>Prompt user | Set whether credentials are required for user-initiated emails.                                |
|           | Use Active Directory Device Credentials | On<br><br>Off*                                                                                                                                    | Enable the use of Active Directory credentials and group designations for SMTP authentication. |
|           | Device Userid                           | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                                      | Enter the user ID to log in to the SMTP server.                                                |
|           | Device Password                         | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                                      | Enter the password to log in to the SMTP server.                                               |

| Menu item               | Submenu item                                  | Settings                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                         | <b>Kerberos 5 Realm</b>                       | The setting is user-defined.                  | <p>Enter the Kerberos realm name required for certain authentication types. The realm is typically the uppercase domain name used by the Kerberos authentication system (for example, EXAMPLE.COM).</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This setting is necessary when configuring Kerberos-based authentication for secure access.</p> |
|                         | <b>NTLM Domain</b>                            | The setting is user-defined.                  | <p>Enter the domain name required for NTLM (NT LAN Manager) authentication.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This setting is used when the printer needs to authenticate users against a Windows domain using NTLM protocol.</p>                                                                                                     |
|                         | <b>Disable "SMTP server not set up" error</b> | <b>On</b><br><b>Off*</b>                      | Disable the SMTP setup error message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Error Prevention</b> | <b>Jam Assist</b>                             | <b>Off</b><br><b>On*</b>                      | Set the printer to check for jammed paper automatically.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                         | <b>Auto Continue</b>                          | <b>Disabled</b><br><b>Enabled*</b>            | Let the printer automatically resume processing or printing after clearing certain conditions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                         | <b>Auto Continue Time</b>                     | <b>5* to 255</b>                              | <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When set to <b>On</b>, the default setting is 5 seconds.</li> <li>• <b>Auto Continue Time</b> is available only in certain printer models.</li> </ul>                                                                                                    |
|                         | <b>Auto Reboot</b>                            | <b>Auto Reboot</b><br><b>(Reboot always*)</b> | Set when the printer restarts after an error.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                         |                                               | <b>Max Auto Reboots</b><br><b>(2*)</b>        | Set the maximum number of automatic reboots allowed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

| Menu item                   | Submenu item                     | Settings                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                             |                                  | <b>Auto Reboot Window</b><br>(720*)     | Set the average uptime (in minutes) before a reboot is allowed.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the average uptime is greater than this number, then a reboot is allowed.</li> <li>• If the average uptime is less than this number, then the printer stops and shows the service error screen.</li> </ul> |
|                             |                                  | <b>Auto Reboot Counter</b>              | Show the number of automatic reboots that the printer has performed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                             | <b>Display Short Paper Error</b> | <b>On</b><br><b>Auto-clear*</b>         | Show a message when a short paper error occurs.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Short paper refers to the size of the paper loaded.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                             | <b>Page Protect</b>              | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>                | Process the entire page in memory before printing.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Jam Content Recovery</b> | <b>Jam Recovery</b>              | <b>Off</b><br><b>On</b><br><b>Auto*</b> | Reprint pages after a paper jam.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                             | <b>Scanner Jam Recovery</b>      | <b>Job level</b><br><b>Page level*</b>  | Choose how to restart a scan job after clearing a paper jam.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

## POWER MANAGEMENT

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                 | Submenu item                         | Settings                                                                    | Description                                                                   |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Sleep Mode Profile</b> | <b>Print from Sleep Mode</b>         | <b>Stay awake after printing</b><br><b>Enter Sleep Mode after printing*</b> | Set the printer to stay in Ready mode or return to Sleep mode after printing. |
|                           | <b>Touch to Wake from Deep Sleep</b> | <b>Disabled</b><br><b>Enabled*</b>                                          |                                                                               |

| Menu item | Submenu item                    | Settings                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Timeouts  | Sleep Mode                      | 1 to 54 (15*)                                                                                                     | Set the idle time in minutes before the printer begins operating in Sleep mode.<br> <b>Note:</b> Idle time may vary depending on printer model. |
|           | Hibernate Timeout               | Disabled<br>1 hour<br>2 hours<br>3 hours<br>6 hours<br>1 day<br>2 days<br>3 days*<br>1 week<br>2 weeks<br>1 month | Set the time before the printer turns off.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|           | Hibernate Timeout on Connection | Hibernate<br>Do Not Hibernate*                                                                                    | Set Hibernate Timeout to turn off the printer while an active Ethernet connection exists.                                                                                                                                         |

## SHARE DATA WITH XEROX

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item             | Settings                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Share Data with Xerox | Yes<br>No*              | Send printer usage and performance information to Xerox®.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Share Data Send Time  | Start Time<br>Stop Time | Select the time window for data collection and transmission.<br> <b>Note:</b> Share Data Send Time appears only when you select Yes in Share Data with Xerox. |

## RESTORE FACTORY DEFAULTS

| Menu item        | Settings                                                                                                                     | Description                                   |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Restore Settings | Restore all settings<br>Restore printer settings<br>Restore network settings<br>Restore fax settings<br>Restore app settings | Restore the printer factory default settings. |

## MAINTENANCE

### Configuration Menu

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item          | Submenu item      | Settings         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| USB Configuration  | USB PnP           | 1*<br>2          | Change the USB driver mode of the printer to improve its compatibility with a personal computer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                    | USB Scan to Local | On*<br>Off       | Set whether the USB device driver enumerates as a USB Simple device (single interface) or as a USB Composite device (multiple interfaces).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                    | USB Speed         | Full<br>Auto*    | Set the USB port to run at full speed and disable its high-speed capabilities.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Tray Configuration | Tray Linking      | Off<br>Automatic | <p>Set the printer to link the trays that have the same paper type and paper size settings.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Tray Configuration</b> is available only in certain printer models.</li><li>• For printers with a standard tray, the default setting is <b>Off</b>. For printers with an optional tray, the default setting is <b>Automatic</b>.</li></ul> |



| Menu item                 | Submenu item                                         | Settings                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                           | Show Tray Insert Message                             | Off<br>Only for unknown sizes*<br>Always | Display a message to select paper size and type after inserting the tray.                                                                                                                                                           |
|                           | A5 Loading                                           | Short Edge<br>Long Edge*                 | Specify the page orientation when loading A5 paper size.                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                           | Paper Prompts                                        | Auto*<br>Manual Paper                    | Set the paper source that the user fills when a prompt to load paper appears.                                                                                                                                                       |
|                           | Envelope Prompts                                     | Auto*<br>Manual Envelope                 | Set the paper source that the user fills when a prompt to load envelope appears.                                                                                                                                                    |
|                           | Action for Prompts                                   | Prompt user*<br>Continue<br>Use current  | Set the printer to resolve paper- or envelope-related change prompts.                                                                                                                                                               |
|                           | Multiple Universal Sizes                             | On<br>Off*                               | Set the tray to support multiple universal paper sizes.<br> <b>Note: Multiple Universal Sizes</b> is available only in certain printer models. |
| Reports                   | Menu Settings Page<br>Event Log<br>Event Log Summary | N/A                                      | Print reports about printer menu settings, status, and event logs.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Supply Usage And Counters | Clear Supply Usage History                           | Start                                    | Reset the supply usage history to the factory shipped level.                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                           | Fuser Reset                                          | Start                                    | Reset the counter after installing a new supply item or maintenance kit.                                                                                                                                                            |
|                           | ITM Reset                                            | Start                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                           | Reset Black Cartridge Counter                        | Start                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                           | Reset Cyan Cartridge Counter                         | Start                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                           | Reset Magenta Cartridge Counter                      | Start                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

| Menu item           | Submenu item                   | Settings                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                     | Reset Yellow Cartridge Counter | Start                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                     | Reset Maintenance Counter      | Start                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                     | Tiered Coverage Ranges         | Tiered Coverage Metrics (Show*)        | Show the Tiered Coverage Billing section on the Device Statistics report.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Printer Emulations  | PPDS Emulation                 | Off*<br>On                             | Set the printer to recognize and use the PPDS emulation data stream.                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                     | PS Emulation                   | On*<br>Off                             | Set the printer to recognize and use the PS emulation data stream.                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                     | Enable Prescribe               | On<br>Off*                             | Activate the PRESCRIBE printer language.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                     | Emulator Security              | Page Timeout (60*)                     | Set the page timeout during emulation.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                     |                                | Reset Emulator After Job (Off*)        | Reset the emulator after a print job.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                     |                                | Disable Printer Message Access (On*)   | Disable access to the printer message during emulation.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Fax Configuration   | Fax Low Power Support          | Disable Sleep<br>Permit Sleep<br>Auto* | Set fax to enter Sleep mode whenever the printer determines that it should.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models. |
| Print Configuration | Black Only Mode                | Off*<br>On                             | Print color content in grayscale.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                     | Color Trapping                 | Off<br>1<br>2*<br>3<br>4<br>5          | Enhance the printed output to compensate for misregistration in the printer.                                                                                                                                                                  |

| Menu item         | Submenu item                          | Settings         | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                   | Font Sharpening                       | 0 to 150 (24*)   | <p>Set a text point-size value below which the high-frequency screens are used when printing font data.</p> <p>For example, if the value is 24, then all fonts sized 24 points or less use the high-frequency screens.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Device Operations | Quiet Mode                            | On<br>Off*       | <p>Set the printer to operate in Quiet Mode.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> Enabling this setting slows down the printer performance.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                   | Safe Mode                             | Off*<br>On       | <p>Set the printer to operate in a special mode, in which it attempts to continue offering as much functionality as possible, despite known issues.</p> <p>For example, when set to <b>On</b>, and the duplex motor is nonfunctional, the printer performs one-sided printing of the documents even if the job is two-sided printing.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models.</p> |
|                   | Minimum Copy Memory                   | 80 MB*<br>100 MB | Set the minimum memory allocation for storing copy jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                   | Clear Custom Status                   | Start            | Erase user-defined strings for the Default or Alternate custom messages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                   | Clear All Remotely-Installed Messages | Start            | <p>Erase messages that were remotely installed.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                   | Automatically Display Error Screens   | On*<br>Off       | Show existing error messages on the display after the printer remains inactive on the home screen for a length of time equal to the Screen Timeout setting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

| Menu item                | Submenu item                        | Settings                                                                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                          | Honor orientation on fast path copy | On<br>Off*                                                                                         | Enable the printer to use the orientation setting under the Copy menu when sending quick copy jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                          | Service Nonvolatile Memory          | Encryption Status                                                                                  | Show the encryption status of the storage drive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Toner patch sensor setup | Calibration frequency preference    | Disabled<br>Fewest adjustments<br>Fewer adjustments<br>Normal*<br>Better accuracy<br>Best accuracy | Set the default calibration frequency.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                          | Full calibration                    | Start                                                                                              | Run the full color calibration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                          | TPS Information Page                | Print TPS Information Page                                                                         | Print a diagnostic page that contains toner patch sensor calibration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Scanner Configuration    | Scanner Manual Registration         | Print Quick Test<br>Front ADF Registration<br>Rear ADF Registration<br>Flatbed Registration        | Print a Quick Test target page, or manually register the flatbed and automatic document feeder (ADF) after replacing the ADF, scanner glass, or controller board.<br> <b>Note:</b> When printing a Quick Test target page, make sure that the margin spacing on the target page is uniform all the way around the target. If it is not, then the printer margins must be reset. |
|                          | Edge Erase                          | Flatbed Edge Erase 0 to 6 (3*)<br>ADF Edge Erase 0 to 6 (3*)                                       | Set the size, in millimeters, of the no-print area around an ADF or flatbed scan job.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                          | Disable Scanner                     | No*<br>Yes<br>ADF Only                                                                             | Disable the scanner when it is not working properly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                          | Tiff Byte Order                     | CPU Endianness*<br>Little Endian<br>Big Endian                                                     | Set the byte order of a TIFF-formatted scan output.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

| Menu item | Submenu item                     | Settings              | Description                                                                           |
|-----------|----------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|           | Exact Tiff Rows Per Strip        | On*<br>Off            | Set the RowsPerStrip tag value of a TIFF-formatted scan output.                       |
|           | Scanner Glass Cleaning Threshold | 1000 to 30000 (2500*) | Set the number of scans before the user receives a prompt to clean the scanner glass. |

## Out of Service Erase

| Menu item            | Submenu item                                   | Settings                                                                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Out of Service Erase | Memory Last Sanitized:                         | The setting is a read-only information.                                                 | Show when the printer memory was last erased.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                      | ISD last erased                                | The setting is a read-only information.                                                 | Show when the intelligent storage drive (ISD) was last erased.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu item is available only in certain printer models.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when an ISD is installed.</li> </ul> |
|                      | Sanitize all information on nonvolatile memory | Erase all printer and network settings<br><br>Erase all shortcuts and shortcut settings | Clear all information on nonvolatile memory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                      | Erase Intelligent Storage Drive                | Erase                                                                                   | Clear all information on the ISD.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu item is available only in certain printer models.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when an ISD is installed.</li> </ul>                             |

## VISIBLE HOME SCREEN ICONS

| Menu             | Setting                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Copy             | Do not display<br>Display* | Specify which icons to show on the home screen.<br> <b>Note:</b> Fax, USB Drive, and Bookmarks are available only in certain printer models. |
| E-mail           | Do not display<br>Display* |                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Fax              | Do not display<br>Display* |                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Status/Supplies  | Do not display<br>Display* |                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Job Queue        | Do not display<br>Display* |                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Change Language  | Do not display<br>Display* |                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Bookmarks        | Do not display*<br>Display |                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Held Jobs        | Do not display<br>Display* |                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| USB              | Do not display<br>Display* |                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Scan to Computer | Do not display<br>Display* |                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

## FIRMWARE UPDATE

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item         | Submenu Item | Settings                                | Description                                                    |
|-------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Installed Version | N/A          | The setting is a read-only information. | Show the current firmware version installed on the printer.    |
| Date Installed    | N/A          | The setting is a read-only information. | Shows the date when the firmware was installed on the printer. |

| Menu item                   | Submenu Item   | Settings                                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Check for updates           | N/A            | N/A                                                                                  | Let the printer check for firmware updates.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Update Firmware from Server | Auto Update    | Disabled*<br>Check Only<br>Check and Install                                         | Configure when firmware is updated and limits the download speed of the update.                                                                                                                                |
|                             | Scheduled Day  | Sunday<br>Monday<br>Tuesday*<br>Wednesday<br>Thursday<br>Friday<br>Saturday<br>Daily | Set the day and time for firmware updates.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item only appears when <b>Check Only</b> is selected. |
|                             | Scheduled Time | The setting is user-defined.                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

## ABOUT THIS PRINTER

| Menu item                        | Description                                         |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Xerox Asset Tag                  | Specify the identity of the printer.                |
| Customer Asset Tag               | Show the serial number of the printer.              |
| Printer Location                 | Specify the printer location.                       |
| Contact                          | Specify the contact information for the printer.    |
| Firmware Version                 | Show the firmware version installed on the printer. |
| Engine                           | Show the engine number of the printer.              |
| Serial Number                    | Show the serial number of the printer.              |
| Export Configuration File to USB | Export the configuration file to a flash drive.     |
| Export Compressed Logs to USB    | Export the compressed log files to a flash drive.   |
| Send Logs                        | Send printer log information to Xerox.              |

## Print

### LAYOUT

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                      | Settings                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Sides</b>                   | <b>1-Sided</b><br><b>2-Sided *</b>                                                                                                                                                                         | Specify whether to print on one side or two sides of the paper.                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <b>Flip Style</b>              | <b>Long Edge*</b><br><b>Short Edge</b>                                                                                                                                                                     | Specify whether the short edge or the long edge of the paper flips when performing two-sided printing.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Blank Pages</b>             | <b>Print</b><br><b>Do Not Print*</b>                                                                                                                                                                       | Print blank pages that are included in a print job.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Collate</b>                 | <b>Off [1,1,1,2,2,2] *</b><br><b>On [1,2,1,2,1,2]</b>                                                                                                                                                      | Keep the pages of a print job stacked in sequence, particularly when printing multiple copies of the job.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Separator Sheets</b>        | <b>None*</b><br><b>Between Copies</b><br><b>Between Jobs</b><br><b>Between Pages</b>                                                                                                                       | Insert blank separator sheets when printing.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Separator Sheet Source</b>  | <b>Tray [x]</b>                                                                                                                                                                                            | Specify the paper source for the separator sheet.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Pages per Side</b>          | <b>Off*</b><br><b>2 pages per side</b><br><b>3 pages per side</b><br><b>4 pages per side</b><br><b>6 pages per side</b><br><b>9 pages per side</b><br><b>12 pages per side</b><br><b>16 pages per side</b> | Print multiple pages on one side of a sheet of paper.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Pages per Side Ordering</b> | <b>Horizontal*</b><br><b>Reverse Horizontal</b><br><b>Vertical</b><br><b>Reverse Vertical</b>                                                                                                              | Specify the positioning of multiple-page side when using the <b>Pages per Side</b> menu.<br> <b>Note:</b> The positioning depends on the number of page images and their page orientation. |



| Menu item                         | Settings                             | Description                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Pages per Side Orientation</b> | Auto*<br>Landscape<br>Portrait       | Specify the orientation of a multiple-page side when using the <b>Pages per Side</b> menu. |
| <b>Pages per Side Border</b>      | None*<br>Solid                       | Print a border around each page when using the <b>Pages per Side</b> menu.                 |
| <b>Copies</b>                     | 1 to 9999 (1*)                       | Specify the number of copies for each print job.                                           |
| <b>Print Area</b>                 | Normal*<br>Fit to page<br>Whole Page | Set the printable area on a sheet of paper.                                                |

## SETUP



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item               | Settings                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Printer Language</b> | PCL Emulation<br>PS Emulation* | Set the printer language.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Setting a printer language default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.                                  |
| <b>Job Waiting</b>      | Off*<br>On                     | Preserve print jobs requiring supplies so that jobs not requiring the missing supplies can print.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.                             |
| <b>Job Hold Timeout</b> | 0 to 255 (30*)                 | Set the time in seconds that the printer waits for user intervention before it holds jobs that require unavailable resources.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed. |

| Menu item                                  | Settings                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Printer Usage                              | Max Speed<br>Max Yield*                       | <p>Determine how the printer utilizes the toner during printing.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When set to <b>Max Yield</b>, the color print cartridges slow down or stop while printing groups of black-only pages.</li> <li>When set to <b>Max Speed</b>, the color print cartridges always run while printing, whether color or black pages are being printed.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Download Target                            | RAM*<br>Flash<br>Disk                         | <p>Specify where to save all permanent resources that have been downloaded to the printer.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Resource Save                              | On<br>Off*                                    | <p>Determine what the printer does with downloaded resources, such as fonts and macros, when it receives a job that requires more than the available memory.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When set to <b>Off</b>, the printer retains downloaded resources only until memory is needed. Resources associated with the inactive printer language are deleted.</li> <li>When set to <b>On</b>, the printer preserves all the permanent downloaded resources across all language switches. When necessary, the printer shows memory full messages instead of deleting permanent resources.</li> </ul> |
| Print All Order                            | Alphabetical*<br>Newest First<br>Oldest First | Specify the order in which held and confidential jobs are printed when Print All is selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Automatic Deletion of Suspended Print Jobs | Off*<br>On                                    | Set the printer to cancel automatically the queued print jobs that are interrupted by errors such as paper jams and missing supplies.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

## QUALITY

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item        | Submenu item     | Settings                                                                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Print Mode       | N/A              | Black and White<br>Color*                                                    | Set the printer to print either in color or black and white.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Print Resolution | N/A              | Standard*                                                                    | Set the resolution for the printed output.<br> <b>Note:</b> Standard provides high-quality output at maximum speed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Toner Darkness   | N/A              | Light<br>Normal*<br>Dark                                                     | Determine the lightness or darkness of text images.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Halftone         | N/A              | Normal*<br>Detail                                                            | Enhance the printed output to have smoother lines with sharper edges.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| RGB Brightness   | N/A              | -6 to 6 (0*)                                                                 | Adjust the brightness, contrast, and saturation for color output.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| RGB Contrast     | N/A              | 0 to 5 (0*)                                                                  |  <b>Note:</b> This setting does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| RGB Saturation   | N/A              | 0 to 5 (0*)                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Advanced Imaging | Color Balance    | Cyan (0*)<br>Magenta (0*)<br>Yellow (0*)<br>Black (0*)<br><br>Reset Defaults | Adjust the amount of toner that is used for each color.<br><br>Reset all color settings to their default values.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                  | Color Correction | Off<br>Auto*<br>Manual                                                       | Modify the color settings that are used to print documents.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Off</b>—Sets the printer to receive the color correction from the software.</li> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—Sets the printer to apply different color profiles to each object on the printed page.</li> <li>• <b>Manual</b>—Allows the customization of the RGB or CMYK color conversions applied to each object on the printed page.</li> </ul> |

| Menu item | Submenu item | Settings     | Description                                                             |
|-----------|--------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|           | Color Adjust | Color Adjust | Calibrate the printer to adjust color variations in the printed output. |

## JOB ACCOUNTING

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                      | Settings                                                                                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Job Accounting                 | Off*<br>On                                                                                                | Set the printer to create a log of the print jobs that it receives.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Accounting Log Frequency       | Daily<br>Weekly<br>Monthly*                                                                               | Specify how often the printer creates a log file.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Log Action at End of Frequency | None*<br>Email Current Log<br>Email & Delete Current Log<br>Post Current Log<br>Post & Delete Current Log | Specify how the printer responds when the frequency threshold expires.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> The value defined in <b>Accounting Log Frequency</b> determines when this action is triggered.      |
| Log Near Full Level            | On* (5MB)<br>Off                                                                                          | Specify the maximum size of the log file before the printer executes the <b>Log Action at Near Full</b> .<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed. |

| Menu item                  | Settings                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Log Action at Near Full    | None*<br>Email Current Log<br>Email & Delete Current Log<br>Email & Delete Oldest Log<br>Post Current Log<br>Post & Delete Current Log<br>Post & Delete Oldest Log<br>Delete Current Log<br>Delete Oldest Log<br>Delete All But Current<br>Delete All Logs | Specify how the printer responds when a storage drive is nearly full.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> The value defined in <b>Log Near Full Level</b> determines when this action is triggered. |
| Log Action at Full         | None*<br>Email & Delete Current Log<br>Email & Delete Oldest Log<br>Post & Delete Current Log<br>Post & Delete Oldest Log<br>Delete Current Log<br>Delete Oldest Log<br>Delete All But Current<br>Delete All Logs                                          | Specify how the printer responds when a storage drive usage reaches the maximum limit (100MB).                                                                                                                                                                        |
| URL to Post Log            | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Specify where the printer posts job accounting logs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Email Address to Send Logs | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Specify the email address to which the printer sends job accounting logs.                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Log File Prefix            | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Specify the prefix for the log files.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> The current host name defined in the TCP/IP menu is used as the default log file prefix.                                |

## PDF



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item       | Settings               | Description                                            |
|-----------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Scale To Fit    | Yes<br>No *            | Scale the page content to fit the selected paper size. |
| Annotations     | Print<br>Do Not Print* | Specify whether to print annotations in the PDF.       |
| Print PDF Error | On*<br>Off             | Enable the printing of PDF error.                      |

## POSTSCRIPT



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item            | Settings     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Print PS Error       | On<br>Off *  | Print a page that describes the PostScript® emulation error.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> When an error occurs, processing of the job stops, the printer prints an error message, and the rest of the print job is flushed.                                    |
| Minimum Line Width   | 1 to 30 (2*) | Set the minimum stroke width.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Jobs printed in Standard use half the value.                                                                                                                                                        |
| Lock PS Startup Mode | On*<br>Off   | Disable the SysStart file.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The default setting varies depending on your printer model.</li><li>• Enabling the SysStart file exposes your printer or network to a security risk.</li></ul> |
| Image Smoothing      | On<br>Off*   | Enhance the contrast and sharpness of low-resolution images.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This setting has no effect on images with a resolution of 300 dpi or higher.                                                                                         |

| Menu item         | Settings                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Font Priority     | Resident*<br>Flash/Disk | <p>Establish the font search order.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Resident</b>—Sets the printer to search its memory for the requested font before searching the storage drive.</li> <li>• <b>Flash/Disk</b>—Sets the printer to search the storage drive for the requested font before searching the printer memory.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.</li> </ul> |
| Wait Timeout      | Disabled<br>Enabled*    | <p>Enable the printer to wait for more data before canceling a print job.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> When set to <b>On</b>, 40 seconds is the factory default setting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Wait Timeout Time | 15 to 65535 (40*)       | <p>Set the time in seconds for the printer to wait for more data before canceling a print job.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when Wait Timeout is enabled.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

## PCL



An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item    | Settings                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Scale To Fit | Off*<br>On                              | Scale the page content to fit the selected paper size.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Font Source  | Resident*<br>All<br>Flash<br>Font Card  | <p>Select the source which contains the default font selection</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>Flash</b> and <b>Font Card</b> appear only when an intelligent storage drive (ISD) is installed.</p> |
| Font Name    | [List of available fonts]<br>(Courier*) | Select a font from the specified font source.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

| Menu item                | Settings                                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Symbol Set               | [List of available symbol set] (12U PC-850*)                    | Specify the symbol set for each font name.<br> <b>Note:</b> A symbol set is a set of alphabetic and numeric characters, punctuation, and special symbols. Symbol sets support the different languages or specific programs such as math symbols for scientific text.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Pitch                    | 0.08 to 100.00 (10.00*)                                         | Specify the pitch for fixed or monospaced fonts.<br> <b>Note:</b> Pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters in a horizontal inch of type.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Orientation              | Portrait*<br>Landscape<br>Reverse Portrait<br>Reverse Landscape | Specify the orientation of text and graphics on the page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Lines per Page           | 1 to 255                                                        | Specify the number of lines of text for each page printed through the PCL® emulation data stream.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This menu item activates vertical escapement that causes the selected number of requested lines to print between the default margins of the page.</li><li>• <b>60</b> is the U.S. factory default setting. <b>64</b> is the international factory default setting.</li></ul> |
| PCL5 Minimum Line Width  | 1 to 30 (2*)                                                    | Set the initial minimum stroke width.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| PCLXL Minimum Line Width | 1 to 30 (2*)                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| A4 Width                 | 198 mm*<br>203 mm                                               | Set the width of the logical page on A4-size paper.<br> <b>Note:</b> Logical page is the space on the physical page where data is printed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Auto CR after LF         | On<br>Off*                                                      | Set the printer to perform a carriage return after a line feed control command.<br> <b>Note:</b> Carriage return is a mechanism that commands the printer to move the position of the cursor to the first position on the same line.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |



| Menu item          | Settings                                                         | Description                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Auto LF after CR   | On<br>Off *                                                      | Set the printer to perform a line feed after a carriage return control command.                                                                                    |
| Tray Renumber      | Assign Tray [x]<br>Assign Manual Paper<br>Assign Manual Envelope | Configure the printer to work with a different print driver or custom application that uses a different set of source assignments to request a given paper source. |
|                    | View Factory Defaults                                            | Show the factory default value assigned for each paper source.                                                                                                     |
|                    | Restore Defaults                                                 | Restore the tray renumber values to their factory defaults.                                                                                                        |
| Print Timeout      | Disabled<br>Enabled*                                             | Set the printer to end a print job after it has been idle for the specified amount of time in seconds.                                                             |
| Print Timeout Time | 1 to 255 (90*)                                                   |  <b>Note:</b> Print Timeout Time appears only when Print Timeout is enabled.      |

## IMAGE

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item | Settings                                                                                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Auto Fit  | On<br>Off*                                                                                   | Select the best available paper size and orientation setting for an image.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> When set to <b>On</b> , this menu item overrides the scaling and orientation settings for the image. |
| Invert    | Off*<br>On                                                                                   | Invert bitonal monochrome images.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item does not apply to GIF or JPEG image formats.                                                                                   |
| Scaling   | Best Fit*<br>Anchor Top Left<br>Anchor Center<br>Fit Height/Width<br>Fit Height<br>Fit Width | Adjust the image to fit the printable area.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> When <b>Auto Fit</b> is set to <b>On</b> , <b>Scaling</b> is automatically set to <b>Best Fit</b> .                                 |

| Menu item   | Settings          | Description                                               |
|-------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Orientation | Portrait*         | Specify the orientation of text and graphics on the page. |
|             | Landscape         |                                                           |
|             | Reverse Portrait  |                                                           |
|             | Reverse Landscape |                                                           |

## Paper

### TRAY CONFIGURATION



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item       | Submenu item    | Settings        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Default Source  | N/A             | Tray [x] (1*)   | Set the default paper source for all print jobs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                 |                 | Manual Paper    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                 |                 | Manual Envelope |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Paper Size/Type | Tray [x] (1*)   | Size            | Specify the paper size or paper type loaded in each paper source.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                 | Manual Paper    | Type            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                 | Manual Envelope |                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Substitute Size | N/A             | Off             | Set the printer to substitute a specified paper size if the requested size is not loaded in any paper source.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Off</b>—Prompts the user to load the required paper size.</li> <li>• <b>All Listed</b>—Allows all available substitutions.</li> </ul> |
|                 |                 | Letter/A4       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                 |                 | All Listed*     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

### MEDIA CONFIGURATION



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item        | Submenu item | Settings    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Units of Measure | N/A          | Inches      | Specify the unit of measurement for the universal paper.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> <b>Inches</b> is the U.S. factory default setting. <b>Millimeters</b> is the international factory default setting. |
|                  |              | Millimeters |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

| Menu item               | Submenu item          | Settings                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Universal Setup         | All Input Trays       | Portrait Width               | Set the portrait width of the universal paper.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                         |                       | Portrait Height              | Set the portrait height of the universal paper.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                         |                       | Feed Direction (Short Edge*) | Set the printer to pick paper from the short edge or long edge direction.<br> <b>Note:</b> Long Edge appears only when the longest edge is shorter than the maximum width supported. |
| Custom Scan Sizes Setup | Scan Size Name        | The setting is user-defined. | Assign a name for the custom scan.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                         | Width                 | 1 to 8.5 inches (8.5*)       | Specify the width of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                         |                       | 25 to 215.9 mm (216*)        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                         | Height                | 1 to 25 inches (14*)         | Specify the height of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                         |                       | 25 to 635 mm (356*)          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                         | Orientation           | Portrait*<br>Landscape       | Specify the orientation of the content on the original document.<br> <b>Note:</b> Landscape appears only in some printer models                                                    |
|                         | 2 scans per side      | Off*<br>On                   | Set whether the printer scans each side of the document once or twice. Selecting On scans each side twice for improved accuracy.                                                                                                                                       |
| Media Type Setup        | [List of paper types] | Texture<br>Weight<br>Loading | Specify the texture, weight, and orientation of the paper.<br> <b>Note:</b> Depending on the paper type, Loading shows either 1 or 2 sided printing or 1 sided printing only.      |

## Copy

### COPY DEFAULTS

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item              | Submenu item | Settings                                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Content Type           | N/A          | Text<br>Text/Photo*<br>Photo<br>Graphics                                               | Select the content type of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Sides                  | N/A          | 1 sided to 1 sided*<br>1 sided to 2 sided<br>2 sided to 1 sided<br>2 sided to 2 sided  | Set scanning behavior for single- or double-sided documents.<br> <b>Note:</b> 2 sided to 1 sided and 2 sided to 2 sided appears only in certain printer models. |
| Separator Sheets       | N/A          | None*<br>Between Copies<br>Between Jobs<br>Between Pages                               | Choose whether to insert blank separator sheets when printing.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Separator Sheet Source | N/A          | Tray [x] (1*)                                                                          | Select the paper source for separator sheets.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Color                  | N/A          | Off<br>On*<br>Auto                                                                     | Choose whether to print in color or black and white.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Pages per Side         | N/A          | Off*<br>2 Portrait pages<br>4 Portrait pages<br>2 Landscape pages<br>4 Landscape pages | Set the number of page images to print on one sheet.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Print Page Borders     | N/A          | On<br>Off*                                                                             | Add borders around each image when printing multiple pages on one sheet.                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Collate                | N/A          | Off [1,1,1,2,2]<br>On [1,2,1,2,1,2]*                                                   | Print multiple copies in sequence.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

| Menu item        | Submenu item  | Settings                                                             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| "Copy from" Size | N/A           | [List of paper sizes]                                                | Set the paper size of the original document.<br> <b>Note:</b> <b>Letter</b> is the U.S. factory default setting. <b>A4</b> is the international factory default setting. |
| "Copy to" Source | N/A           | Tray [x] (1*)<br>Manual Feeder<br>Auto Size Match                    | Select the paper source for the copy job.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Darkness         | N/A           | 1 to 9 (5*)                                                          | Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Number of Copies | N/A           | 1 to 9999 (1*)                                                       | Specify how many copies to print.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Header/Footer    | Left Header   | Left Header (Off*)<br><br>Print On (All pages*)<br><br>Custom Text   | Add text to headers and footers of the copied document.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                  | Middle Header | Middle Header (Off*)<br><br>Print On (All pages*)<br><br>Custom Text |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                  | Right Header  | Right Header (Off*)<br><br>Print On (All pages*)<br><br>Custom Text  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                  | Left Footer   | Left Footer (Off*)<br><br>Print On (All pages*)<br><br>Custom Text   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

| Menu item        | Submenu item           | Settings                                                              | Description                                                            |
|------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                  | Middle Footer          | Middle Footer (Off*)<br><br>Print On (All pages*)<br><br>Custom Text  |                                                                        |
|                  | Right Footer           | Right Footer (Off*)<br><br>Print On (All pages*)<br><br>Custom Text   |                                                                        |
| Advanced Imaging | Color Balance          | Cyan - Red (0*)<br><br>Magenta - Green (0*)<br><br>Yellow - Blue (0*) | Adjust toner levels for each color.                                    |
|                  | Auto Color Detect      | Color Sensitivity (5*)<br><br>Area Sensitivity (5*)                   | Control how much color the printer detects from the original document. |
|                  | Contrast               | Best for Content*<br><br>0 to 5                                       | Adjust the output contrast.                                            |
|                  | Background Removal     | Level (0*)                                                            | Control how much background appears in a scanned image.                |
|                  | Auto Center            | On<br><br>Off*                                                        | Center the content on the page.                                        |
|                  | Scan Edge to Edge      | On<br><br>Off*                                                        | Include the entire page without margins when copying.                  |
|                  | Saturation             | 1 to 5 (1*)                                                           | Adjust the color intensity of the copy outputs.                        |
| Admin Controls   | Allow Color Copies     | On*<br><br>Off                                                        | Enable color copying.                                                  |
|                  | Allow Priority Copies  | On*<br><br>Off                                                        | Allow interrupting a print job to copy a page or document.             |
|                  | Allow Save as Shortcut | On*<br><br>Off                                                        | Save custom copy settings as shortcuts.                                |

| Menu item | Submenu item       | Settings   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------|--------------------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|           | <b>Sample Copy</b> | On<br>Off* | Print a sample copy.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only in certain printer models.</li> </ul> |

## Fax

### FAX DEFAULTS

#### Fax Mode

| Menu item       | Settings                                            | Description        |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Fax Mode</b> | <b>Fax*</b><br><b>Fax Server</b><br><b>Disabled</b> | Select a fax mode. |

#### Fax Setup

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                   | Submenu item      | Settings                              | Description                                   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <b>General Fax Settings</b> | <b>Fax Name</b>   | The setting is user-defined.          | Specify your fax ID.                          |
|                             | <b>Fax Number</b> | The setting is user-defined.          | Specify your fax number.                      |
|                             | <b>Fax ID</b>     | <b>Fax Name</b><br><b>Fax Number*</b> | Set the fax ID to use during fax negotiation. |

|  |                           |                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <b>Enable Manual Fax</b>  | <b>On</b><br><b>Off*</b>                                                                              | <p>Turn on the manual fax function in the printer.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu item requires a line splitter and a telephone handset.</li> <li>• Use a regular telephone line to answer an incoming fax job and to dial a fax number.</li> <li>• To go directly to the manual fax function, touch <b>#</b> and <b>0</b> on the keypad.</li> </ul> |
|  | <b>Memory Use</b>         | <b>All receive</b><br><b>Mostly receive</b><br><b>Equal*</b><br><b>Mostly send</b><br><b>All send</b> | <p>Set the amount of internal printer memory allocated for faxing.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This menu item prevents memory buffer conditions and failed faxes.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|  | <b>Cancel Faxes</b>       | <b>Allow*</b><br><b>Don't Allow</b>                                                                   | <p>Cancel outgoing or incoming faxes.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|  | <b>Fax Number Masking</b> | <b>Off*</b><br><b>From Left</b><br><b>From Right</b>                                                  | <p>Specify the format for masking an outgoing fax number.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|  | <b>Digits to Mask</b>     | <b>0 to 58 (0*)</b>                                                                                   | <p>Specify the number of digits to mask in an outgoing fax number.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |



|                                     |            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable Line Connected Detection     | On*<br>Off | <p>Determine whether a telephone line is connected to the printer.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Events are detected immediately.</li> <li>• This menu item is available only in certain printer models.</li> </ul>                                         |
| Enable Line in Wrong Jack Detection | On*<br>Off | <p>Determine whether a telephone line is connected to the correct port on the printer.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Events are detected immediately.</li> <li>• This menu item is available only in certain printer models.</li> </ul>                     |
| Enable Extension in Use Support     | On*<br>Off | <p>Determine whether a telephone line is used by another device, such as another phone on the same line.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Events are detected immediately.</li> <li>• This menu item is available only in certain printer models.</li> </ul> |
| Optimize Fax Compatibility          | N/A        | <p>Configure the printer fax functionality for optimal compatibility with other fax machines.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models.</p>                                                                                                            |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                              |                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Fax Transport                | <b>T.38</b><br><b>Analog</b><br><b>etherFAX</b><br><b>G.711</b><br><b>None</b> | Set the fax transport method.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>etherFax</b> appears only if an etherFAX license bundle is installed in the printer.</li> <li>• <b>T.38</b> and <b>G.711</b> appear only if a Fax over IP (FoIP) license bundle is installed in the printer.</li> <li>• Depending on your printer model, the factory default settings may vary.</li> </ul> |
| <b>HTTPS Fax Settings</b><br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu appears only if <b>Fax Transport</b> is set to <b>etherFAX</b> . | HTTPS service URL            | The setting is user-defined.                                                   | Specify the etherFAX service URL.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                            | HTTPS Proxy                  | The setting is user-defined.                                                   | Specify a proxy server URL.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                            | HTTPS Proxy User             | The setting is user-defined.                                                   | Specify the username and password for the proxy server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                            | HTTPS Proxy Password         |                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Enable SSL Peer Verification | <b>On*</b><br><b>Off</b>                                                       | Determine whether the printer uses its CA certificates to verify the authenticity of the etherFAX server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Fax Send Encryption          | <b>Disabled</b><br><b>Enabled*</b><br><b>Required</b>                          | Enable encryption for outgoing fax messages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Fax Receive Encryption       | <b>Disabled</b><br><b>Enabled*</b><br><b>Required</b>                          | Enable encryption for incoming fax messages.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                            | HTTPS Fax Status             | The setting is a read-only information.                                        | Show the etherFAX communication status.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

|                   |                |                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fax Send Settings | Resolution     | Standard*<br>Fine<br>Super Fine<br>Ultra Fine         | Set the resolution of the scanned image.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> A higher resolution increases fax transmission time and requires more memory.                                                                                                            |
|                   | Original Size  | [List of paper sizes]<br>(Mixed Sizes*)               | Specify the size of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                   | Orientation    | Portrait*<br>Landscape                                | Specify the orientation of the original document.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models.                                                                                                                     |
|                   | Sides (Duplex) | 1 sided*<br>2 sided, short edge<br>2 sided, long edge | Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models.                                                                        |
|                   | Content Type   | Text*<br>Text/Photo<br>Photo<br>Graphics              | Select the content type of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                   | Darkness       | 1 to 9 (5*)                                           | Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                   | Behind a PABX  | On<br>Off*                                            | Set the printer to dial a fax number without waiting to recognize the dial tone.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Private Automated Branch Exchange (PABX) is a telephone network that allows a single access number to offer multiple lines to outside callers. |
|                   | Dial Mode      | Tone*<br>Pulse                                        | Specify the dial mode for incoming or outgoing faxes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

|  |                  |                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--|------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Advanced Imaging | Color Balance      | <p>Adjust the color intensity during scanning.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>0</b> is the factory default setting for <b>Cyan - Red</b>, <b>Magenta - Green</b>, and <b>Yellow - Blue</b>.</p>     |
|  |                  | Contrast           | <p>Set the contrast of the output.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>Best for Content</b> is the factory default setting.</p>                                                                          |
|  |                  | Background Removal | <p>Adjust the amount of background visible on a scanned image.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>0</b> is the factory default setting for <b>Level</b>.</p>                                            |
|  |                  | Scan Edge to Edge  | <p>Allow edge-to-edge scanning of the original document.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>Off</b> is the factory default setting.</p>                                                               |
|  |                  | Saturation         | <p>Adjust the color intensity of the fax outputs.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>1</b> is the factory default setting.</p>                                                                        |
|  | Admin Controls   | Automatic Redial   | <p>Specify the number of attempts that the printer redials before it cancels sending the fax to a specified destination.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>5</b> is the factory default setting.</p> |

|  |  |                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--|--|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  |  | <b>Redial Frequency</b>       | <p>Increase the time between redial attempts to increase the chance of sending fax successfully.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>3</b> is the factory default setting.</p>                                                                                                                                               |
|  |  | <b>Enable ECM</b>             | <p>Activate Error Correction Mode (ECM) for fax jobs.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ECM detects and corrects errors in the fax transmission process caused by telephone line noise and poor signal strength.</li> <li>• <b>On</b> is the factory default setting.</li> </ul> |
|  |  | <b>Enable Fax Scans</b>       | <p>Create faxes using the printer scanner.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>On</b> is the factory default setting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|  |  | <b>Allow Save as Shortcut</b> | <p>Save fax numbers as shortcuts on the printer.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>On</b> is the factory default setting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|  |  | <b>Max Speed</b>              | <p>Set the maximum speed for sending fax.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>33600</b> is the factory default setting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|  |  | <b>Enable Color Fax Scans</b> | <p>Enable color scans for fax.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>Off by Default</b> is the factory default setting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

|                             |                               |                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                             |                               | <b>Auto Convert Color Faxes to Mono Faxes</b>             | Convert all outgoing color faxes to black and white.<br> <b>Note:</b> <b>On</b> is the factory default setting.                                                                |
|                             |                               | <b>Confirm Fax Number</b>                                 | Ask the user to confirm the fax number.<br> <b>Note:</b> <b>Off</b> is the factory default setting.                                                                            |
|                             |                               | <b>Dial Prefix</b>                                        | Set a dialing prefix.<br><br>The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Fax Receive Settings</b> | <b>Fax Job Waiting</b>        | <b>None*</b><br><b>Toner</b><br><b>Toner and Supplies</b> | Remove fax jobs that request specific unavailable resources from the print queue.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed. |
|                             | <b>Rings to Answer</b>        | <b>1 to 25 (3*)</b>                                       | Set the number of rings required before the printer answers the incoming calls.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                             | <b>Auto Reduction</b>         | <b>On*</b><br><b>Off</b>                                  | Scale incoming fax to fit on the page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                             | <b>Paper Source</b>           | <b>Tray [x]</b><br><b>Auto*</b>                           | Set the paper source for printing incoming fax.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                             | <b>Sides</b>                  | <b>On</b><br><b>Off*</b>                                  | Print on both sides of the paper.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                             | <b>Separator Sheets</b>       | <b>None*</b><br><b>Between Jobs</b>                       | Specify whether to insert blank separator sheets when printing.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                             | <b>Separator Sheet Source</b> | <b>Tray [x] (1*)</b>                                      | Specify the paper source for the separator sheet.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                             | <b>Output Bin</b>             | <b>Standard Bin</b>                                       | Specify the output bin for received faxes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

|  |                              |                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--|------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <b>Fax Footer</b>            | <b>On</b><br><b>Off*</b>        | Print the transmission information at the bottom of each page from a received fax.                                                                                                                                          |
|  | <b>Fax Footer Time Stamp</b> | <b>Receive*</b><br><b>Print</b> | Print the time stamp at the bottom of each page from a received fax.                                                                                                                                                        |
|  | <b>Admin Controls</b>        | <b>Enable Fax Receive</b>       | Set the printer to receive fax.<br> <b>Note:</b> <b>On</b> is the factory default setting.                                               |
|  |                              | <b>Enable Color Fax Receive</b> | Set the printer to receive fax in color.<br> <b>Note:</b> <b>On</b> is the factory default setting.                                      |
|  |                              | <b>Enable Caller ID</b>         | Show the caller ID information of the incoming call on the printer display.<br> <b>Note:</b> <b>On</b> is the factory default setting. |
|  |                              | <b>Block No Name Fax</b>        | Block incoming faxes without fax IDs.<br> <b>Note:</b> <b>Off</b> is the factory default setting.                                      |
|  |                              | <b>Answer On</b>                | Set a distinctive ring pattern for incoming fax.<br> <b>Note:</b> <b>All Rings</b> is the factory default setting.                     |
|  |                              | <b>Auto Answer</b>              | Set the printer to receive fax automatically.<br> <b>Note:</b> <b>On</b> is the factory default setting.                               |

|  |  |                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--|--|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  |  | <b>Manual Answer Code</b> | <p>Manually enter a code on the telephone number pad to begin receiving fax.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu item is available only in certain printer models.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when the printer shares a line with a telephone.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when you set the printer to receive fax manually.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when <b>Fax Transport</b> is set to <b>Analog</b>.</li> <li>• The setting is user-defined.</li> </ul> |
|  |  | <b>Fax Forwarding</b>     | <p>Specify whether to forward received fax.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>Print</b> is the factory default setting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|  |  | <b>Forward To</b>         | <p>Specify where to forward received fax.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when <b>Fax Forwarding</b> is set to <b>Print and Forward</b> or <b>Forward</b>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |



|                  |                            |                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                  |                            | Confirmation Email                                                           | <p>Send a confirmation email when fax forwarding is successful.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This setting appears only when <b>Fax Forward</b> is set to <b>Print and Forward</b> or <b>Forward</b>.</li> <li>The setting is user-defined.</li> </ul>                                                                                                        |
|                  |                            | Max Speed                                                                    | <p>Set the maximum speed for transmitting fax.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>33600</b> is the factory default setting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Fax Log Settings | Transmission Log Frequency | Always*<br>Never<br>Only for Error                                           | Specify how often the printer creates a transmission log.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                  | Transmission Log Action    | Print (On*)<br>Email (Off*)<br>Email Logs To<br>Include faxed document (On*) | <p>Print or email a log for successful fax transmission or transmission error.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This menu item appears only if <b>Transmission Log Frequency</b> is set to <b>Always</b> or <b>Only For Error</b>.</li> <li><b>Email Logs To</b> and <b>Include faxed document</b> appear only if <b>Email</b> is set to <b>On</b>.</li> </ul> |
|                  | Receive Error Log          | Print Never*<br>Print on Error                                               | Print a log for fax-receive failures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                  | Auto Print Logs            | On*<br>Off                                                                   | Print all fax activity.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                      |                                                |                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Log Paper Source     | Tray [x] (1*)                                  | Specify the paper source for printing logs.                                                                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Logs Display         | Remote Fax Name*<br>Dialed Number              | Identify the sender by remote fax name or fax number.                                                       |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Enable Job Log       | On*<br>Off                                     | View a summary of all fax jobs.                                                                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Enable Call Log      | On*<br>Off                                     | View a summary of the fax call history.                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Log Output Bin       | Standard Bin                                   | Specify the output bin for printed logs.                                                                    |
| Speaker Settings                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Speaker Mode         | Always Off*<br>Always On<br>On until Connected | Set the fax speaker mode.                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Speaker Volume       | Low*<br>High                                   | Adjust the fax speaker volume.                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Ringer Volume        | Off*<br>On                                     | Enable the ringer volume.                                                                                   |
| <b>VoIP Settings</b><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if a Fax over IP (FoIP) license bundle is installed in the printer. | VoIP Protocol        | SIP*<br>H.323                                  | Set the Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP) protocol.                                                       |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | STUN Server          | The setting is user-defined.                   | Specify the STUN server to traverse a firewall.                                                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Force Fax Mode       | Off<br>On*                                     | Switch VoIP gateway from analog to T.38 at the beginning of a fax call.                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Force Fax Mode Delay | 0 to 15 (7*)                                   | Set the time delay in seconds when sending another invite of <b>Force Fax Mode</b> .                        |
| <b>SIP Settings</b><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if a Fax over IP (FoIP) license bundle is installed in the printer.  | Proxy                | The setting is user-defined.                   | Specify the IP address of the system that converts the phone number to an IP address where the fax is sent. |

|  |                                     |                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | <b>Registrar</b>                    | The setting is user-defined.            | Specify a name or IP address of the system that handles the registration of Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) clients.                                                                                                                                                |
|  | <b>User</b>                         | The setting is user-defined.            | Specify the name of the user for SIP.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|  | <b>Password</b>                     | The setting is user-defined.            | Specify the password that is used in registering with the SIP Registrar.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|  | <b>Auth ID</b>                      | The setting is user-defined.            | <p>The username that is used when registering.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> If <b>Auth ID</b> is not specified, the system automatically uses the username from the <b>User</b> field.</p> |
|  | <b>Transport for Registration</b>   | UDP*<br>TCP                             | Set the SIP transport type for registration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|  | <b>Transport for Incoming Calls</b> | UDP<br>TCP<br>UDP And TCP*              | Set the SIP transport type for incoming calls.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|  | <b>Transport for Outgoing Calls</b> | UDP*<br>TCP                             | Set the SIP transport type for outgoing calls.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|  | <b>Outbound Proxy</b>               | The setting is user-defined.            | Specify an outbound proxy to forward all SIP communication.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|  | <b>Contact</b>                      | The setting is user-defined.            | Specify a contact name for SIP.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|  | <b>Realm</b>                        | The setting is user-defined.            | <p>Specify a realm name for SIP.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> If <b>Realm</b> is not specified, the system automatically uses the username from the <b>Contact</b> field.</p>            |
|  | <b>SIP Registration Status</b>      | The setting is a read-only information. | Show the status of the SIP Registration.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                     |                              |                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>H.323 Settings</b><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if a Fax over IP (FoIP) license bundle is installed in the printer.  | <b>Gateway</b>                      | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the H.323 gateway IP address.                                               |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>Gatekeeper</b>                   | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the H.323 gatekeeper.                                                       |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>User</b>                         | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the username used with the H.323 gateway.                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>Password</b>                     | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the password for the H.323 gateway.                                         |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>Enable Fast Start</b>            | Off*<br>On                   | Enable Fast Start.                                                                  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>Disable H.245 Tunneling</b>      | Off*<br>On                   | Disable H.323 Tunneling.                                                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>Disable Gatekeeper Discovery</b> | Off<br>On*                   | Disable H.323 Gatekeeper Discovery.                                                 |
| <b>T.38 Settings</b><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if a Fax over IP (FoIP) license bundle is installed in the printer. | <b>Indicator Redundancy</b>         | 0 to 5 (3*)                  | Set the number of times that a fax indicator is repeated in the T.38 communication. |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>Low Speed Redundancy</b>         | 0 to 5 (3*)                  | Set the number of times that low speed data is repeated in the T.38 communication.  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>High Speed Redundancy</b>        | 0 to 5 (1*)                  | Set the number of times that high-speed data is repeated in the T.38 communication. |

## Fax Server Setup

### General Fax Settings

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item        | Settings                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>To Format</b> | The setting is user-defined. | Specify a fax recipient.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> If you want to use the fax number, then type the number sign (#) before a number. |

| Menu item          | Settings                     | Description                                                 |
|--------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Reply Address      | The setting is user-defined. | Specify a reply address for sending fax.                    |
| Subject            | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the fax subject and message.                        |
| Message            | The setting is user-defined. |                                                             |
| Enable fax receive | Off*<br>On                   | Set the printer to receive analog, FoIP, or etherFAX faxes. |

### Fax Server Email Settings

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                   | Settings                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Use Email SMTP Server       | On*<br>Off                         | Use the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) settings for email in receiving and sending faxes.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> When set to <b>On</b> , all other settings of the <b>Fax Server Email Settings</b> menu are not shown. |
| Primary SMTP Gateway        | The setting is user-defined.       | Type the IP address or host name of the primary SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port   | 1 to 65535 (25*)                   | Enter the port number of the primary SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Secondary SMTP Gateway      | The setting is user-defined.       | Type the server IP address or host name of your secondary or backup SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Secondary SMTP Gateway Port | 1 to 65535 (25*)                   | Enter the server port number of your secondary or backup SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| SMTP Timeout                | 5 to 30 (30*)                      | Set the time before the printer times out if the SMTP server does not respond.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Reply Address               | The setting is user-defined.       | Specify a reply address for sending fax.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Use SSL/TLS                 | Disabled*<br>Negotiate<br>Required | Specify whether to send fax using an encrypted link.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

| Menu item                               | Settings                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Require Trusted Certificate             | On*<br>Off                                                                                                                        | Specify a trusted certificate when accessing the SMTP server.                 |
| SMTP Server Authentication              | No authentication required*<br>Login / Plain<br>NTLM<br>CRAM-MD5<br>Digest-MD5<br>Kerberos 5<br>OAuth 2.0                         | Set the authentication type for the SMTP server.                              |
| Device-Initiated Email                  | None*<br>Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                              | Specify whether credentials are required for device-initiated email.          |
| User-Initiated Email                    | None*<br>Use Device SMTP Credentials<br>Use Session User ID and Password<br>Use Session Email address and Password<br>Prompt user | Specify whether credentials are required for user-initiated email.            |
| Use Active Directory Device Credentials | On<br>Off*                                                                                                                        | Enable user credentials and group destinations to connect to the SMTP server. |
| Device Userid                           | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                      | Specify the user ID and password to connect to the SMTP server.               |
| Device Password                         | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                      |                                                                               |
| Kerberos 5 REALM                        | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                      | Specify the realm for the Kerberos 5 authentication protocol.                 |
| NTLM Domain                             | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                      | Specify the domain name for the NTLM security protocol.                       |
| Disable "SMTP server not set up" error  | On<br>Off*                                                                                                                        | Disable the SMTP setup error message.                                         |



An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item             | Settings                                                                                                                                                         | Description                                                                                                                               |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Image Format</b>   | <b>PDF (.pdf)*</b><br><b>TIFF (.tif)</b>                                                                                                                         | Specify the file format for the scanned image.                                                                                            |
| <b>Content Type</b>   | <b>Text*</b><br><b>Text/Photo</b><br><b>Photo</b><br><b>Graphics</b>                                                                                             | Select the content type of the original document.                                                                                         |
| <b>Content Source</b> | <b>Black and White Laser</b><br><b>Color Laser*</b><br><b>Inkjet</b><br><b>Photo/Film</b><br><b>Magazine</b><br><b>Newspaper</b><br><b>Press</b><br><b>Other</b> | Improve the output result based on the source of the original document.                                                                   |
| <b>Fax Resolution</b> | <b>Standard*</b><br><b>Fine</b><br><b>Super Fine</b><br><b>Ultra Fine</b>                                                                                        | Set the fax resolution.                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Sides (Duplex)</b> | <b>1 sided*</b><br><b>2 sided, short edge</b><br><b>2 sided, long edge</b>                                                                                       | Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document.                                             |
| <b>Darkness</b>       | <b>1 to 9 (5*)</b>                                                                                                                                               | Set the darkness of the scanned image.                                                                                                    |
| <b>Orientation</b>    | <b>Portrait*</b><br><b>Landscape</b>                                                                                                                             | Specify the orientation of text and graphics on the page.<br><br><b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models. |

| Menu item     | Settings              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Original Size | [List of paper sizes] | <p>Set the paper size of the original document.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Mixed Sizes</b> is the U.S. factory default setting. <b>A4</b> is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• Paper size support varies depending on your printer model.</li> </ul> |

## Email

### EMAIL SETUP

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                             | Settings                           | Description                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary SMTP Gateway                  | The setting is user-defined.       | Enter the IP address or hostname of the primary SMTP server.                      |
| Primary SMTP Gateway Port             | 1 to 65535 (25*)                   | Enter the port number of the primary SMTP server.                                 |
| Secondary SMTP Gateway                | The setting is user-defined.       | Enter the IP address or hostname of the secondary SMTP server.                    |
| Secondary SMTP Gateway Port           | 1 to 65535 (25*)                   | Enter the port number of the secondary SMTP server.                               |
| SMTP Timeout                          | 5 to 30 seconds (30*)              | Set the time (in seconds) the SMTP server waits before stopping an email attempt. |
| Reply Address                         | The setting is user-defined.       | Specify a reply address for emails.                                               |
| Always use SMTP default Reply Address | On<br>Off*                         | Use the default reply address in the SMTP server.                                 |
| Use SSL/TLS                           | Disabled*<br>Negotiate<br>Required | Specify whether to use SSL/TLS for communication with the SMTP server.            |



| Menu item                               | Settings                                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Require Trusted Certificate             | On*<br>Off                                                                                                                        | Require a trusted certificate when connecting to the SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| SMTP Server Authentication              | No authentication required*<br>Login/Plain<br>NTLM<br>CRAM-MD5<br>Digest-MD5<br>Kerberos 5<br>OAuth 2.0                           | Set the authentication type for the SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Device-Initiated Email                  | None*<br>Use Device SMTP Credentials                                                                                              | Set whether credentials are required for device-initiated emails.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| User-Initiated Email                    | None*<br>Use Device SMTP Credentials<br>Use Session User ID and Password<br>Use Session Email Address and Password<br>Prompt User | Set whether credentials are required for user-initiated emails.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Use Active Directory Device Credentials | On<br>Off*                                                                                                                        | Enable the use of Active Directory Credentials and group designations for SMTP authentication.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Device Userid                           | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                      | Enter the user ID to log in to the SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Device Password                         | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                      | Enter the password to log in to the SMTP server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Kerberos 5 Realm                        | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                      | <p>Enter the Kerberos realm name required for certain authentication types. The realm is typically the uppercase domain name used by the Kerberos authentication system (for example, EXAMPLE.COM).</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This setting is necessary when configuring Kerberos-based authentication for secure access.</p> |

| Menu item                              | Settings                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| NTLM Domain                            | The setting is user-defined. | Enter the domain name required for NTLM (NT LAN Manager) authentication.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This setting is used when the printer needs to authenticate users against a Windows domain using NTLM protocol. |
| Disable "SMTP server not set up" error | On<br>Off*                   | Disable the SMTP setup error message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

## EMAIL DEFAULTS

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item    | Submenu items    | Settings                                  | Description                                               |
|--------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Subject      | N/A              | The setting is user-defined.              | Enter the email subject.                                  |
| Message      | N/A              | The setting is user-defined.              | Enter the email message.                                  |
| File Name    | N/A              | The setting is user-defined.              | Select the file format for the scanned image.             |
| Format       | N/A              | JPEG (.jpg)<br>PDF (.pdf)*<br>TIFF (.tif) | Select the file format for the scanned image.             |
| PDF Settings | PDF Version      | 1.3<br>1.4<br>1.5*<br>1.6<br>1.7<br>2.0   | Select the PDF version for all scan functions.            |
|              | Archival (PDF/A) | Off*<br>On                                | Available only for <b>PDF Version 1.4</b> or <b>1.7</b> . |

| Menu item                 | Submenu items            | Settings                                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                           | <b>Archival Version</b>  | A-1a*<br>A-1b<br>A-2u                                          | Choose the archival compliance level (active only when <b>Archival</b> is enabled).<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Archival Version A-2u is the default value if <b>PDF Version</b> is set to <b>1.7</b> . It is not selectable if <b>PDF Version</b> is set to <b>1.4</b> . |
|                           | <b>Highly Compressed</b> | Off*<br>On                                                     | Reduce file size by applying high compression.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.                                                                                                                    |
|                           | <b>Secure</b>            | Off*<br>On                                                     | Enable security features.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This setting is available only for <b>PDF Version 1.4</b> or higher.                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Split Job by Pages</b> | N/A                      | 1 to 999 (0*)                                                  | Enter the number of pages per split. Each split is sent as a separate email.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Setting this option to <b>0</b> disables the splits.                                                                                                           |
| <b>Content Type</b>       | N/A                      | Text<br>Text/Photo*<br>Photo<br>Graphics                       | Select the content type of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Color</b>              | N/A                      | Black and White<br>Gray<br>Color*<br>Auto                      | Select the color mode for scanning.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Resolution</b>         | N/A                      | 75 dpi<br>150 dpi*<br>200 dpi<br>300 dpi<br>400 dpi<br>600 dpi | Set the image resolution.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

| Menu item        | Submenu items      | Settings                                                                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Darkness         | N/A                | 1 to 9 (5*)                                                                                                       | Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Orientation      | N/A                | Portrait*<br>Landscape                                                                                            | Set the page orientation for text and graphics.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models.                                               |
| Original Size    | N/A                | [List of paper sizes]                                                                                             | Specify the paper size of the original document.<br> <b>Note:</b> The default setting varies depending on your printer model.                                              |
| Sides (Duplex)   | N/A                | 1 sided*<br>2 sided, short edge<br>2 sided, long edge                                                             | Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models. |
| Advanced Imaging | Color Balance      | Cyan - Red (0*)<br>Magenta - Green (0*)<br>Yellow - Blue (0*)                                                     | Adjust toner levels for each color.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                  | Auto Color Detect  | Color Sensitivity (5*)<br>Area Sensitivity (5*)<br>Email Bit Depth (1 bit*)<br>Minimum Scan Resolution (300 dpi*) | Control how much color the printer detects from the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                  | Contrast           | Best for content*<br>0 to 5                                                                                       | Adjust the output contrast.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                  | Background Removal | Level (0*)                                                                                                        | Control how much background appears in a scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                  | Scan Edge to Edge  | On<br>Off*                                                                                                        | Include the entire page without margins when copying.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

| Menu item      | Submenu items          | Settings                                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                | Saturation             | 1 to 5 (1*)                                                    | <p>Adjust the intensity of colors in the scanned document.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing saturation makes colors appear more vivid and vibrant.</li> <li>Decreasing saturation reduces color intensity, making the document look more muted or closer to grayscale.</li> </ul> |
| Admin Controls | Max Email Size         | 0 to 65535 (0*)                                                | <p>Set the allowable file size for each email.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> Setting this option to 0 removes the file-size limit.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                | Size Error Message     | The setting is user-defined.                                   | <p>Specify an error message that the printer sends when an email exceeds its allowable file size.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> You can type up to 1024 characters.</p>                                                                                                                                                            |
|                | Limit Destinations     | The setting is user-defined.                                   | <p>Limit sending of email only to the specified list of domain name.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> Use a comma to separate each domain.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                | Send Me a Copy         | Never appears*<br>On by Default<br>Off by Default<br>Always On | <p>Send a copy of the email to yourself.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This setting is disabled if <b>Allow self emails only</b> is set to <b>Enabled</b>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                | Allow self emails only | Disabled*<br>Enabled                                           | <p>Set the printer to send emails to yourself only.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                | Text Default           | 5 to 95 (75*)                                                  | <p>Set the text quality of the content being scanned.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                | Text/Photo Default     | 5 to 95 (75*)                                                  | <p>Set the text and photo quality of the content being scanned.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                | Photo Default          | 5 to 95 (50*)                                                  | <p>Set the photo quality of the content being scanned.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

| Menu item | Submenu items                         | Settings                                               | Description                                                                                                                        |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|           | Transmission Log                      | Print log*<br>Do Not Print Log<br>Print Only For Error | Print a transmission log for email scans.                                                                                          |
|           | Log Paper Source                      | Tray [x] (1*)                                          | Specify the paper source for printing logs.                                                                                        |
|           | Allow Save as Shortcut                | On*<br>Off                                             | Save an email address as a shortcut.                                                                                               |
|           | Email Images Sent As                  | Attachment*<br>Web Link                                | Specify how to send the images that are included in the email.                                                                     |
|           | Reset Email Information After Sending | On*<br>Off                                             | Reset the <b>To</b> , <b>Subject</b> , <b>Message</b> , and <b>Filename</b> fields to their default values after sending an email. |

## WEB LINK SETUP

| Menu item | Settings                     | Description                                                                                      |
|-----------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Server    | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the credentials of the server that is hosting the images that are included in the email. |
| Login     | The setting is user-defined. |                                                                                                  |
| Password  | The setting is user-defined. |                                                                                                  |
| Path      | The setting is user-defined. |                                                                                                  |
| File Name | The setting is user-defined. |                                                                                                  |
| Web Link  | The setting is user-defined. |                                                                                                  |

## FTP

### FTP DEFAULTS



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item          | Submenu items     | Settings                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Format             | N/A               | JPEG (.jpg)<br>PDF (.pdf)*<br>TIFF (.tif) | Specify the file format for the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| PDF Settings       | PDF Version       | 1.3<br>1.4<br>1.5*<br>1.6<br>1.7<br>2.0   | Select the PDF version for all scan functions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                    | Archival (PDF/A)  | Off*<br>On                                | Available only for PDF Version 1.4 or 1.7.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                    | Archival Version  | A-1a*<br>A-1b<br>A-2u                     | Choose the archival compliance level (active only when <b>Archival</b> is enabled).<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Archival Version A-2u is the default value if <b>PDF Version</b> is set to 1.7. It is not selectable if <b>PDF Version</b> is set to 1.4. |
|                    | Highly Compressed | Off*<br>On                                | Reduce file size by applying high compression.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.                                                                                                    |
|                    | Secure            | Off*<br>On                                | Enable security features.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This setting is available only for <b>PDF Version 1.4</b> or higher.                                                                                                                                |
| Split Job by Pages | N/A               | 1 to 999 (0*)                             | Set the number by which the pages are split and then sent as separate files.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Setting this option to 0 disables the splits.                                                                                                    |
| Content Type       | N/A               | Text<br>Text/Photo*<br>Photo<br>Graphics  | Select the content type of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

| Menu item        | Submenu items | Settings                                                                                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Color            | N/A           | <b>Black and White</b><br><b>Gray</b><br><b>Color*</b><br><b>Auto</b>                                    | Set the printer to capture file content in color or in mono.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Resolution       | N/A           | <b>75 dpi</b><br><b>150 dpi*</b><br><b>200 dpi</b><br><b>300 dpi</b><br><b>400 dpi</b><br><b>600 dpi</b> | Set the resolution of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Darkness         | N/A           | <b>1 to 9 (5*)</b>                                                                                       | Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Orientation      | N/A           | <b>Portrait*</b><br><b>Landscape</b>                                                                     | Specify the orientation of the original document.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models.                                             |
| Original Size    | N/A           | [List of paper sizes]                                                                                    | Set the paper size of the original document.<br> <b>Note:</b> The default setting varies depending on your printer model.                                                  |
| Sides (Duplex)   | N/A           | <b>1 sided*</b><br><b>2 sided, short edge</b><br><b>2 sided, long edge</b>                               | Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models. |
| File Name        | N/A           | The setting is user-defined.                                                                             | Specify the file name of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Advanced Imaging | Color Balance | <b>Cyan - Red (0*)</b><br><b>Magenta - Green (0*)</b><br><b>Yellow - Blue (0*)</b>                       | Adjust the color intensity for cyan, magenta, and yellow.                                                                                                                                                                                                       |



| Menu item             | Submenu items             | Settings                                                                                                                                    | Description                                                            |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                       | <b>Auto Color Detect</b>  | <b>Color Sensitivity (5*)</b><br><b>Area Sensitivity (5*)</b><br><b>FTP Bit Depth (1 bit*)</b><br><b>Minimum Scan Resolution (300 dpi*)</b> | Configure the auto color detection setting.                            |
|                       | <b>Contrast</b>           | <b>Best for content*</b><br><b>0 to 5</b>                                                                                                   | Specify the contrast for the scanned image.                            |
|                       | <b>Background Removal</b> | <b>Level (0*)</b>                                                                                                                           | Remove the background color or image noise from the original document. |
|                       | <b>Scan Edge to Edge</b>  | <b>On</b><br><b>Off*</b>                                                                                                                    | Scan the original document from edge to edge.                          |
|                       | <b>Saturation</b>         | <b>1 to 5 (1*)</b>                                                                                                                          | Adjust the color intensity of the outputs.                             |
| <b>Admin Controls</b> | <b>Text Default</b>       | <b>5 to 95 (75*)</b>                                                                                                                        | Set the quality of text on a scanned image.                            |
|                       | <b>Text/Photo Default</b> | <b>5 to 95 (75*)</b>                                                                                                                        | Set the quality of text and photo on the scanned image.                |
|                       | <b>Photo Default</b>      | <b>5 to 95 (50*)</b>                                                                                                                        | Set the quality of photo on the scanned image.                         |
|                       | <b>Transmission Log</b>   | <b>Print Log*</b><br><b>Do Not Print Log</b><br><b>Print Only For Error</b>                                                                 | Print a transmission log for FTP scans.                                |
|                       | <b>Log Paper Source</b>   | <b>Tray [x] (1*)</b>                                                                                                                        | Specify the paper source for printing FTP logs.                        |
|                       | <b>Use Passive FTP</b>    | <b>On</b><br><b>Off*</b>                                                                                                                    | Let the FTP server specify the data port that the printer connects to. |

## USB Drive

### FLASH DRIVE SCAN



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item    | Submenu items     | Settings                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Format       | N/A               | JPEG (.jpg)<br>PDF (.pdf)*<br>TIFF (.tif) | Specify the file format for the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| PDF Settings | PDF Version       | 1.3<br>1.4<br>1.5*<br>1.6<br>1.7<br>2.0   | Select the PDF version for all scan functions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|              | Archival (PDF/A)  | Off*<br>On                                | Available only for <b>PDF Version 1.4</b> or <b>1.7</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|              | Archival Version  | A-1a*<br>A-1b<br>A-2u                     | Choose the archival compliance level (active only when <b>Archival</b> is enabled).<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Archival Version A-2u is the default value if <b>PDF Version</b> is set to <b>1.7</b> . It is not selectable if <b>PDF Version</b> is set to <b>1.4</b> . |
|              | Highly Compressed | Off*<br>On                                | Reduce file size by applying high compression.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when an intelligent storage drive is installed.                                                                                                                    |
|              | Secure            | Off*<br>On                                | Enable security features.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This setting is available only for <b>PDF Version 1.4</b> or higher.                                                                                                                                                |

| Menu item          | Submenu items | Settings                                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Split Job by Pages | N/A           | 1 to 999 (0*)                                                  | Set the number by which the pages are split and then scanned as separate files.<br> <b>Note:</b> Setting this option to <b>0</b> disables the splits. |
| Content Type       | N/A           | Text<br>Text/Photo*<br>Photo<br>Graphics                       | Select the content type of the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Color              | N/A           | Black and White<br>Gray<br>Color*<br>Auto                      | Set the printer to capture file content in color or in mono.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Resolution         | N/A           | 75 dpi<br>150 dpi*<br>200 dpi<br>300 dpi<br>400 dpi<br>600 dpi | Set the resolution of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Darkness           | N/A           | 1 to 9 (5*)                                                    | Adjust the darkness of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Orientation        | N/A           | Portrait *<br>Landscape                                        | Specify the orientation of the original document.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models.                      |
| Original Size      | N/A           | [List of paper sizes]<br>(Mixed Sizes*)                        | Set the paper size of the original document.<br> <b>Note:</b> The default setting varies depending on your printer model.                           |

| Menu item        | Submenu items      | Settings                                                                                                                                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sides (Duplex)   | N/A                | <b>1 sided*</b><br><b>2 sided, short edge</b><br><b>2 sided, long edge</b>                                                                   | Specify the orientation of the original document when scanning on both sides of the document.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only in certain printer models. |
| File Name        | N/A                | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                                 | Specify the file name of the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Advanced Imaging | Color Balance      | <b>Cyan - Red (0*)</b><br><b>Magenta - Green (0*)</b><br><b>Yellow - Blue (0*)</b>                                                           | Adjust the color intensity for cyan, magenta, and yellow.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                  | Auto Color Detect  | <b>Color Sensitivity (5*)</b><br><b>Area Sensitivity (5*)</b><br><b>Scan Bit Depth (1 bit*)</b><br><b>Minimum Scan Resolution (300 dpi*)</b> | Configure the auto color detection setting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                  | Contrast           | <b>Best for content*</b><br><b>0 to 5</b>                                                                                                    | Specify the contrast for the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                  | Background Removal | <b>Level (0*)</b>                                                                                                                            | Remove the background color or image noise from the original document.                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                  | Scan Edge to Edge  | <b>On</b><br><b>Off*</b>                                                                                                                     | Scan the original document from edge to edge.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                  | Saturation         | <b>1 to 5 (1*)</b>                                                                                                                           | Adjust the color intensity of the outputs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                  |                    |                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Admin Controls   | Text Default       | <b>5 to 95 (75*)</b>                                                                                                                         | Set the quality of text on a scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                  | Text/Photo Default | <b>5 to 95 (75*)</b>                                                                                                                         | Set the quality of text and photo on the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                  | Photo Default      | <b>5 to 95 (50*)</b>                                                                                                                         | Set the quality of a photo on the scanned image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

## FLASH DRIVE PRINT



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item        | Settings                                                                                                                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Number of Copies | 1 to 9999 (1*)                                                                                                                                     | Set the number of copies in a print job.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Paper Source     | Tray [x] (1*)<br>Manual Paper<br>Manual Envelope                                                                                                   | Set the paper source for the print job.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Color            | Off<br>On*                                                                                                                                         | Print the flash drive file in color.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Collate          | Off [1,1,1,2,2,2]<br>On [1,2,1,2,1,2]*                                                                                                             | Keep the pages of a print job stacked in sequence, particularly when printing multiple copies of the job.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Sides            | 1-Sided<br>2-Sided *                                                                                                                               | Specify whether to print on one side or both sides of the paper.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Flip Style       | Long Edge*<br>Short Edge                                                                                                                           | Determine which side of the paper is bound when performing two-sided printing.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Depending on the option selected, the printer automatically offsets each printed information of the page to bind the job correctly. |
| Pages per Side   | Off*<br>2 pages per side<br>3 pages per side<br>4 pages per side<br>6 pages per side<br>9 pages per side<br>12 pages per side<br>16 pages per side | Print multiple page images on one side of a sheet of paper.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

| Menu item                  | Settings                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Pages per Side Ordering    | Horizontal*<br>Reverse Horizontal<br>Reverse Vertical<br>Vertical | Specify the positioning of multiple page images when using the <b>Pages per Side</b> menu.<br> <b>Note:</b> The positioning depends on the number of page images and their page orientation. |
| Pages per Side Orientation | Auto*<br>Landscape<br>Portrait                                    | Specify the orientation of multiple page images when using the <b>Pages per Side</b> menu.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Pages per Side Border      | None*<br>Solid                                                    | Print a border around each page image when using the <b>Pages per Side</b> menu.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Separator Sheets           | Off*<br>Between Copies<br>Between Jobs<br>Between Pages           | Insert blank separator sheets when printing.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Separator Sheet Source     | Tray [x] (1*)                                                     | Specify the paper source for the separator sheet.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Blank Pages                | Do Not Print*<br>Print                                            | Print blank pages in a print job.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

## Network/Ports

### NETWORK OVERVIEW

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                         | Settings                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Active Adapter                    | Auto*<br>Standard Network<br>Wireless   | Specify the type of the network connection.<br> <b>Note:</b> <b>Wireless</b> is available only in printers connected to a wireless network. |
| Network Status                    | The setting is a read-only information. | Show the connectivity status of the printer network.                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Display Network Status on Printer | Off<br>On*                              | Show the network status on the display.                                                                                                                                                                                        |

| Menu item                         | Settings                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Speed, Duplex</b>              | The setting is a read-only information. | Show the speed of the currently active network card.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>IPv4</b>                       | The setting is a read-only information. | Show the IPv4 address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>All IPv6 Addresses</b>         | The setting is a read-only information. | Show all IPv6 addresses.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Reset Print Server</b>         | <b>Start</b>                            | Reset all active network connections to the printer.<br> <b>Note:</b> This setting removes all network configuration settings.                                     |
| <b>Network Job Timeout</b>        | <b>Disabled</b><br><b>Enabled*</b>      | Set the time before the printer cancels a network print job.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Network Job Timeout Time</b>   | <b>10 to 255 seconds (90*)</b>          | Specify the timeout value (in seconds) when the Network Job Timeout setting is enabled.<br> <b>Note:</b> This feature is available only in certain printer models. |
| <b>Banner Page</b>                | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>                | Print a banner page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Scan to PC Port Range</b>      | The setting is a read-only information. | Specify a valid port range for printers that are behind a port blocking firewall.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Enable Network Connections</b> | <b>Enable*</b><br><b>Disable</b>        | Enable the printer to connect to a network.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Enable LLDP</b>                | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>                | Show the network status on the home screen.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

## WIRELESS

### Notes

- This menu is available only in printers connected to a Wi-Fi network or printers that have a wireless print server.
- An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item              | Submenu item                                     | Settings                                                                                                                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Setup On Printer Panel | N/A                                              | [List of available wireless networks]                                                                                       | Determine the wireless network that the printer connects to.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears as <b>Wireless Connection Setup</b> in the Embedded Web Server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                        | Manually Add                                     | <b>Network Name</b><br><br><b>Network Mode</b><br><br>(Infrastructure*)<br><br><b>Wireless Security Mode</b><br>(Disabled*) | Manually enter a network name and network type.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Wi-Fi Protected Setup  | Start Push Button Method<br><br>Start PIN Method | N/A                                                                                                                         | Establish a wireless network and enable network security.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Start Push Button Method</b> connects the printer to a wireless network when buttons on both the printer and the access point (wireless router) are pressed within a given time.</li> <li>• <b>Start PIN Method</b> connects the printer to a wireless network when a PIN on the printer is entered into the wireless settings of the access point.</li> </ul> |
| Compatibility          | N/A                                              | <b>802.11b/g/n (2.4GHz)</b><br><br><b>802.11a/b/g/n/ac (2.4GHz/5GHz)*</b><br><br><b>802.11a/n/ac (5GHz)</b>                 | Specify the wireless standard for the wireless network.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |



| Menu item              | Submenu item | Settings                                                                                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wireless Security Mode | N/A          | Disabled<br><br>WPA2/WPA-Personal<br><br>WPA2-Personal<br><br>WPA2/WPA3-Personal*<br><br>WPA3-Personal<br><br>802.1x - RADIUS | Set the security mode for connecting the printer to Wi-Fi devices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| WPA2/WPA Personal      | N/A          | AES                                                                                                                           | Enable Wi-Fi security through Wi-Fi Protected Access™ (WPA™).<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when <b>Wireless Security Mode</b> is set to <b>WPA2/WPA-Personal</b> .                                                                                                                                    |
| Set PSK                | N/A          | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                  | Set the password for a secure Wi-Fi connection.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if <b>Wireless Security Mode</b> is set to any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• WPA2/WPA-Personal</li> <li>• WPA2-Personal</li> <li>• WPA2/WPA3-Personal</li> <li>• WPA3-Personal</li> </ul> |
| WPA2-Personal          | N/A          | AES*                                                                                                                          | Enable wireless security through WPA2™.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if <b>Wireless Security Mode</b> is set to <b>WPA2-Personal</b> .                                                                                                                                                              |
| 802.1x Encryption Mode | N/A          | WPA+<br><br>WPA2*<br><br>WPA2 + PMF                                                                                           | Enable wireless security through 802.1x standard.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This menu item appears only when <b>Wireless Security Mode</b> is set to <b>802.1x - RADIUS</b>.</li> <li>• <b>802.1x - RADIUS</b> can be configured only from the Embedded Web Server.</li> </ul>      |

| Menu item       | Submenu item                        | Settings                                | Description                                            |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| IPv4            | Enable IPv4                         | On*<br>Off                              | Enable and configure the IPv4 settings in the printer. |
|                 | Enable DHCP                         | On*<br>Off                              |                                                        |
|                 | Set Static IP Address               | IP Address<br>Netmask<br>Gateway        |                                                        |
| IPv6            | Enable IPv6                         | On*<br>Off                              | Enable and configure the IPv6 settings in the printer. |
|                 | Enable DHCPv6                       | On<br>Off*                              |                                                        |
|                 | Stateless Address Autoconfiguration | Off<br>On*                              |                                                        |
|                 | IPv6 Address Generation Mode        | EUI64*<br>Stable Privacy<br>Random      |                                                        |
|                 | DNS Server Address                  | The setting is user-defined.            |                                                        |
|                 | Manually Assigned IPv6 Address      | The setting is user-defined.            |                                                        |
|                 | Manually Assigned IPv6 Router       | The setting is user-defined.            |                                                        |
|                 | Address Prefix                      | The setting is user-defined.            |                                                        |
|                 | All IPv6 Addresses                  | The setting is user-defined.            |                                                        |
|                 | All IPv6 Router Addresses           | The setting is user-defined.            |                                                        |
| Network Address | UAA<br>LAA                          | The setting is a read-only information. | View the network addresses.                            |

| Menu item              | Submenu item | Settings                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PCL SmartSwitch</b> | N/A          | <b>On*</b><br><b>Off</b>                | <p>Set the printer to switch automatically to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> If <b>PCL SmartSwitch</b> is set to <b>Off</b>, then the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the <b>Setup</b> menu.</p> |
| <b>PS SmartSwitch</b>  | N/A          | <b>On*</b><br><b>Off*</b>               | <p>Set the printer to switch automatically to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> If <b>PS SmartSwitch</b> is set to <b>Off</b>, then the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the <b>Setup</b> menu.</p>   |
| <b>Job Buffering</b>   | N/A          | <b>On</b><br><b>Off*</b>                | <p>Temporarily store print jobs in the storage drive before printing.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.</p>                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Mac Binary PS</b>   | N/A          | <b>Auto*</b><br><b>On</b><br><b>Off</b> | <p>Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>On</b>—Processes raw binary PostScript emulation print jobs.</li> <li>• <b>Off</b>—Filters print jobs using the standard protocol.</li> </ul>                                               |

## WI-FI DIRECT

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                    | Settings                     | Description                                                                |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Enable Wi-Fi Direct</b>   | <b>On</b><br><b>Off*</b>     | Set the printer to connect directly to Wi-Fi devices.                      |
| <b>Wi-Fi Direct Name</b>     | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the name of the Wi-Fi Direct network.                              |
| <b>Wi-Fi Direct Password</b> | The setting is user-defined. | Set the password to authenticate and validate users on a Wi-Fi connection. |

| Menu item                        | Settings                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Show Password on Setup Page      | Off*<br>On                   | Show the <b>Wi-Fi Direct Password</b> on the <b>Network Setup Page</b> .                                                                                                                                  |
| Preferred Channel Number         | 1 to 11<br>Auto*             | Set the preferred channel of the Wi-Fi network.                                                                                                                                                           |
| Group Owner IP Address           | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the IP address of the group owner.                                                                                                                                                                |
| Auto-Accept Push Button Requests | Off*<br>On                   | Accept requests to connect to the network automatically.<br> <b>Note:</b> Accepting clients automatically is not secure. |

## MOBILE SERVICES MANAGEMENT

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item               | Settings   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable IPP Print        | On*<br>Off | Enable a network printer to print jobs using Internet Printing Protocol (IPP).                                                                                                                   |
| Enable IPP Fax          | On*<br>Off | Enable a USB printer to send fax jobs using IPP.                                                                                                                                                 |
| Enable IPP Over USB     | On*<br>Off | Enable a USB printer to print jobs using IPP.<br> <b>Note:</b> IPP is normally designed for network printers. |
| Enable Scan             | On*<br>Off | Enable a network printer to print jobs using eSCL protocol.                                                                                                                                      |
| Enable Mopria Discovery | On*<br>Off | Enable mobile devices to discover a Mopria™ certified printer.                                                                                                                                   |
| Enable Mopria Beacon    | On*<br>Off | Enable Mopria-compatible mobile devices to detect the printer for wireless printing.                                                                                                             |

## ETHERNET

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item       | Submenu item                        | Settings                                | Description                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Network Speed   | N/A                                 | The setting is a read-only information  | Show the speed of an active network adapter.                                                                                                                   |
| IPv4            | Enable IPv4                         | On*<br>Off                              | Configure the IPv4 settings.<br> <b>Note:</b> The settings are user-defined. |
|                 | Enable DHCP                         | On*<br>Off                              |                                                                                                                                                                |
|                 | Set Static IP Address               | IP Address<br>Netmask<br>Gateway        |                                                                                                                                                                |
| IPv6            | Enable IPv6                         | Off<br>On*                              | Configure the IPv6 settings.                                                                                                                                   |
|                 | Enable DHCPv6                       | Off*<br>On                              |                                                                                                                                                                |
|                 | Stateless Address Autoconfiguration | Off<br>On*                              |                                                                                                                                                                |
|                 | IPv6 Address Generation Mode        | EUI64<br>Stable Privacy*<br>Random      |                                                                                                                                                                |
|                 | DNS Address                         | The setting is user-defined.            |                                                                                                                                                                |
|                 | Manually Assigned IPv6 Address      | The setting is user-defined.            |                                                                                                                                                                |
|                 | Manually Assigned IPv6 Router       | The setting is user-defined.            |                                                                                                                                                                |
|                 | Address Prefix                      | 0 to 128 (64*)                          |                                                                                                                                                                |
|                 | All IPv6 Addresses                  | The setting is user-defined.            |                                                                                                                                                                |
|                 | All IPv6 Router Addresses           | The setting is user-defined.            |                                                                                                                                                                |
| Network Address | UAA<br>LAA                          | The setting is a read-only information. | Specify the network address.                                                                                                                                   |

| Menu item                 | Submenu item | Settings           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------|--------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PCL SmartSwitch           | N/A          | Off<br>On*         | Set the printer to switch automatically to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> If <b>PCL SmartSwitch</b> is off, then the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the <b>Setup</b> menu.                           |
| PS SmartSwitch            | N/A          | On*<br>Off*        | Set the printer to switch automatically to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> If <b>PS SmartSwitch</b> is off, then the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the <b>Setup</b> menu.                             |
| Mac Binary PS             | N/A          | Auto*<br>On<br>Off | Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—Processes print jobs from computers using either Windows or Macintosh operating systems.</li> <li>• <b>Off</b>—Filters PostScript emulation print jobs using the standard protocol.</li> </ul> |
| Energy Efficient Ethernet | N/A          | Off<br>On<br>Auto* | Reduce power consumption when the printer does not receive data from the Ethernet network.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

## TCP/IP



**Note:**

An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                             | Settings                     | Description                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Set Hostname                          | The setting is user-defined. | Set the current TCP/IP host name.                                           |
| Domain Name                           | The setting is user-defined. | Set the domain name.                                                        |
| Allow DHCP/BOOTP to update NTP server | On*<br>Off                   | Allow the DHCP and BOOTP clients to update the NTP settings of the printer. |

| Menu item                             | Settings                     | Description                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Zero Configuration Name</b>        | The setting is user-defined. | Specify a service name for the zero configuration network.                                                              |
| <b>Enable Auto IP</b>                 | On*<br>Off                   | Assign an IP address automatically.                                                                                     |
| <b>DNS Address</b>                    | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the current Domain Name System (DNS) server address.                                                            |
| <b>Backup DNS</b>                     | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the backup DNS server addresses.                                                                                |
| <b>Backup DNS 2</b>                   |                              |                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Backup DNS 3</b>                   |                              |                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Domain Search Order</b>            | The setting is user-defined. | Specify a list of domain names to locate the printer and its resources that reside in different domains on the network. |
| <b>Enable DDNS</b>                    | Off*<br>On                   | Update the Dynamic DNS settings.                                                                                        |
| <b>DDNS TTL</b>                       | 300 to 31536000 (3600*)      | Specify the current DDNS settings.                                                                                      |
| <b>Default TTL</b>                    | 5 to 254 (254*)              |                                                                                                                         |
| <b>DDNS Refresh Time</b>              | 300 to 31536000 (604800*)    |                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Enable mDNS</b>                    | On*<br>Off                   | Update multicast DNS settings.                                                                                          |
| <b>WINS Address</b>                   | The setting is user-defined. | Specify a server address for Windows Internet Name Service (WINS).                                                      |
| <b>Enable BOOTP</b>                   | Off*<br>On                   | Allow the BOOTP to assign a printer IP address.                                                                         |
| <b>MTU</b>                            | 256 to 1500 Ethernet (1500*) | Specify a maximum transmission unit (MTU) parameter for the TCP connections.                                            |
| <b>Raw Print Port</b>                 | 1 to 65535 (9100*)           | Specify a raw port number for printers connected on a network.                                                          |
| <b>Outbound Traffic Maximum Speed</b> | Disabled*<br>Enabled         | Enable the printer maximum transfer rate.                                                                               |

| Menu item               | Settings                                                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TLS Support             | Enable TLSv1.0 (Off*)<br>Enable TLSv1.1 (Off*)<br>Enable TLSv1.2 (On*) | Enable or disable the specified TLS protocol version.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> TLSv1.3 is supported by default and cannot be disabled. |
| SSL Cipher List         | The setting is user-defined.                                           | Specify the cipher algorithms to use for the SSL or the TLS connections.                                                                                                                                            |
| TLSv1.3 SSL Cipher List |                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

## SNMP

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item              | Submenu Item               | Settings                                                | Description                                                                                                      |
|------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SNMP Versions 1 and 2c | Enabled                    | Off<br>On*                                              | Configure Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) versions 1 and 2c to install print drivers and applications. |
|                        | Allow SNMP Set             | Off<br>On*                                              |                                                                                                                  |
|                        | Enable PPM MIB             | Off<br>On*                                              |                                                                                                                  |
|                        | GET SNMP Community         | The setting is user-defined.                            |                                                                                                                  |
|                        | SET SNMP Community         |                                                         |                                                                                                                  |
| SNMP Version 3         | Enabled                    | Off<br>On*                                              | Enable <b>SNMP version 3</b> to install and update the printer security.                                         |
|                        | Context Name               | The setting is user-defined.                            | Enter the context name.                                                                                          |
|                        | Set Read/Write Credentials | Username<br>Authentication Password<br>Privacy Password | Enter the read and write credentials for <b>SNMP version 3</b> .                                                 |
|                        | Set Read-only Credentials  | Username<br>Authentication Password<br>Privacy Password | Enter the read-only credentials for <b>SNMP version 3</b> .                                                      |



| Menu item      | Submenu Item                 | Settings                                                                                | Description                                                                           |
|----------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                | Authentication Hash          | MD5<br>SHA1*<br>SHA2                                                                    | Set the applicable authentication hash.                                               |
|                | Minimum Authentication Level | No Authentication, No Privacy<br>Authentication, No Privacy<br>Authentication, Privacy* | Set the applicable minimum authentication level.                                      |
|                | Privacy Algorithm            | DES<br>AES-128*<br>AES-192<br>AES-256                                                   | Set the applicable privacy algorithm.                                                 |
| Other Settings | Operating Mode               | Xerox*<br>Legacy Lexmark                                                                | Choose how the printer communicates through SNMP based on compatibility requirements. |

## IPSEC



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                          | Settings                                                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable IPsec                       | Off*<br>On                                                        | Enable Internet Protocol Security (IPSec).                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Base Configuration                 | Default*<br>Compatibility<br>Secure                               | Set the IPsec base configuration.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when <b>Enable IPsec</b> is set to <b>On</b> .                  |
| DH (Diffie-Hellman) Group Proposal | modp2048 (14*)<br>modp3072 (15)<br>modp4096 (16)<br>modp6144 (17) | Set the IPsec base configuration.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when <b>Base Configuration</b> is set to <b>Compatibility</b> . |
| Proposed Encryption Method         | 3DES<br>AES*                                                      | Set the encryption method.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when <b>Base Configuration</b> is set to <b>Compatibility</b> .        |

| Menu item                                | Settings                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Proposed Authentication Method           | SHA1<br>SHA256*<br>SHA512 | Set the authentication method.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when <b>Base Configuration</b> is set to <b>Compatibility</b> .            |
| IKE SA Lifetime (Hours)                  | 1<br>2<br>4<br>8<br>24*   | Specify the IKE SA expiry period.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when <b>Base Configuration</b> is set to <b>Secure</b> .                |
| IPSec SA Lifetime (Hours)                | 1<br>2<br>4<br>8*<br>24   | Specify the IPSec SA expiry period.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when <b>Base Configuration</b> is set to <b>Secure</b> .              |
| IPSec Device Certificate                 | default*                  | Specify an IPSec certificate.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when <b>Enable IPSec</b> is set to <b>On</b> .                            |
| Pre-Shared Key Authenticated Connections | Host [x]                  | Configure the authenticated connections of the printer.<br> <b>Note:</b> These menu items appear only when <b>Enable IPSec</b> is set to <b>On</b> . |
| Certificate Authenticated Connections    | Host [x] Address[/subnet] |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

## 802.1X

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item             | Submenu Items         | Settings                     | Description                                                                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Active                | N/A                   | Off*<br>On                   | Let the printer join networks that require authentication before allowing access. |
| 802.1x Authentication | Device Login Name     | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the unique login name.                                                    |
|                       | Device Login Password | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the unique password.                                                      |

| Menu item                | Submenu Items               | Settings   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                          | Validate Server Certificate | On*<br>Off | Enable this option to require verification of the security certificate on the authenticating server.                                                                                                                                                    |
|                          | Enable Event Logging        | On<br>Off* | Enable the printer to record connection logs.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                          | 802.1x Device Certificate   | default*   | Select the digital certificate that you want to use.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> If only one certificate is installed, then <b>default</b> is the only option that appears. |
| Authentication Mechanism | EAP - MD5                   | On*<br>Off | Enable the Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) MD5 framework.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                          | EAP - MSCHAPv2              | On*<br>Off | Enable the EAP Microsoft Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (MSCHAP) version 2 authentication method.                                                                                                                                          |
|                          | LEAP                        | On*<br>Off | Enable Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol (LEAP), a modified version of MSCHAP.                                                                                                                                                             |
|                          | PEAP                        | On*<br>Off | Enable Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol (PEAP), a method that provides more secure authentication for 802.11 WLANs. PEAP supports 802.1x port access control.                                                                               |
|                          | EAP - TLS                   | On*<br>Off | Enable EAP Transport Layer Security (TLS), a protocol in which the client and server authenticate each other using digital certificates.                                                                                                                |
|                          | EAP - TTLS                  | On*<br>Off | Enable EAP tunneled Transport Layer Security (TLS), a protocol similar to EAP_TLS except that only the server has a certificate to authenticate itself to the client first.                                                                             |

| Menu item | Submenu Items                     | Settings                                                       | Description                                          |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
|           | <b>TTLS Authentication Method</b> | <b>CHAP</b><br><b>MSCHAP</b><br><b>MSCHAPv2*</b><br><b>PAP</b> | Select which EAP TTLS method to use for your device. |

## LPD CONFIGURATION

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                             | Settings                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>LPD Timeout</b>                    | <b>0 to 65535 seconds (90*)</b> | Set the timeout value to stop the Line Printer Daemon (LPD) server from waiting indefinitely for hung or invalid print jobs.                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>LPD Banner Page</b>                | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>        | Print a banner page for all LPD print jobs.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> A banner page is the first page of a print job used as a separator of print jobs and to identify the originator of the print job request. |
| <b>LPD Trailer Page</b>               | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>        | Print a trailer page for all LPD print jobs.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> A trailer page is the last page of a print job.                                                                                        |
| <b>LPD Carriage Return Conversion</b> | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>        | Enable carriage return conversion.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Carriage return is a mechanism that commands the printer to move the position of the cursor to the first position on the same line.              |

## HTTP/FTP SETTINGS

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item    | Submenu Item                 | Settings                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Proxy</b> | <b>HTTP Proxy IP Address</b> | The setting is user-defined. | Configure the HTTP server settings.                                                                                                                                                           |
|              | <b>HTTP Default IP Port</b>  |                              | Configure the HTTP default IP port address.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> The factory default port for HTTP is 80. |
|              | <b>FTP Proxy IP Address</b>  |                              | Configure the FTP settings.                                                                                                                                                                   |

| Menu item      | Submenu Item                  | Settings                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                | FTP Default IP Port           |                                          | Configure the FTP default IP port address.<br> <b>Note:</b> The factory default port for HTTP is 21. |
|                | Authentication                | None<br>Auto*<br>Basic<br>Digest<br>NTLM | Specify the authentication credentials.                                                                                                                                                |
|                | Username                      | The setting is user-defined.             | Specify the unique username.                                                                                                                                                           |
|                | Password                      |                                          | Specify the unique password.                                                                                                                                                           |
|                | Local Domains                 |                                          | Specify domain names for HTTP and FTP servers.                                                                                                                                         |
|                |                               |                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Other Settings | Enable HTTP Server            | On*<br>Off                               | Access the Embedded Web Server to monitor and manage the printer.                                                                                                                      |
|                | Enable HTTPS                  | On*<br>Off                               | Enable Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS) to encrypt data transferring to and from the print server.                                                                           |
|                | Force HTTPS Connections       | On<br>Off*                               | Force the printer to use HTTPS connections.                                                                                                                                            |
|                | Enable FTP/TFTP               | On*<br>Off                               | Send files using FTP/TFTP.                                                                                                                                                             |
|                | HTTPS Device Certificate      | default*                                 | View the HTTP device certificate used on the printer.                                                                                                                                  |
|                | Timeout for HTTP/FTP Requests | 1 to 299 seconds (30*)                   | Specify the amount of time before the server connection stops.                                                                                                                         |
|                | Retries for HTTP/FTP Requests | 1 to 299 seconds (3*)                    | Set the number of retries to connect to the HTTP/FTP server.                                                                                                                           |

## THINPRINT



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item            | Settings             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable ThinPrint     | Off*<br>On           | Print using ThinPrint.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Port Number          | 4000 to 4999 (4000*) | Set the port number for the ThinPrint server.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item can only be configured when <b>Enable ThinPrint</b> is set to <b>On</b> .              |
| Bandwidth (bits/sec) | 100 to 1000000 (0*)  | Set the speed to transmit data in a ThinPrint environment.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item can only be configured when <b>Enable ThinPrint</b> is set to <b>On</b> . |
| Packet Size (kbytes) | 0 to 64000 (0*)      | Set the packet size for data transmission.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item can only be configured when <b>Enable ThinPrint</b> is set to <b>On</b> .                 |

## USB

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item       | Settings   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PCL SmartSwitch | On*<br>Off | Set the printer to switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language.<br> <b>Note:</b> When this setting is disabled, the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the <b>Setup</b> menu.        |
| PS SmartSwitch  | On*<br>Off | Set the printer to switch to PostScript emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language.<br> <b>Note:</b> When this setting is disabled, the printer does not examine incoming data and uses the default printer language specified in the <b>Setup</b> menu. |
| Job Buffering   | Off*<br>On | Temporarily store jobs on the storage drive before printing.<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when a storage drive is installed.                                                                                                                                                                                 |

| Menu item       | Settings           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Mac Binary PS   | Auto*<br>On<br>Off | Set the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript emulation print jobs.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Auto</b>—Processes print jobs from computers using either Windows or Macintosh operating systems.</li> <li>• <b>Off</b>—Filters PostScript emulation print jobs using the standard protocol.</li> </ul> |
| Enable USB Port | Enable*<br>Disable | Enable the front and rear USB ports.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

## RESTRICT EXTERNAL NETWORK ACCESS

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                        | Settings                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Restrict external network access | Off*<br>On                   | Restrict access to network sites.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| External network address         | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the network addresses with restricted access.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item can only be configured when <b>Restrict external network access</b> is set to <b>On</b> .             |
| Email address for notification   |                              | Specify an email address to send a notification of logged events.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item can only be configured when <b>Restrict external network access</b> is set to <b>On</b> . |
| Ping frequency                   | 1 to 300 (10*)               | Specify the network query interval in seconds.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item can only be configured when <b>Restrict external network access</b> is set to <b>On</b> .                    |
| Subject                          | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the subject and message of the notification email.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item can only be configured when <b>Restrict external network access</b> is set to <b>On</b> .        |
| Message                          |                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

## Security

### SCHEDULE USB DEVICES

| Menu item | Submenu items    | Settings                                  | Description                            |
|-----------|------------------|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Schedules | Add New Schedule | Save Schedule<br>Action<br>Day(s)<br>Time | Schedule access to the front USB port. |

### SECURITY AUDIT LOG

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item            | Settings                     | Description                                                                               |
|----------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enable Audit         | Off<br>On*                   | Set the printer to record the events in the secure audit log and remote syslog.           |
| Enable Remote Syslog | Off*<br>On                   | Set the printer to send audit logs to a remote server.                                    |
| Remote Syslog Server | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the remote syslog server.                                                         |
| Remote Syslog Port   | 1 to 65535 (514*)            | Specify the port over which the printer sends logged events to a remote server.           |
| Remote Syslog Method | Normal UDP*<br>Stunnel       | Identify the protocol that the printer uses to transmit logged events to a remote server. |



| Menu item              | Settings                                     | Description                                                                                                |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Remote Syslog Facility | 0 - Kernel Messages                          | Specify a <b>Facility</b> value that the printer uses when sending log events to the remote syslog server. |
|                        | 1 - User-Level Messages                      |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 2 - Mail System                              |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 3 - System Daemons                           |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 4 - Security/ Authorization Messages*        |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 5 - Messages Generated Internally by Syslogd |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 6 - Line Printer Subsystem                   |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 7 - Network News Subsystem                   |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 8 - UUCP Subsystem                           |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 9 - Clock Daemon                             |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 10 - Security/ Authorization Messages        |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 11 - FTP Daemon                              |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 12 - NTP Subsystem                           |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 13 - Log Audit                               |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 14 - Log Alert                               |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 15 - Clock Daemon                            |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 16 - Local Use 0 (local0)                    |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 17- Local Use 1 (local1)                     |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 18 - Local Use 2 (local2)                    |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 19 - Local Use 3 (local3)                    |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 20 - Local Use 4 (local4)                    |                                                                                                            |
|                        | 21 - Local Use 5 (local5)                    |                                                                                                            |

| Menu item                               | Settings                                                                                                                                                                        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                         | <b>22 - Local Use 6 (local6)</b><br><br><b>23 - Local Use 7 (local7)</b>                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Severity of Events to Log</b>        | <b>0 - Emergency</b><br><b>1 - Alert</b><br><b>2 - Critical</b><br><b>3 - Error</b><br><b>4 - Warning*</b><br><b>5 - Notice</b><br><b>6 - Informational</b><br><b>7 - Debug</b> | <p>Select the minimum severity level of system events to record. The printer logs events at the chosen level and all more severe levels.</p> <p>For example, if you select <b>4 – Warning</b>, the printer logs <b>Warnings, Errors, Critical, Alert</b>, and <b>Emergency</b> events.</p> |
| <b>Remote Syslog Non-Logged Events</b>  | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>                                                                                                                                                        | Set the printer to send any applicable events.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Admin's Email Address</b>            | The setting is user-defined.                                                                                                                                                    | Specify the email address of the printer administrator who is notified of certain log events.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Email Log Cleared Alert</b>          | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>                                                                                                                                                        | Set the printer to send an email to the administrator every time a log is deleted.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Email Log Wrapped Alert</b>          | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>                                                                                                                                                        | Set the printer to send the administrator an email when log entries are wrapping.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Log Full Behavior</b>                | <b>Wrap Over Oldest Entries*</b><br><br><b>Email Log Then Delete All Entries</b>                                                                                                | Determine how the printer resolves log storage issues when the log fills its allotted memory.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Email % Full Alert</b>               | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>                                                                                                                                                        | Set the printer to send the administrator an email when the log fills its allotted memory.                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>% Full Alert Level</b>               | <b>1 to 99 (90*)</b>                                                                                                                                                            | Determine if the space occupied by the log equals or exceeds the value of the full alert level.                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Email Log Exported Alert</b>         | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>                                                                                                                                                        | Send an email notification to the administrator when a log is exported.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Email Log Settings Changed Alert</b> | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>                                                                                                                                                        | Set the printer to send an email to the administrator when the value of the <b>Enable Audit</b> menu is changed.                                                                                                                                                                           |

| Menu item              | Settings                                      | Description                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Log Line Endings       | LF (\n)*<br>CR (\r)<br>CRLF (\r\n)            | Determine how the printer handles line endings in the log file, depending on the operating system that the file is parsed or viewed. |
| Digitally Sign Exports | Off*<br>On                                    | Set the printer to sign exported security logs automatically.                                                                        |
| Clear Log              | Clear                                         | Delete all audit logs.                                                                                                               |
| Export Log             | Syslog (RFC 5424)<br>Syslog (RFC 3164)<br>CSV | Export logs from the printer or flash drive.                                                                                         |

## LOGIN RESTRICTIONS



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item          | Settings               | Description                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Login failures     | 1 to 10 (3*)           | Specify the number of failed login attempts before the user is locked out.                                                         |
| Failure time frame | 1 to 60 minutes (5*)   | Specify the time frame that failed login attempts are allowed before the user is locked out.                                       |
| Lockout time       | 1 to 60 minutes (5*)   | Specify the amount of time where no logins are allowed.                                                                            |
| Web Login Timeout  | 1 to 120 minutes (10*) | Specify the amount of time that a remote interface such as a web page can remain idle before the user is logged off automatically. |

## HELD JOBS SETUP



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                   | Submenu items | Settings   | Description                                                        |
|-----------------------------|---------------|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Require All Jobs to be Held | N/A           | Off*<br>On | Hold all print jobs in the queue instead of printing immediately.  |
| Keep Duplicate Documents    | N/A           | Off*<br>On | Store multiple copies of the same document in the Held Jobs queue. |

| Menu item         | Submenu items   | Settings                                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Confidential Jobs | Max Invalid PIN | 2 to 10 (0*)                                                                  | <p>Set the maximum number of incorrect PIN entry attempts allowed for confidential print jobs.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A value of 0 turns this feature off.</li> <li>• When the limit is reached, all print jobs associated with that username are deleted.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                   | Job Expiration  | Off*<br>1 Hour<br>4 Hours<br>24 Hours<br>72 Hours<br>1 Week                   | <p>Set an individual expiration time for each type of held job before the printer deletes it automatically from memory.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the expiration time setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside on the printer memory or intelligent storage drive (ISD), then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value.</li> <li>• If the printer is turned off, then all confidential jobs held in the printer memory are deleted.</li> </ul> |
|                   | Keep Held Jobs  | Off*<br>Only after printing<br>Only after reboot<br>After printing and reboot | <p>Set the printer to keep all held jobs.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> Certain settings are available only when an ISD is installed, which is also required to keep held jobs after a reboot.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

| Menu item    | Submenu items  | Settings                                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Repeat Jobs  | Job Expiration | Off*<br>1 Hour<br>4 Hours<br>24 Hours<br>72 Hours<br>1 Week                   | Set an individual expiration time for each type of held job before the printer deletes it automatically from memory.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the expiration time setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside on the printer memory or ISD, then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value.</li> <li>• If the printer is turned off, then all confidential jobs held in the printer memory are deleted.</li> </ul>   |
|              | Keep Held Jobs | Off<br>Only after printing*<br>Only after reboot<br>After printing and reboot | Set the printer to keep held jobs.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> Certain settings are available only when an ISD is installed, which is also required to keep held jobs after a reboot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Reserve Jobs | Job Expiration | Off*<br>1 Hour<br>4 Hours<br>24 Hours<br>72 Hours<br>1 Week                   | Set an individual expiration time for each type of held job before the printer deletes it automatically from memory.<br><br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the expiration time setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside on the printer memory or ISD, then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value.</li> <li>• If the printer is turned off, then all confidential jobs held in the printer memory are deleted.</li> </ul> |

| Menu item   | Submenu items  | Settings                                                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|             | Keep Held Jobs | Off<br>Only after printing*<br>Only after reboot<br>After printing and reboot | Set the printer to keep all held jobs.<br> <b>Note:</b> Certain settings are available only when an ISD is installed, which is also required to keep held jobs after a reboot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Verify Jobs | Job Expiration | Off*<br>1 Hour<br>4 Hours<br>24 Hours<br>72 Hours<br>1 Week                   | Set an individual expiration time for each type of held job before the printer deletes it automatically from memory.<br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the expiration time setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside on the printer memory or ISD, then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value.</li> <li>• If the printer is turned off, then all confidential jobs held in the printer memory are deleted.</li> </ul> |
|             | Keep Held Jobs | Off*<br>Only after printing<br>Only after reboot<br>After printing and reboot | Set the printer to keep all held jobs.<br> <b>Note:</b> Certain settings are available only when an ISD is installed, which is also required to keep held jobs after a reboot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

## ENCRYPTION

| Menu item                 | Settings                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Internal Storage          | The setting is a read-only information. | Show the encryption status of the internal storage.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Intelligent Storage Drive | The setting is a read-only information. | Show the encryption status of the intelligent storage drive (ISD).<br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when an ISD is installed. |

## ERASE TEMPORARY DATA FILES

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                | Settings   | Description                                                                               |
|--------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Stored in onboard memory | Off*<br>On | Set the printer to erase all the data of a job from its memory after the job is finished. |

## SOLUTIONS LDAP SETTINGS

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                     | Settings   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Follow LDAP Referrals         | Off*<br>On | Search the different servers in the domain for the logged-in user account.                                                                                                                      |
| LDAP Certificate Verification | Yes<br>No* | Enable verification of LDAP certificates.<br> <b>Note:</b> Restart the printer for the changes to take effect. |

## MISCELLANEOUS

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                      | Settings                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Protected Features             | Show*<br>Hide                       | Show all the features that Function Access Control (FAC) protects regardless of the security permission that the user has.<br> <b>Note:</b> <b>Hide</b> displays only FAC-protected features that the user has access                                                                                                 |
| Print Permission               | Off*<br>On                          | Require the user to log in before printing.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Default Print Permission Login | Username/Password*<br>Username      | Set the default login for <b>Print Permission</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Security Reset Jumper          | Enable "Guest" access*<br>No Effect | Specify user access to the printer.<br> <b>Notes</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Enable "Guest" access</b> gives anyone access to all aspects of the printer.</li> <li>• <b>No Effect</b> may make access to the printer impossible when the required security information is unavailable.</li> </ul> |

| Menu item                                      | Settings                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Reset Device Modes                             | Allow with FAC<br>Allow*<br>Don't Allow | Allow the printer mode to be reset.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Use Intelligent Storage Drive for User Data    | Off<br>On*                              | Enable the intelligent storage drive to store user data.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Minimum Password Length                        | 0 to 32 (8*)                            | Specify the minimum password length that is used for internal accounts such as <b>Password</b> and <b>Username/Password</b> accounts.                                                                                                                           |
| Enable Password/PIN Reveal                     | On*<br>Off                              | Show the password or personal identification number.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Allow Encryption of Service Nonvolatile Memory | Off*<br>On                              | Enable the encryption of service nonvolatile memory in your device.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only if <b>Encrypt Service Nonvolatile Memory</b> is disabled. |

## Cloud Services

### CLOUD CONNECTOR

| Menu item                        | Submenu item | Setting | Description                      |
|----------------------------------|--------------|---------|----------------------------------|
| Enable/<br>Disable<br>Connectors | Box          | On*     | Enable a cloud storage provider. |
|                                  | Dropbox      | Off     |                                  |
|                                  | Google Drive |         |                                  |
|                                  | OneDrive     |         |                                  |

### CLOUD PRINT RELEASE

 **Note:** This menu is available only in certain printer models.

| Menu item      | Settings                     | Description                                      |
|----------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Server Address | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the address of the cloud server.         |
| Client ID      | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the organization-specific client ID.     |
| Client Secret  | The setting is user-defined. | Specify the organization-specific client secret. |



## CLOUD SERVICES ENROLLMENT



**Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                                               | Settings                                | Description                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>View More Information</b>                            | The setting is a read-only information. | View more information on the usage of Lexmark Cloud Services.              |
| <b>Enable communication with Lexmark Cloud Services</b> | <b>Off*</b><br><b>On</b>                | Enable the printer to communicate with Lexmark Cloud Services.             |
| <b>View Current Status</b>                              | The setting is a read-only information. | View the connection status between the printer and Lexmark Cloud Services. |

## Reports

### MENU SETTINGS PAGE

| Menu item                 | Description                                     |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Menu Settings Page</b> | Print a report that contains the printer menus. |

### DEVICE

| Menu item                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Device Information</b> | Print a report that contains information about the printer.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Device Statistics</b>  | Print a report about supply status, paper count, job information, and more.                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Profile List</b>       | Print a list of profiles that are stored in the printer.                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Asset Report</b>       | Print a diagnostic tool for print problems.<br> <b>Note:</b> To avoid clipping the content, print the report on Letter- or A4-size paper. |

### PRINT

| Menu item          | Settings                            | Description                                                                                |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Print Fonts</b> | <b>PCL Fonts</b><br><b>PS Fonts</b> | Print samples and information about the fonts that are available in each printer language. |

| Menu item              | Settings                    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Print Demo</b>      | <b>Demo Page</b>            | <p>Print a sample page with text and graphics that help you check print quality, such as colors, sharpness, and alignment.</p> <p> <b>Notes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To avoid clipping the content, print the page on Letter- or A4-size paper.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when the printer has a demo page installed.</li> </ul> |
| <b>Print Directory</b> | The setting is user-defined | Print a list of the resources stored in the printer storage.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

## SHORTCUTS

| Menu item                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>All Shortcuts</b>            | <p>Print a report that lists the shortcuts that are stored in the printer.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> <b>Fax Shortcuts</b> appears only when <b>Fax</b> is installed.</p> |
| <b>Fax Shortcuts</b>            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Copy Shortcuts</b>           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Email Shortcuts</b>          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>FTP Shortcuts</b>            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Network Folder Shortcuts</b> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

## FAX

 **Note:** This menu appears only if **Fax** is configured, and **Enable Job Log** is set to **On**.

| Menu item           | Description                                                               |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Fax Job Log</b>  | Print a report about the last 200 completed fax jobs.                     |
| <b>Fax Call Log</b> | Print a report about the last 100 attempted, received, and blocked calls. |

## NETWORK

| Menu item                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Network Setup Page</b> | <p>Print a page that shows the configured network and wireless settings on the printer.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.</p> |

| Menu item                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wi-Fi Direct Connected Clients | Print a page that shows the list of devices that are connected to the printer using Wi-Fi Direct.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only when <b>Enable Wi-Fi Direct</b> is set to <b>On</b> . |

## Troubleshooting

| Menu item                | Description                                                       |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Print Quality Test Pages | Print sample pages to identify and correct print quality defects. |
| Cleaning the Scanner     | Print instructions on how to clean the scanner.                   |

## Supplies Plan

### PLAN ACTIVATION

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item            | Settings                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sequence Number      | The setting is a read-only information. | Show the unique number associated with your printer supplies plan.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This number is used to generate and validate the correct supplies plan activation code.                                                                 |
| Device Serial Number |                                         | Show the Xerox Serial Number associated with the printer supplies plan.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> This number, along with the printer serial number and plan information, is used to generate or validate the correct supplies plan activation code. |
| Activation Code      | The setting is user-defined.            | Enter a Plan Activation Code to activate the supplies plan associated with your printer.<br><br> <b>Note:</b> The code is provided by your Xerox representative.                                                                                |
| Activate Plan        | N/A                                     | Activate the supplies plan associated with your printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

### PLAN CONVERSION

 **Note:** An asterisk (\*) next to a value indicates the factory default setting.

| Menu item                   | Settings                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Current Plan</b>         | The setting is a read-only information. | Show the supplies plan that is currently active on the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Device Serial Number</b> |                                         | <p>Show the Xerox Serial Number associated with the printer supplies plan.</p> <p> <b>Note:</b> This number, along with the printer serial number and plan information, is used to generate or validate the correct supplies plan activation code.</p> |
| <b>Total Impressions</b>    |                                         | Show the total number of pages the printer has produced.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Conversion Code</b>      | The setting is user-defined.            | Enter a Plan Conversion Code to update or correct the supplies plan if issues occur after the initial activation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Convert Plan</b>         | N/A                                     | Update the supplies plan associated with your printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

# Maintain the printer

This chapter contains

- Checking the status of parts and supplies ..... 210
- Configuring supply notifications ..... 210
- Setting up email alerts..... 210
- Printing printer reports and logs..... 211
- Ordering parts and supplies ..... 212
- Replacing parts and supplies ..... 214
- Cleaning printer parts ..... 234
- Saving energy and paper ..... 243
- Moving the printer to another location ..... 244

## 10. Maintain the printer

### Checking the status of parts and supplies

1. From the upper-right corner of the control panel, select



2. Select



3. View the status of the printer parts and supplies.

### Configuring supply notifications

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



#### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
  - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
2. Click **Settings** › **Device** › **Notifications**.
  3. Click **Custom Supply Notifications**.
  4. Select a notification for each supply item.
  5. Apply the changes.

### Setting up email alerts

Email alerts let you set up a mail server so the printer can automatically send messages to a group of email addresses when certain events happen. For more information on SMTP settings, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 34](#).

1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



#### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
  - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
2. Click **Settings** › **Device** › **Notifications**.
  3. Click **Email Alerts Setup**.
  4. Click **Setup Email Lists and Alerts**, and then do the following:
    - Specify the email addresses that you want to send the alerts to.
    - Specify the subject of the email alert.
    - Specify the printer events that you want to send.
  5. Click **Save**.

## Printing printer reports and logs

Printer reports show the printer status, toner levels, number of pages printed or scanned, and any errors.

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Reports**.
2. Select the report or log that you want to print.

**Menu Settings Page**—Show the current printer preferences, settings, and configurations.

### Device

- **Device Information**—Show printer information such as serial number, installed memory, and page count.
- **Device Statistics**—Show printer information such as supply status, total printed sheets, and printer job information.
- **Profiles List**—Show a list of profiles or shortcuts that are stored in the printer.
- **Asset Report**— Show printer information such as color and mono print counts, IP address, and firmware levels.

### Print

- **Print Fonts**—Show the fonts that are available in each printer language.
- **Print Demo**—Show the demo files that are available in the firmware or intelligent storage drive (ISD)
- **Print Directory**—Show the resources that are stored on the flash drive or ISD.



**Note:** This report appears only when a flash drive or an ISD is installed.

### Shortcuts

- **All Shortcuts**—Show a list of all the shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **Fax Shortcuts**—Show a list of fax shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **Copy Shortcuts**—Show a list of copy shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **Email Shortcuts**—Show a list of email shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **FTP Shortcuts**—Show a list of File Transfer Protocol (FTP) shortcuts that are stored on the printer.
- **Network Folder Shortcuts**—Show a list of network folder shortcuts that are stored on the printer.

### Fax

- **Fax Job Log**—List the last 200 completed fax jobs.



**Note:** This report appears only when **Enable Job Log** is enabled.

- **Fax Call Log**—Show the resources that are stored on the flash drive or storage drive.



**Note:** This report appears only when a flash drive or storage drive is installed.

### Network

- **Network Setup Page**—Show the configured network and wireless settings on the printer.



**Note:** This report appears only in network printers and printers connected to print servers.

- **Wi-Fi Direct Connected Clients**—Show the list of devices that are connected to the printer using Wi-Fi Direct.



**Note:** This report appears only when **Enable Wi-Fi Direct** is set to **On**.

## Ordering parts and supplies

### USING GENUINE XEROX SUPPLIES

Your Xerox printer is designed to function best with genuine Xerox supplies. Use of third-party supplies can affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components. It can also affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party supplies is not covered by the warranty.

All life indicators are designed to function with Xerox supplies and can deliver unpredictable results if third-party supplies are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life can damage your Xerox printer or associated components.



#### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Supplies without Return Program agreement terms can be reset and remanufactured. However, the manufacturer's warranty does not cover any damage caused by non-genuine supplies. Resetting counters on the supply without proper remanufacturing can cause damage to your printer. After resetting the supply counter, your printer may display an error indicating the presence of the reset item.

### ORDERING A PRINT CARTRIDGE

Cartridge part numbers may change. To check the latest part numbers, go to [www.xerox.com/supplies](http://www.xerox.com/supplies).



#### **Notes**

- The estimated cartridge yield is based on the ISO/IEC 19798 standard.
- Extremely low print coverage for extended periods of time may negatively affect actual yield.
- All life estimates for printer supplies assume printing on Letter- or A4-size plain paper.



#### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Failure to maintain optimum printer performance or to replace supplies can cause damage to your printer.

## Return Program print cartridges

Xerox® C245, Xerox® C255a, Xerox® C303a

| Item    | United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Puerto Rico | European Union, Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway, Switzerland, United Kingdom | Rest of Asia Pacific | Latin America and Mexico | Rest of Europe, Middle East, Africa | People's Republic of China |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Cyan    | 006R05052                                                  | 006R05056                                                                   | 006R05060            | 006R05064                | 006R05068                           | 006R05239                  |
| Magenta | 006R05053                                                  | 006R05057                                                                   | 006R05061            | 006R05065                | 006R05069                           | 006R05240                  |
| Yellow  | 006R05054                                                  | 006R05058                                                                   | 006R05062            | 006R05066                | 006R05070                           | 006R05241                  |



| Item  | United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Puerto Rico | European Union, Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway, Switzerland, United Kingdom | Rest of Asia Pacific | Latin America and Mexico | Rest of Europe, Middle East, Africa | People's Republic of China |
|-------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Black | 006R05051                                                  | 006R05055                                                                   | 006R05059            | 006R05063                | 006R05067                           | 006R05242                  |

Xerox® C245, Xerox® C255a, Xerox® C303a

High Yield Return Program print cartridges

Xerox® C245, Xerox® C255a, Xerox® C303a

| Item    | United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Puerto Rico | European Union, Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway, Switzerland, United Kingdom | Rest of Asia Pacific | Latin America and Mexico | Rest of Europe, Middle East, Africa | People's Republic of China |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Cyan    | 006R05072                                                  | 006R05076                                                                   | 006R05080            | 006R05084                | 006R05088                           | 006R05243                  |
| Magenta | 006R05073                                                  | 006R05077                                                                   | 006R05081            | 006R05085                | 006R05089                           | 006R05244                  |
| Yellow  | 006R05074                                                  | 006R05078                                                                   | 006R05082            | 006R05086                | 006R05090                           | 006R05245                  |
| Black   | 006R05071                                                  | 006R05075                                                                   | 006R05079            | 006R05083                | 006R05087                           | 006R05246                  |

Extra High Yield Return Program print cartridges

Xerox® C303a

| Item    | United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Puerto Rico | European Union, Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway, Switzerland, United Kingdom | Rest of Asia Pacific | Latin America and Mexico | Rest of Europe, Middle East, Africa | People's Republic of China |
|---------|------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Cyan    | 006R05092                                                  | 006R05096                                                                   | 006R05101            | 006R05105                | 006R05109                           | 006R05247                  |
| Magenta | 006R05093                                                  | 006R05097                                                                   | 006R05102            | 006R05106                | 006R05110                           | 006R05248                  |
| Yellow  | 006R05094                                                  | 006R05098                                                                   | 006R05103            | 006R05107                | 006R05111                           | 006R05249                  |
| Black   | 006R05091                                                  | 006R05095                                                                   | 006R05100            | 006R05104                | 006R05108                           | 006R05250                  |

## ORDERING THE WASTE TONER BOTTLE

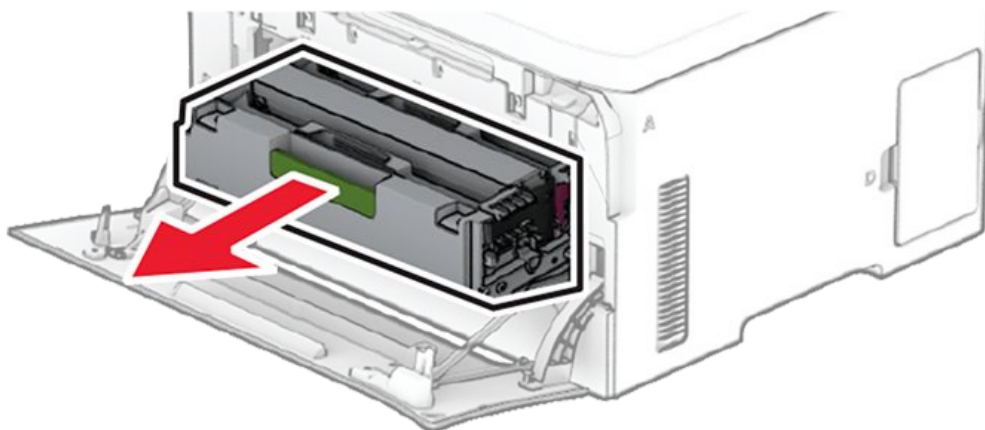
| Item               | Worldwide |
|--------------------|-----------|
| Waste toner bottle | 008R08165 |

## Replacing parts and supplies

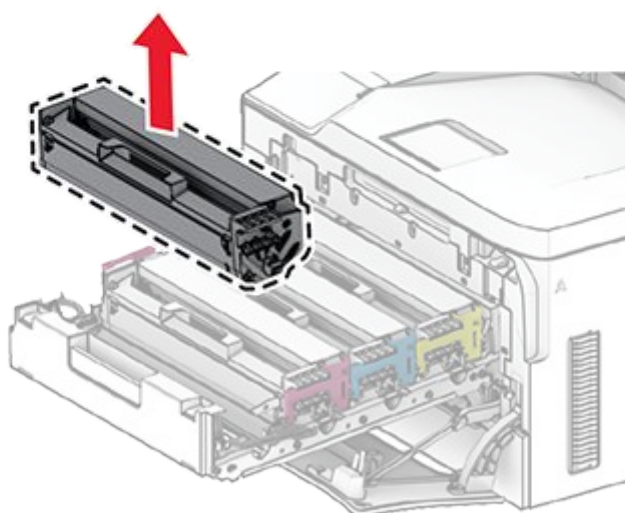
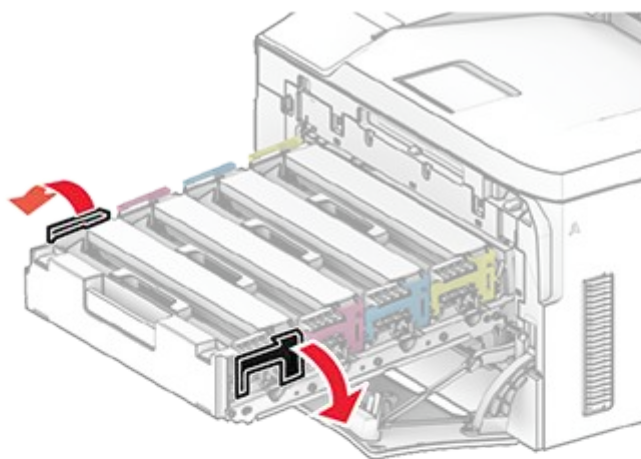
### REPLACING A PRINT CARTRIDGE

 **Note:** If the tray is extended, then remove it before replacing a cartridge.

1. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down.
2. Pull out the print cartridge tray.



3. Remove the used print cartridge.



4. Unpack the new print cartridge.

 **Warning—Potential Damage**

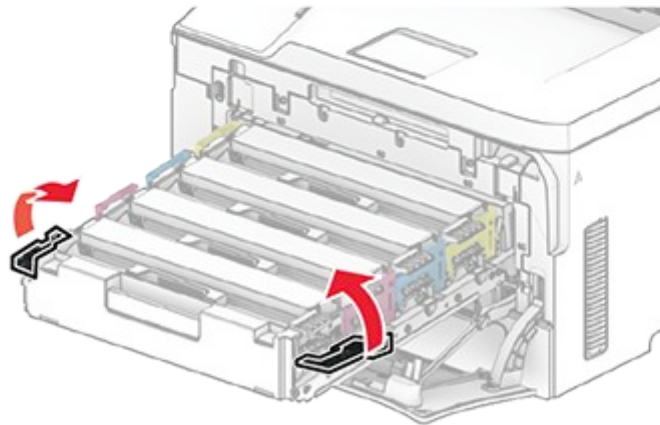
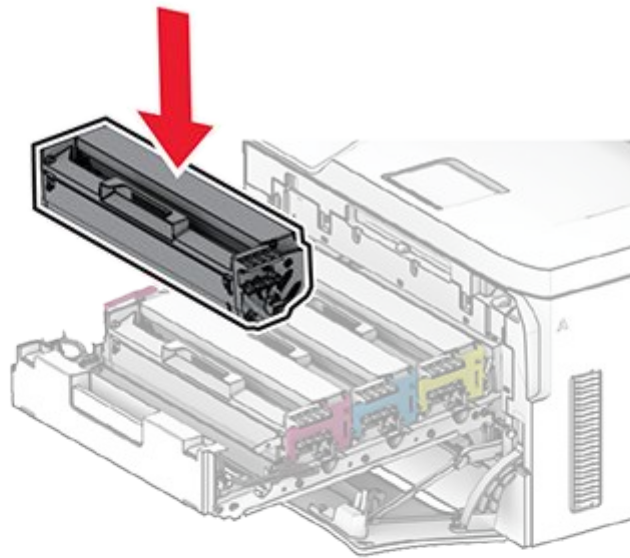
Do not expose the underside of the print cartridge to direct light. Extended exposure to light may cause print quality problems.

 **Warning—Potential Damage**

Do not touch the underside of the print cartridge. Doing so may affect the quality of future print jobs.



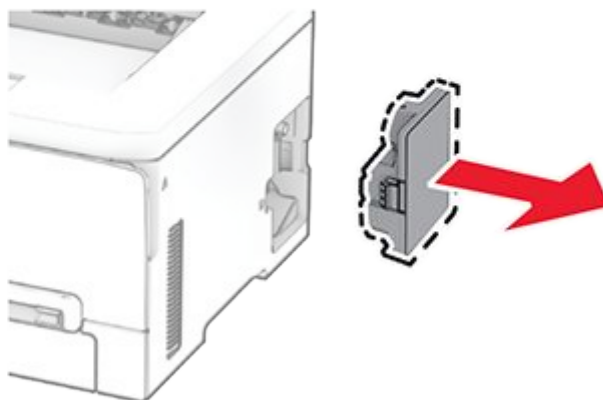
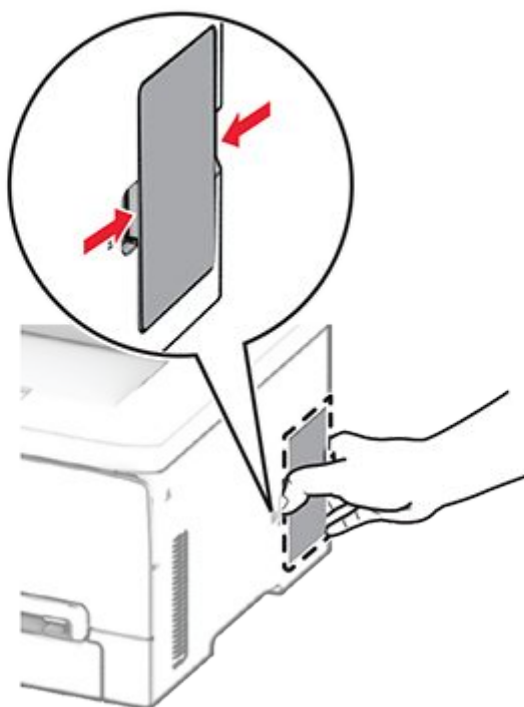
5. Insert the new print cartridge.



6. Insert the print cartridge tray, and then close the door.

## REPLACING THE WASTE TONER BOTTLE

1. Remove the used waste toner bottle.



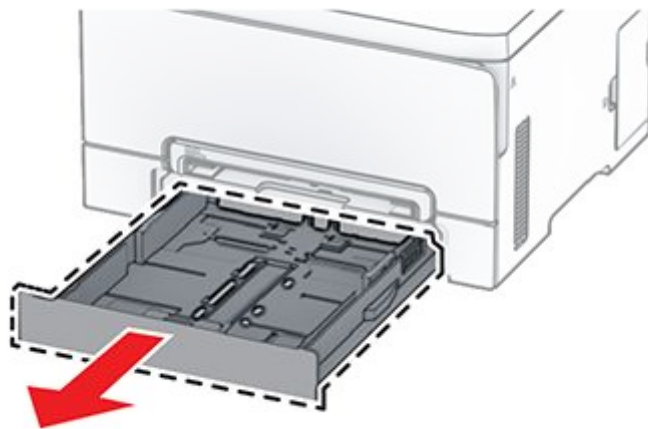
 **Note:** To avoid spilling the toner, place the bottle in an upright position.

2. Unpack the new waste toner bottle.
3. Insert the new waste toner bottle.

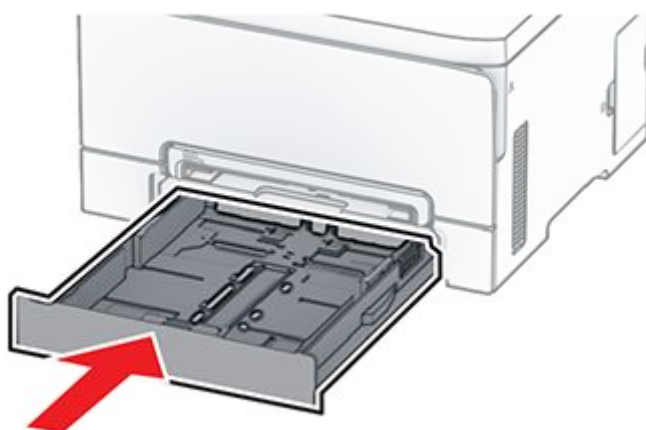


## REPLACING THE TRAY INSERT

1. Remove the used tray insert.

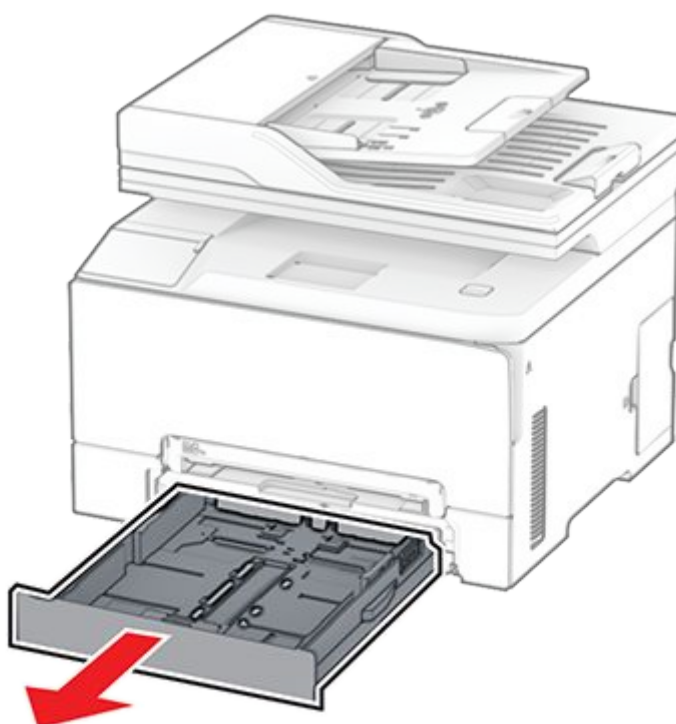


2. Unpack the new tray insert.
3. Insert the new tray insert.



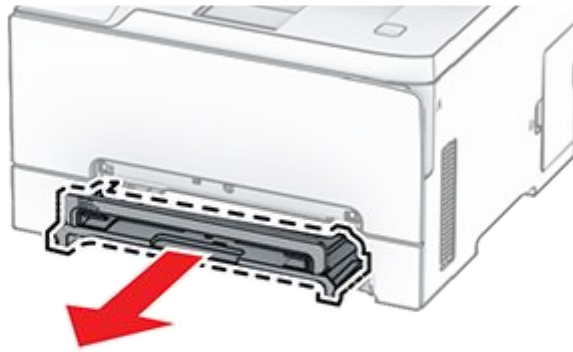
## REPLACING THE MANUAL FEEDER

1. Remove the tray.

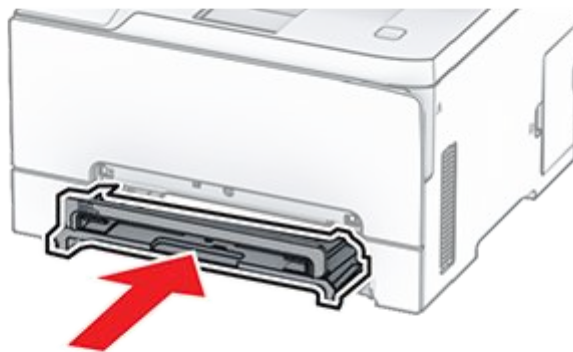


2. Remove the used manual feeder.





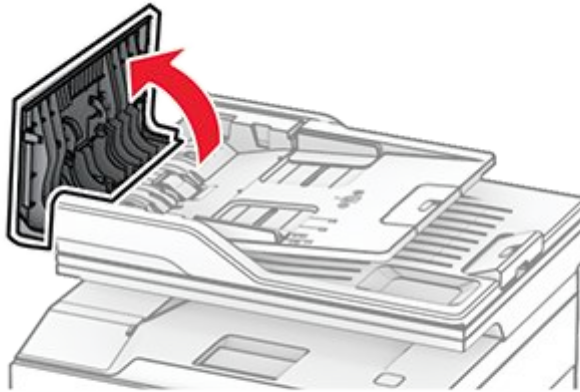
3. Unpack the new manual feeder.
4. Insert the new manual feeder.



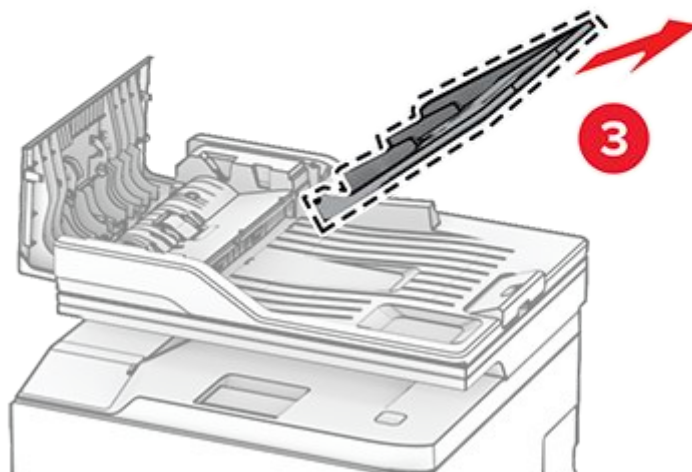
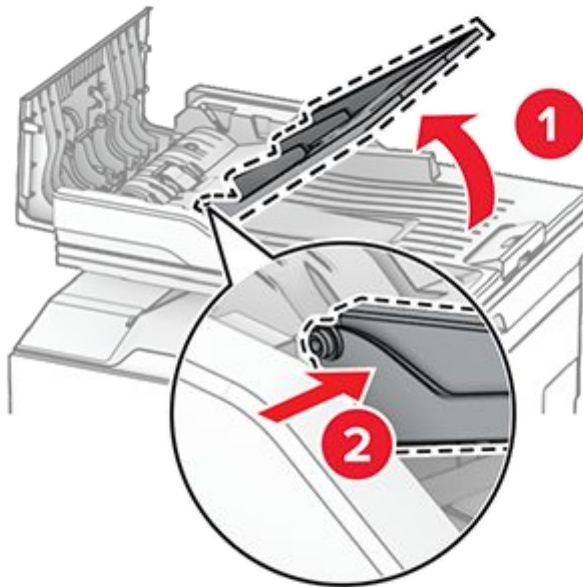
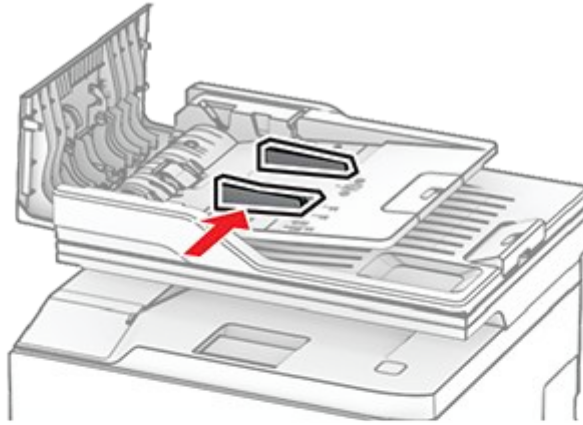
5. Insert the tray.

## REPLACING THE ADF TRAY

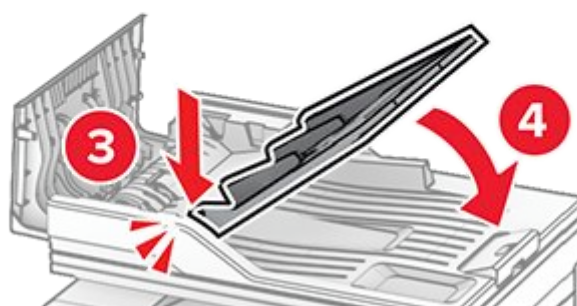
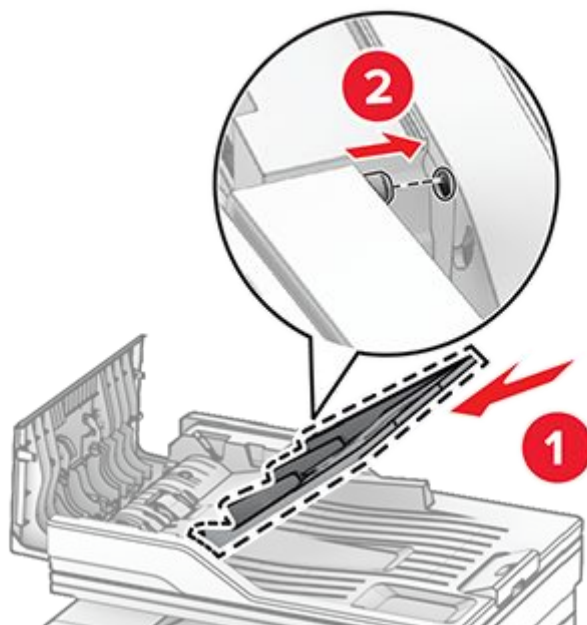
1. Open the ADF cover.



2. Remove the used ADF tray.



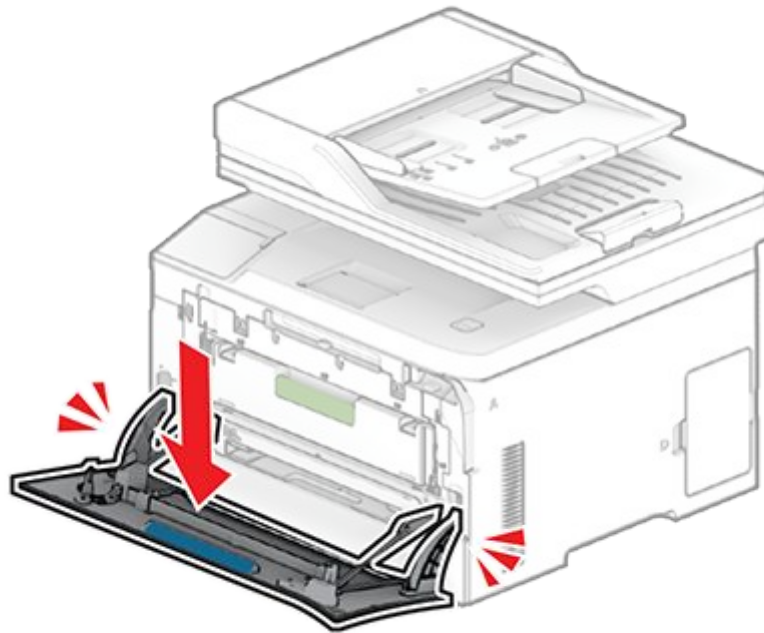
3. Unpack the new ADF tray.
4. Insert the new ADF tray until it clicks into place.



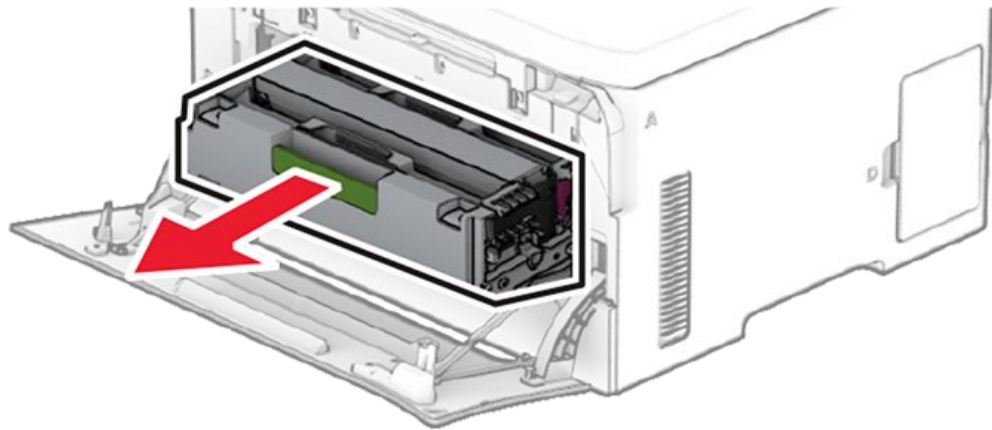
5. Close the ADF cover.

## REPLACING THE PICK TIRES

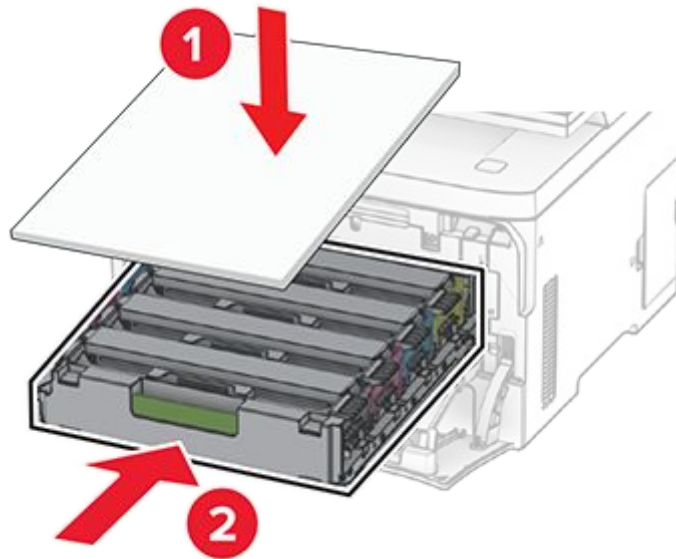
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down.



4. Pull out the print cartridge tray.

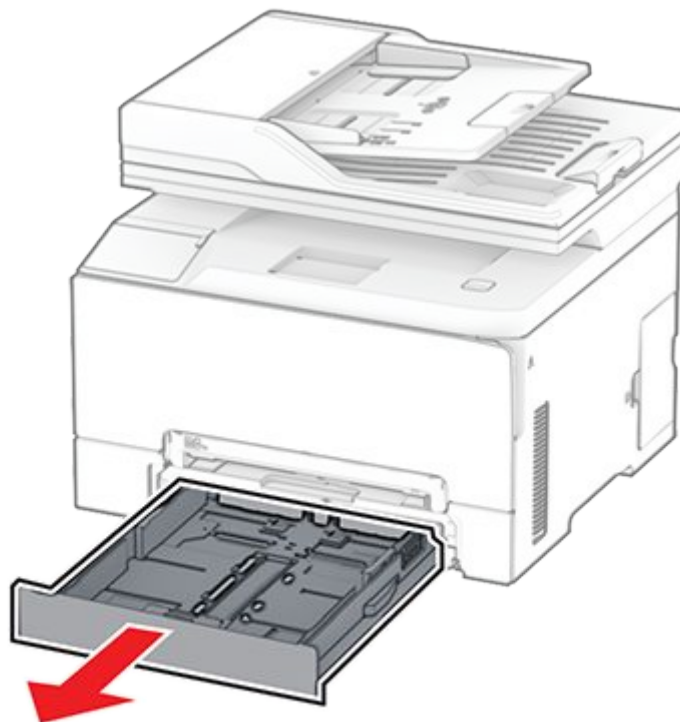


5. To avoid stray toner contamination, place a sheet of paper on the top of the print cartridge tray, and then insert the print cartridge tray.

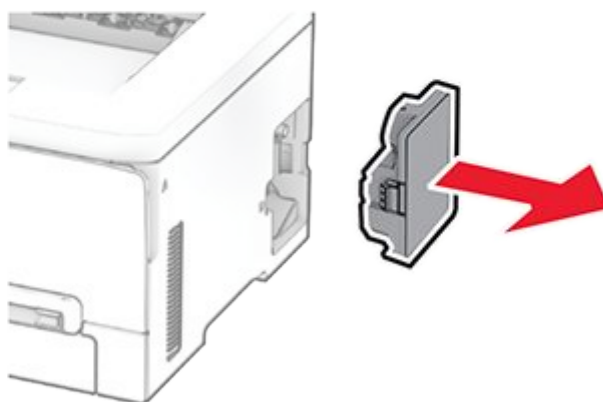
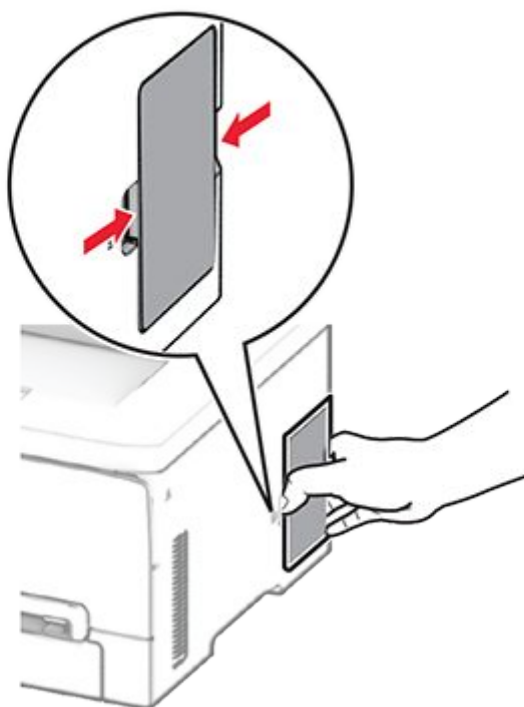


6. Close the front door.

7. Remove the tray.

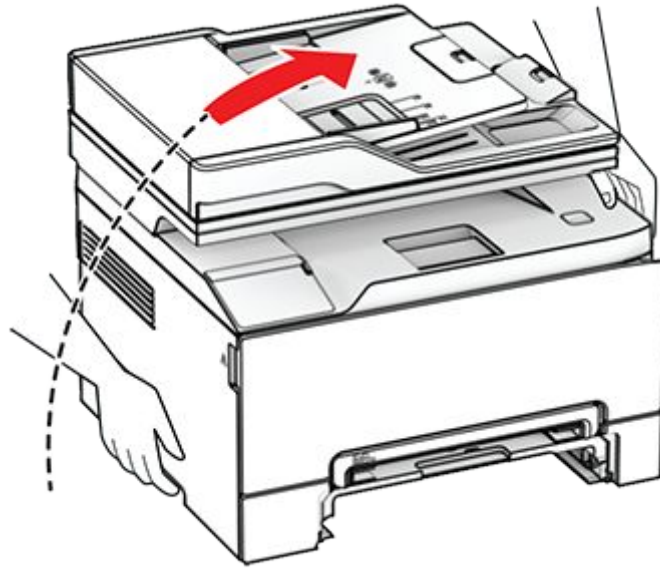


8. Remove the waste toner bottle.



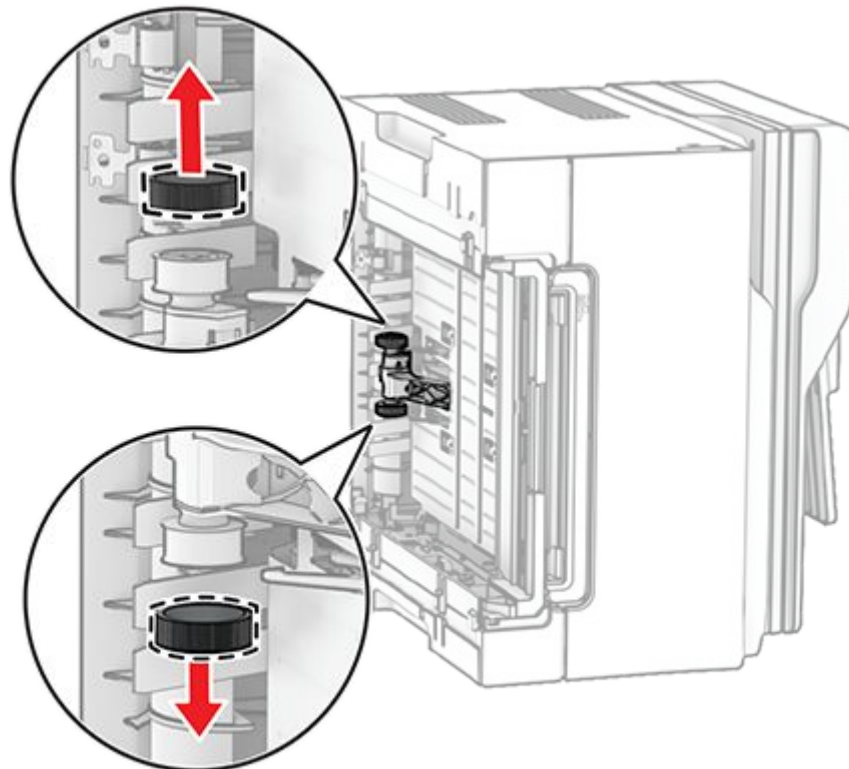
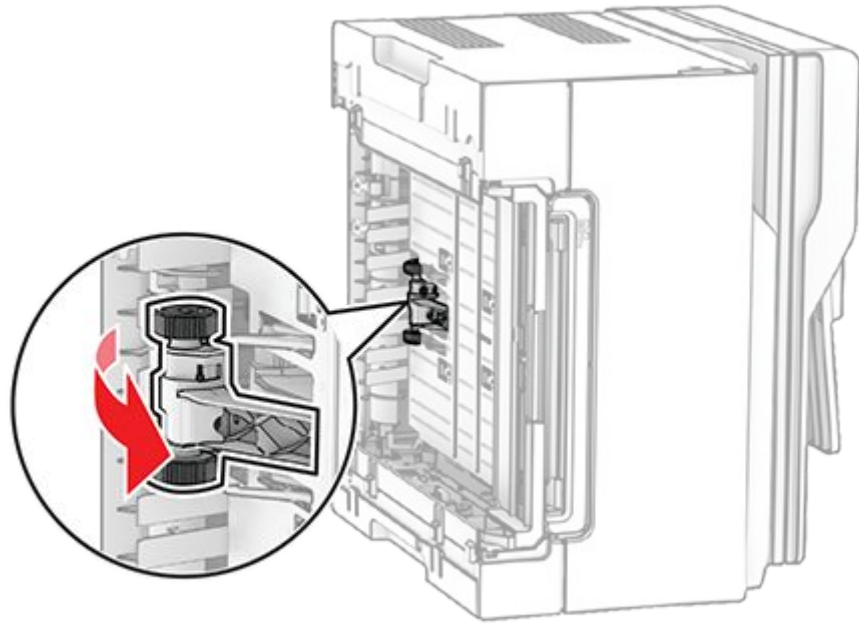
 **Note:** To avoid spilling the toner, place the bottle in an upright position.

9. Position the printer on its side.



10. Remove the used pick tires.



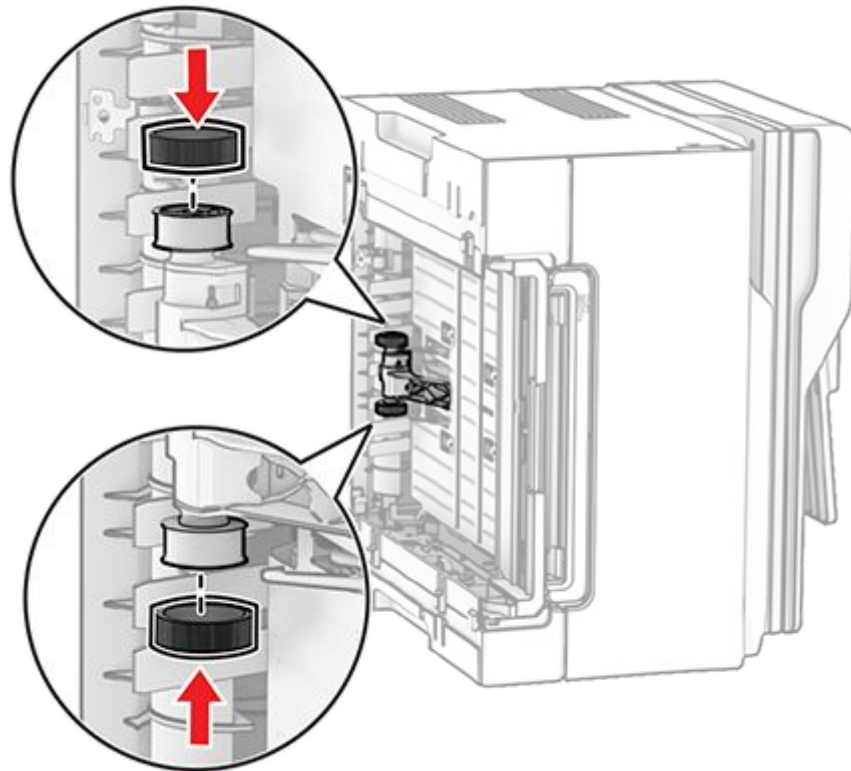


11. Unpack the new pick tires.

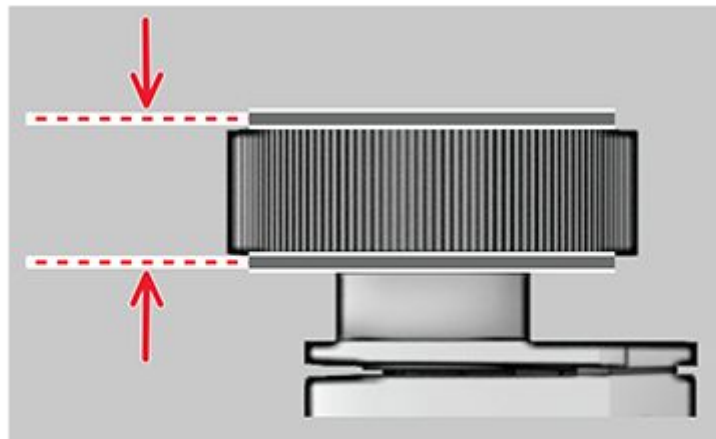


**Note:** To avoid contamination, make sure that your hands are clean.

12. Insert the new pick tires.



 **Note:** Make sure that the pick tire is properly inserted into the pick roller.



13. Return the printer to its original position, and then insert the waste toner bottle.
14. Insert the tray.
15. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down.
16. Pull out the print cartridge tray.

17. Remove the paper, and then insert the print cartridge tray.
18. Close the front door.
19. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.



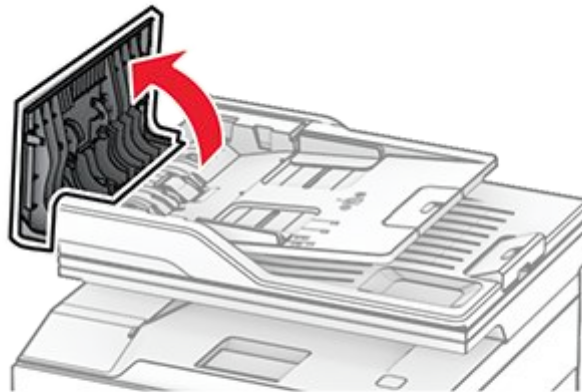
**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

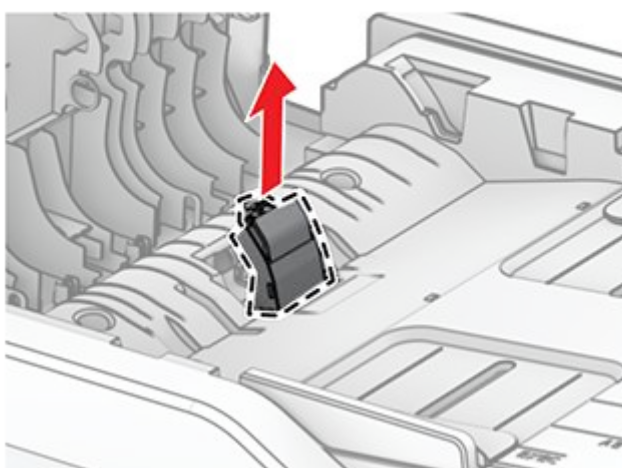
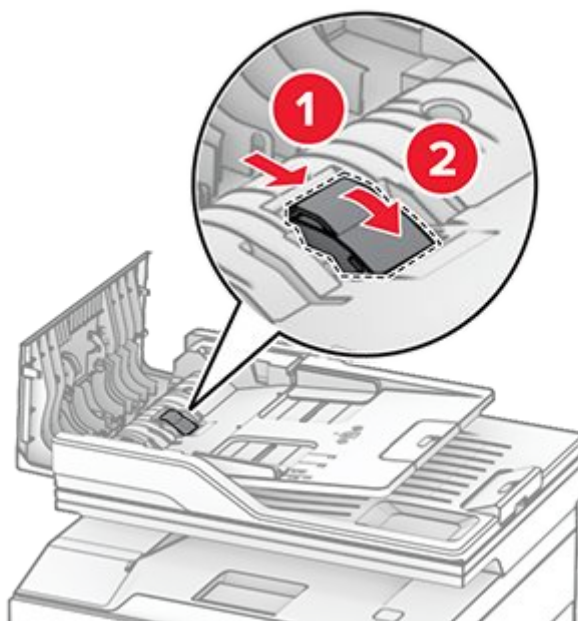
20. Turn on the printer.

## REPLACING THE ADF SEPARATOR PAD

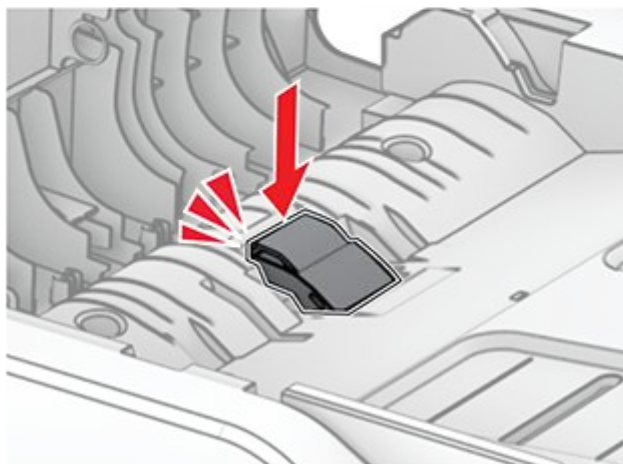
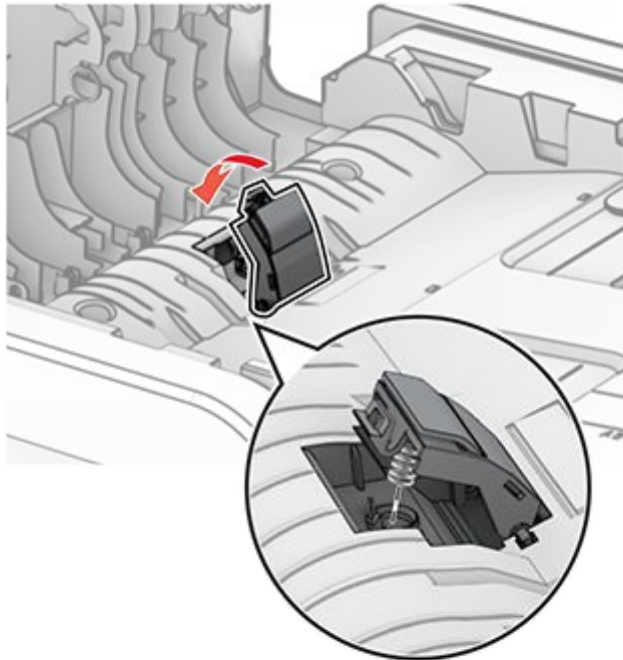
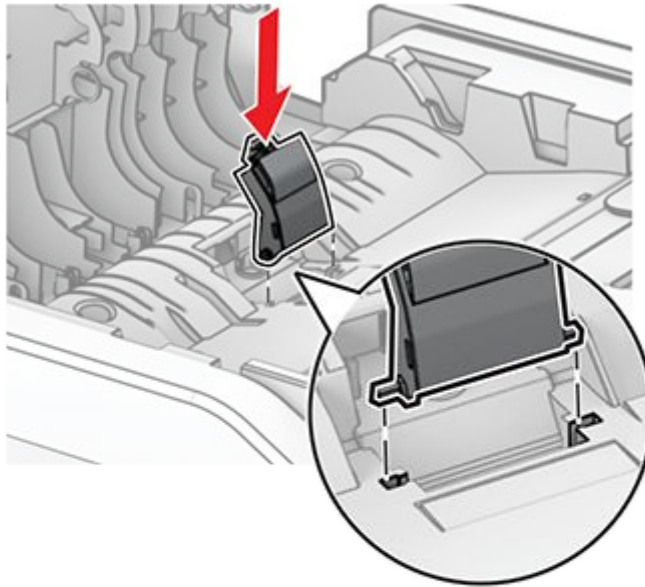
1. Open the ADF cover.



2. Remove the used ADF separator pad.



3. Unpack the new ADF separator pad.
4. Insert the new separator pad until it clicks into place.



5. Close the ADF cover.

## RESETTING THE SUPPLY USAGE COUNTERS

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Maintenance** › **Configuration Menu** › **Supply Usage And Counters**.
2. Select the counter that you want to reset.

## Cleaning printer parts

### CLEANING THE EXTERIOR OF THE PRINTER

Regular maintenance of your printer is essential to ensure its longevity and optimal performance. When cleaning the printer, take the necessary precautions to avoid damage. Damage to the printer caused by improper handling is not covered by the printer warranty.

1. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.



#### CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD

To avoid the risk of electrical shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

2. Remove paper from the standard bin, the trays, and the multipurpose feeder or manual feeder.
3. Using a soft brush, remove any dust, lint, and pieces of paper around the printer.
4. Using a damp, soft, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:
  - Control panel
  - Standard bin
  - Trays
  - Multipurpose feeder or manual feeder
  - Front, sides, and rear of the printer



#### Warning—Potential Damage

- To avoid damaging the finish of the printer, do not use household cleaners or detergents.
  - Do not use aerosol cleaners, as they may cause explosions or fires when used on electromechanical equipment.
5. Make sure that all areas of the printer are dry after cleaning.
  6. Connect the power cord to the electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.



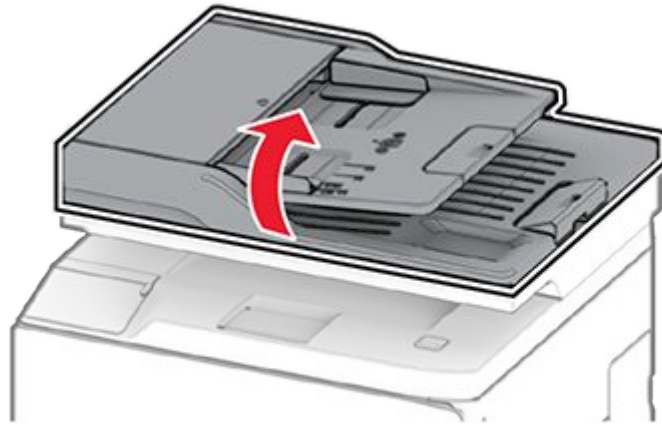
#### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

### CLEANING THE SCANNER

1. Open the scanner cover.

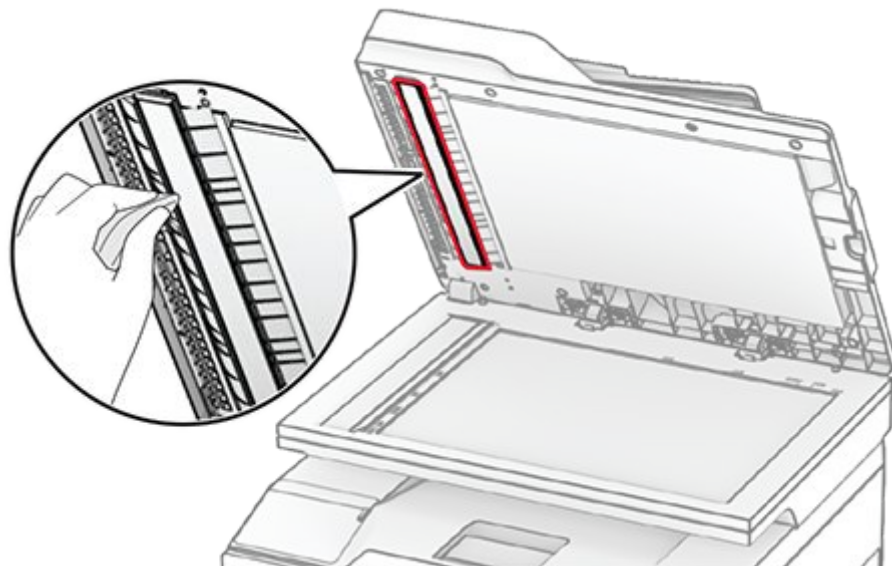




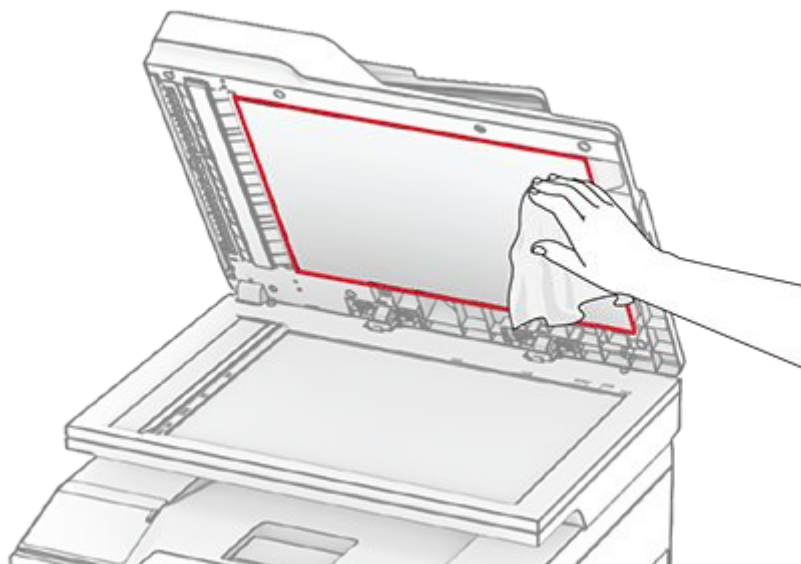
2. Using a damp, soft, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:

- ADF glass pad

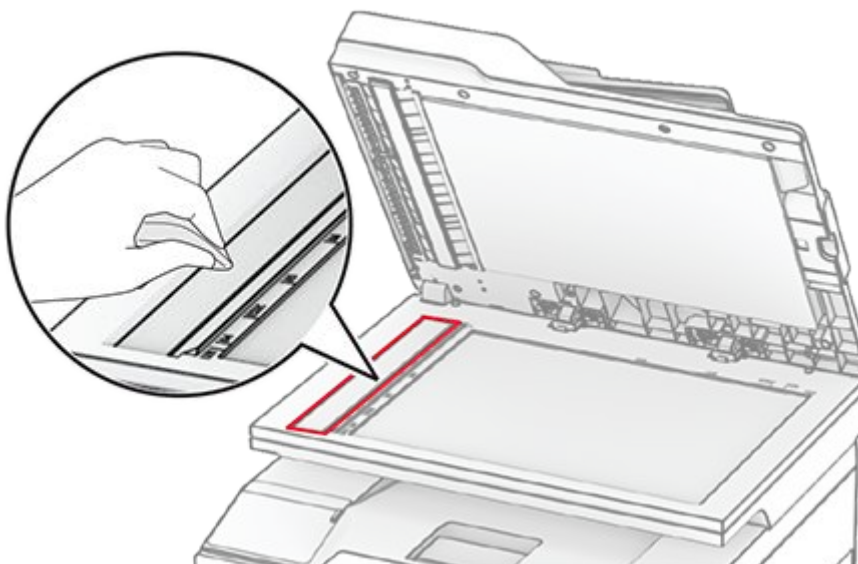
 **Note:** In certain printer models, this location has an ADF glass instead of a pad.



- Scanner glass pad

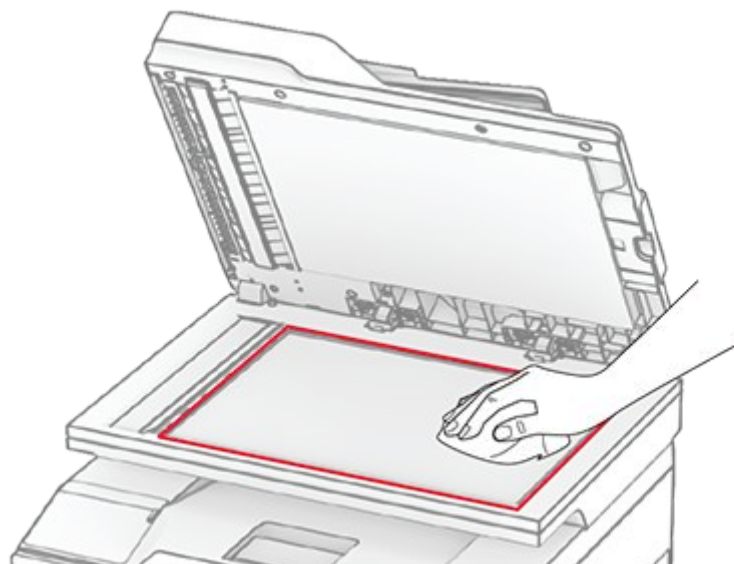


- ADF glass



- Scanner glass

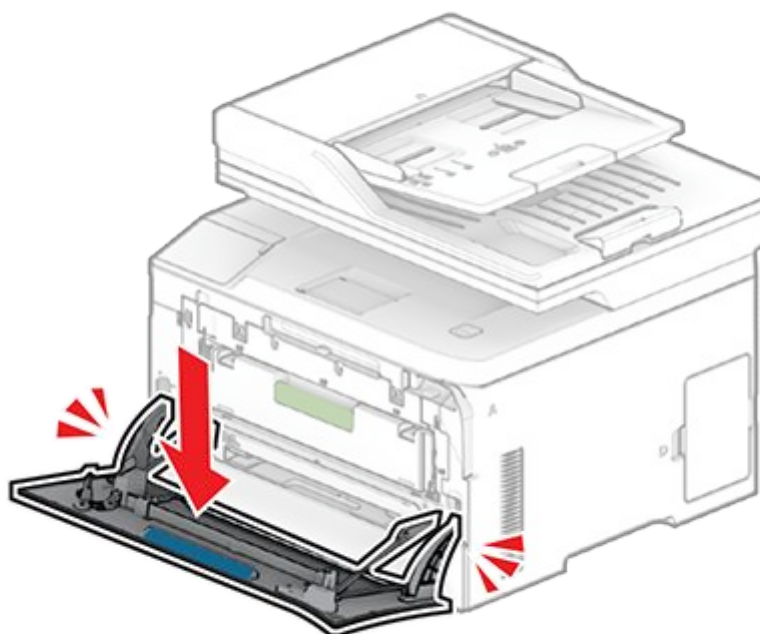




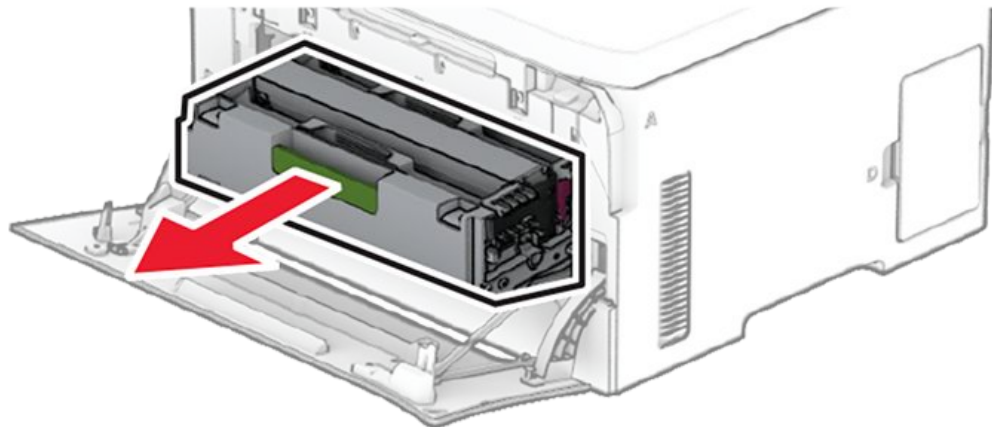
3. Close the scanner cover.

### CLEANING THE PICK TIRES

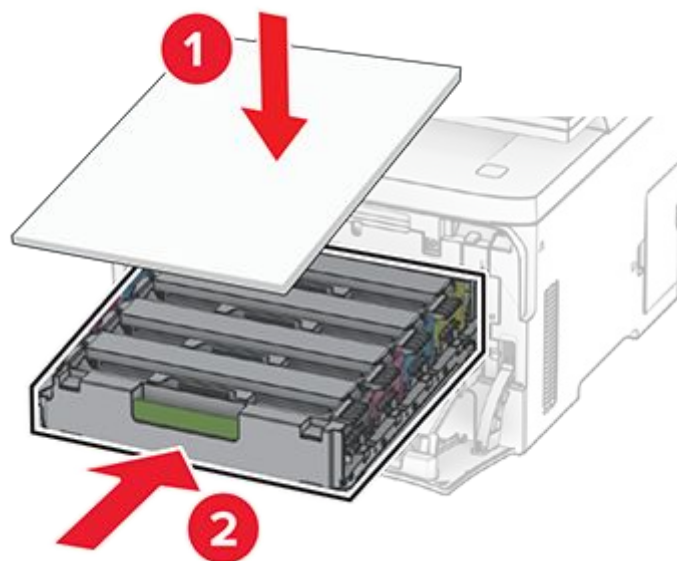
1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then from the printer.
3. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down.



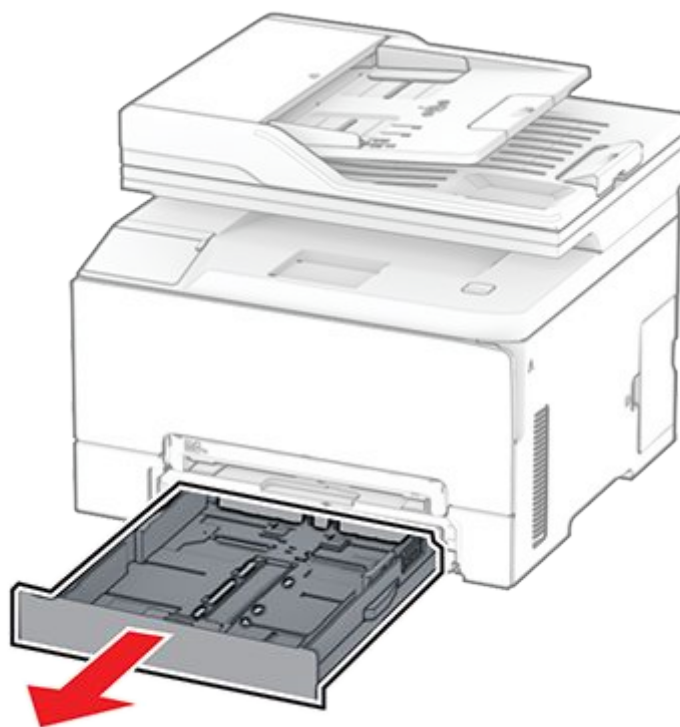
4. Pull out the print cartridge tray.



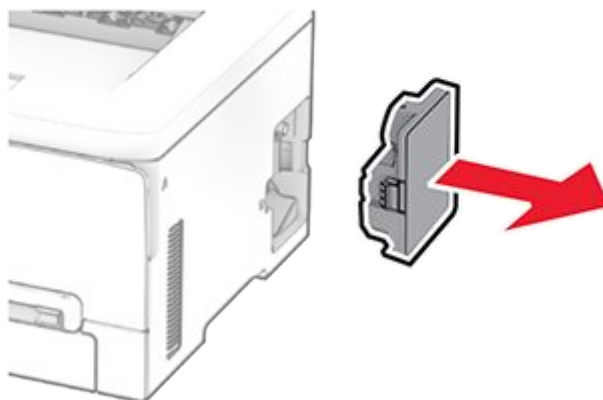
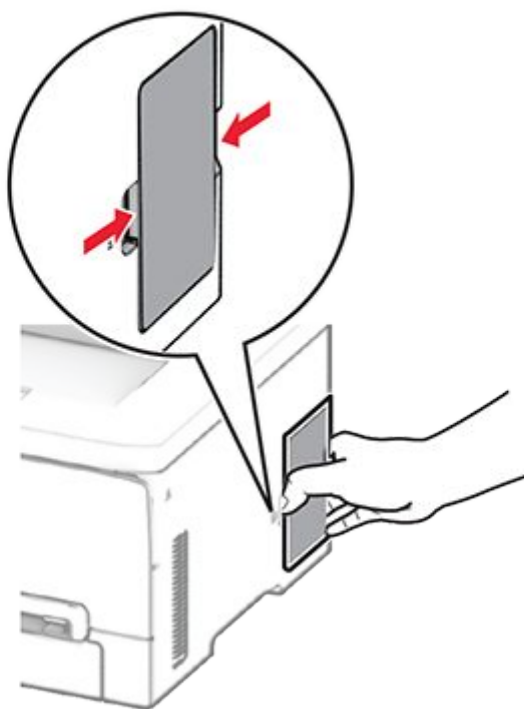
5. To avoid stray toner contamination, place a sheet of paper on top of the print cartridge tray, and then insert the print cartridge tray.



6. Close the front door.
7. Remove the tray.

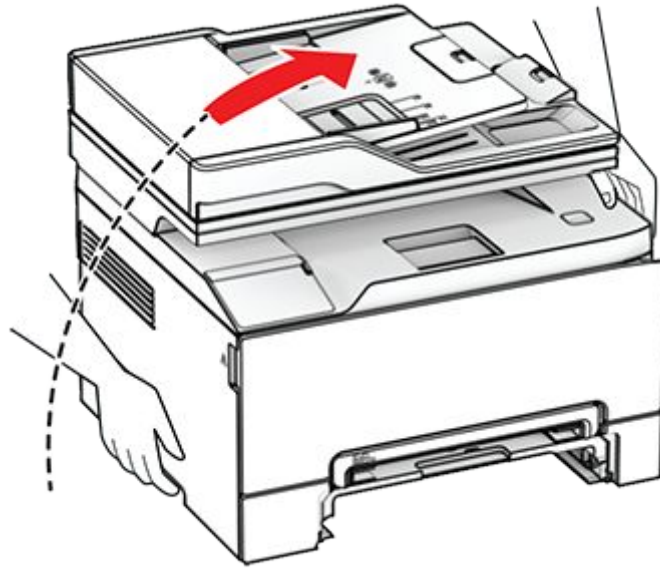


8. Remove the waste toner bottle.

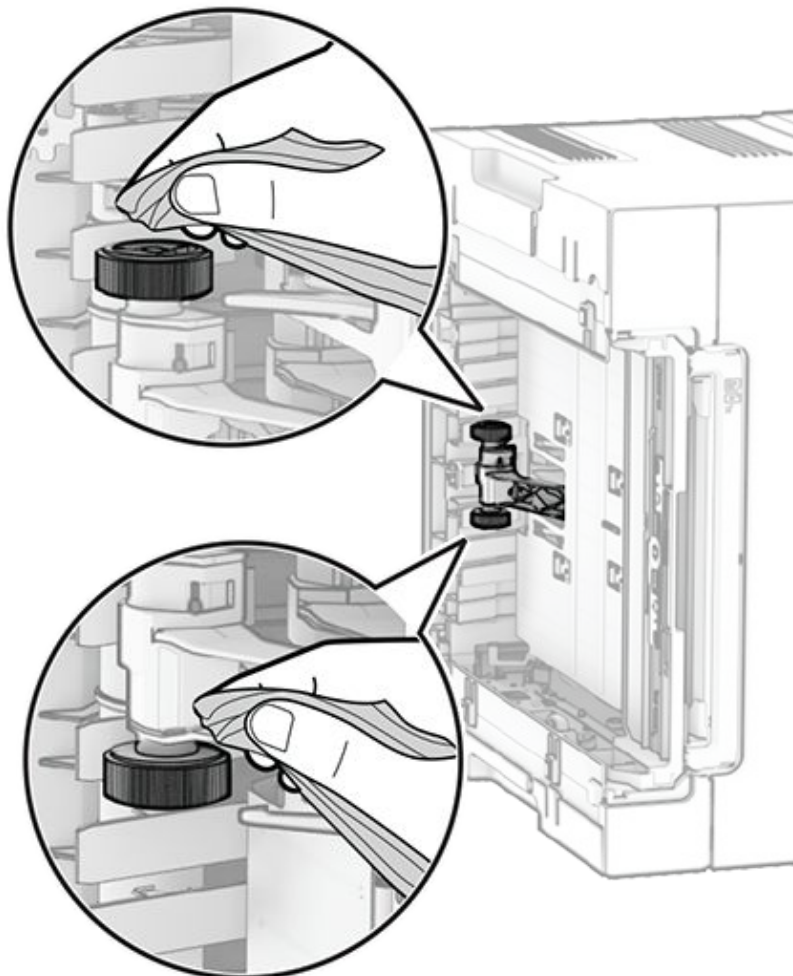


 **Note:** To avoid spilling the toner, place the bottle in an upright position.

9. Position the printer on its side.



10. Apply isopropyl alcohol to a soft, lint-free cloth, and then wipe the pick tires.



11. Return the printer to its original position, and then insert the waste toner bottle.
12. Insert the tray.
13. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down.
14. Pull out the print cartridge tray.
15. Remove the paper, and then insert the print cartridge tray.
16. Close the front door.
17. Connect the power cord to the printer, and then to the electrical outlet.



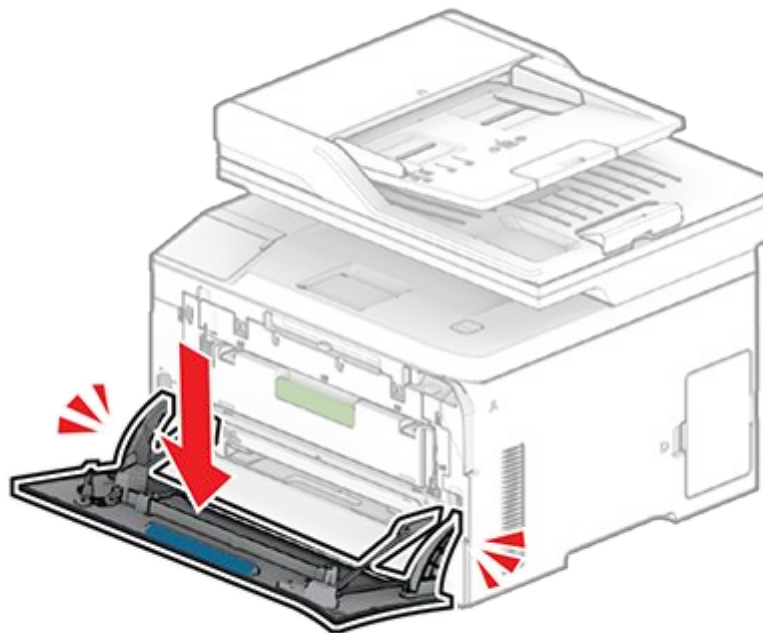
**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

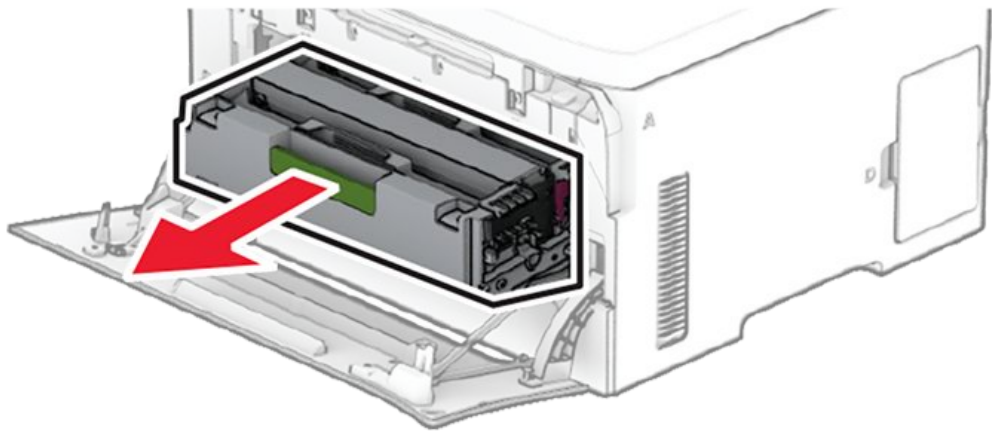
18. Turn on the printer.

## CLEANING THE PRINT CARTRIDGE CONTACTS

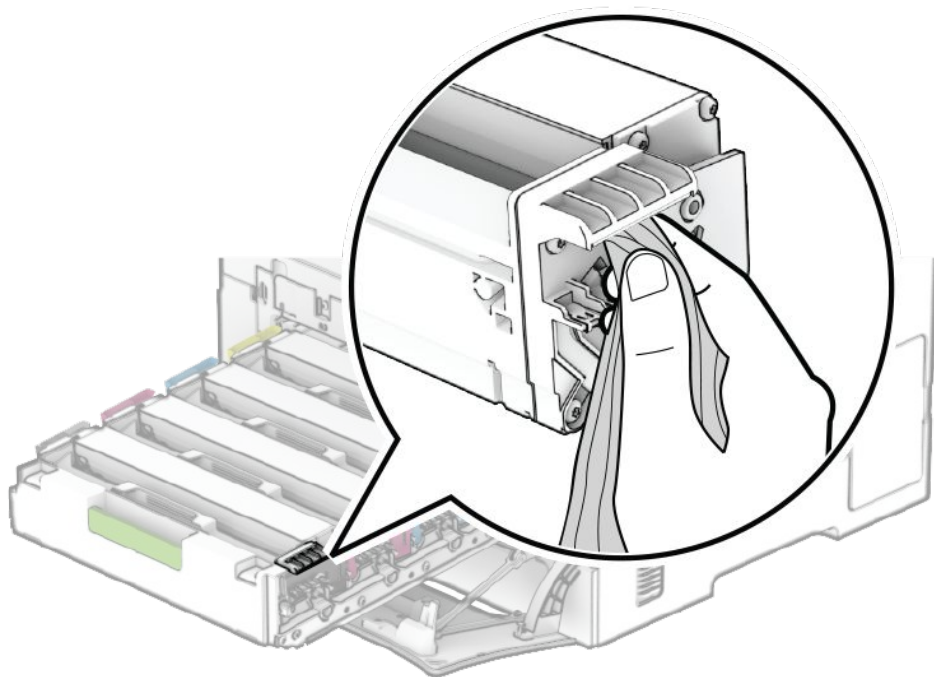
1. Open the front door, and then firmly push it down.



2. Pull out the print cartridge tray.



3. Using a dry, soft, lint-free cloth, wipe the gold contacts in all the print cartridges.



4. Insert the print cartridge tray, and then close the door.

## Saving energy and paper

### CONFIGURING THE POWER SAVE MODE SETTINGS

#### Sleep mode

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Device** > **Power Management** > **Timeouts** > **Sleep Mode**.
2. Set the amount of time that the printer stays idle before it enters **Sleep Mode**.



## Hibernate mode

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Power Management › Timeouts › Hibernate Timeout**.
2. Set the amount of time that the printer stays idle before it enters Hibernate mode.

### Notes

- For **Hibernate Timeout** to work, set **Hibernate Timeout on Connection** to **Hibernate**.
- The Embedded Web Server is disabled when the printer is in Hibernate mode.

## ADJUSTING THE BRIGHTNESS OF THE DISPLAY

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Device › Preferences**.
2. In the **Screen Brightness** menu, adjust the setting.

## CONSERVING SUPPLIES

- Print on both sides of the paper.



**Note:** Two-sided printing is the default setting in the printer.

- Print multiple pages on a single sheet of paper.
- Use the preview feature to see how the document looks like before printing it.
- Print one copy of the document to check its content and format for accuracy.

## Moving the printer to another location



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

If the printer weight is greater than 20 kg (44 lb), then it may require two or more people to lift it safely.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

When moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Make sure that all doors and trays are closed.
- Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer.
- If the printer has separate floor-standing optional trays or output options attached to it, then disconnect them before moving the printer.
- If the printer has a caster base, then carefully roll it to the new location. Use caution when passing over thresholds and breaks in flooring.



- If the printer does not have a caster base but is configured with optional trays or output options, then remove the output options and lift the printer off the trays. Do not try to lift the printer and any options at the same time.
- Always use the handholds on the printer to lift it.
- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer.
- Any cart used to move the hardware options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the options.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.
- Make sure that your fingers are not under the printer when you set it down.
- Make sure that there is adequate clearance around the printer.

 **Note:** Damage to the printer caused by improper moving is not covered by the printer warranty.

# Troubleshoot a problem

This chapter contains

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Print quality issues .....       | 247 |
| Printer error codes.....         | 268 |
| Paper jams .....                 | 275 |
| Printing problems.....           | 308 |
| Connectivity problems.....       | 309 |
| Hardware options problems.....   | 310 |
| Issues with supplies.....        | 311 |
| Paper handling problems .....    | 319 |
| Emailing problems.....           | 321 |
| Faxing problems .....            | 322 |
| Scanning problems.....           | 324 |
| System problems.....             | 330 |
| Color quality problems.....      | 332 |
| Contacting customer support..... | 334 |

## 11. Troubleshoot a problem

### Print quality issues

#### BEST PRACTICES FOR MAINTAINING PRINT QUALITY

- Use only genuine print cartridges, toner cartridges, and fusers instead of third-party supplies.
- Use the correct paper type and size. Identify the recommended printable side of the paper before loading. Match the printer settings to the paper loaded.
- Choose high-quality paper made for laser printers and copiers. Use paper from an unopened package. Old paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity.
- Keep the default print settings unless changing them is necessary.
- If an issue occurs, perform a manual Color Adjust before printing. Otherwise, let the printer adjust colors automatically when needed.
- Make sure the glass surface of the scanner is completely clean and free of dirt, dust, fingerprints, or any other substances that may affect scanning quality.
- Keep the imaging unit, imaging kit, or cartridge in its packaging until ready for use to minimize light exposure.
- Avoid touching the photoconductor drum or transfer belt and minimize its exposure to light.
- Place the printer on a flat, sturdy, and stable surface and within its temperature and humidity specifications.
- Plug the printer directly into an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet, not a power strip or surge protector.

#### Factors that affect print quality output

- Software used to send the file
  - Different programs, such as PowerPoint, Adobe, Edge, handle color differently. For example, Microsoft Office often uses RGB, while Adobe sends CMYK.
- Printer firmware used
  - Use the latest firmware version for best results.
- Print driver selection
  - Use the latest driver selection for best results.
  - Avoid outdated third-party drivers.
- Operating system (OS)
  - Print output can vary by OS. For example, Windows, macOS, Linux, Android.
- Print job complexity
  - Long or complex jobs may impact print or copy quality.
  - If issues occur, send smaller jobs or allow the printer to cool.

- Information technology policies of the company or organization
  - Policies may override user settings. For example, force black-and-white printing and enable the toner saver setting.
- Component life
  - Replaceable printer components, such as cartridges or imaging units, that have reached the end of their rated life can affect print or copy quality.
- Color differences between the computer screen and actual print
  - Monitors use RGB while printers use CMYK. Colors may not match exactly.

## PRINT QUALITY ISSUES GUIDE

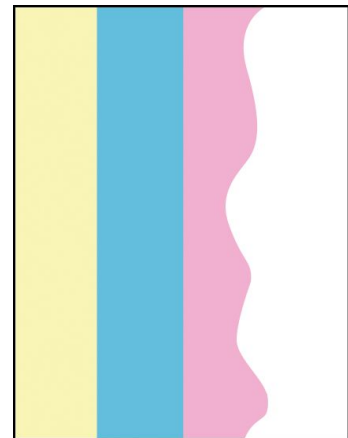
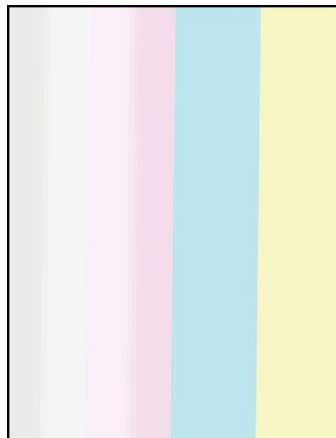
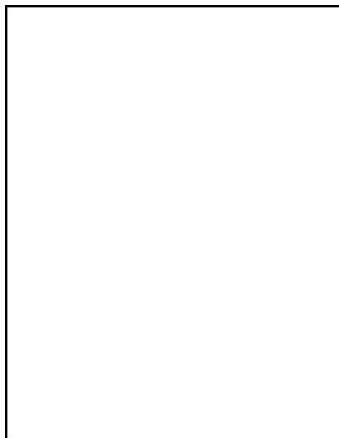
To prevent or resolve common print quality problems, see [Best practices for maintaining print quality on page 247](#).

Look for the image that matches your print quality issue. Click the link to see the troubleshooting steps.

### Missing print

- Blank page
- Partially blank page

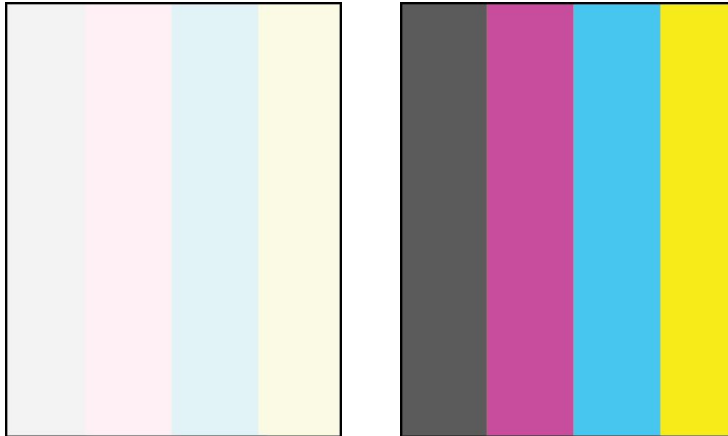
*Examples:*



### Image is too light or too dark

- Light print
- Faded print
- Dark print

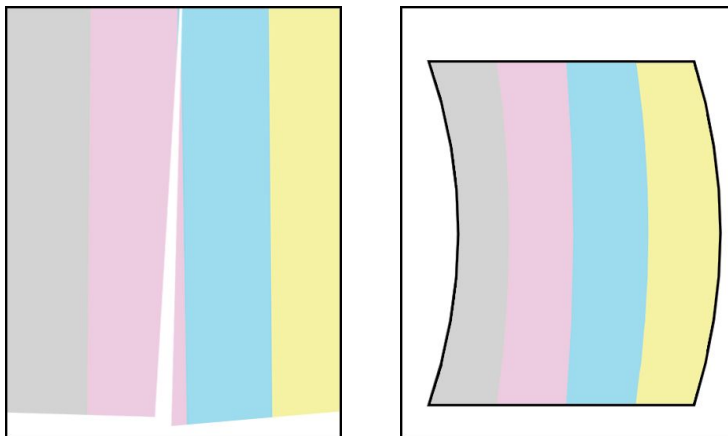
*Examples:*



### Folded, wrinkled, or curled paper

- Folded paper
- Wrinkled paper
- Curled paper

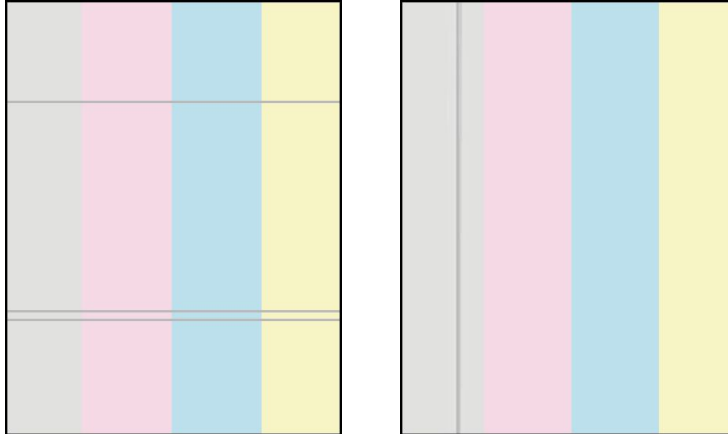
*Examples:*



### Dark vertical or horizontal lines

- Black lines
- Dark streaks
- Dark bands

*Examples:*



### Light vertical or horizontal lines

- White lines
- Line streaks
- Light bands

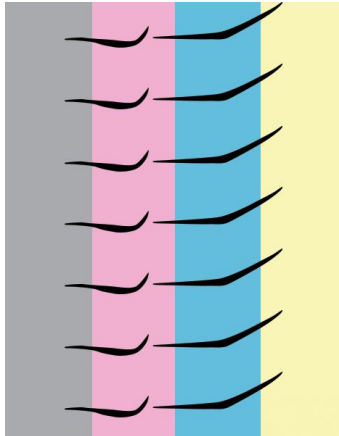
*Examples:*



### Repeating defects

- Repetitive marks
- Ghosting
- Identical marks at fixed intervals

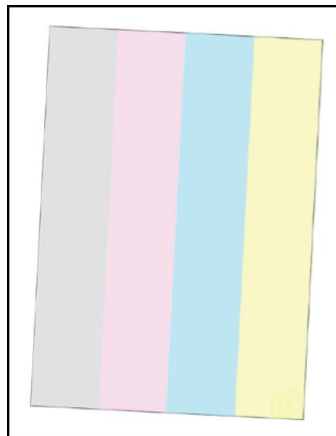
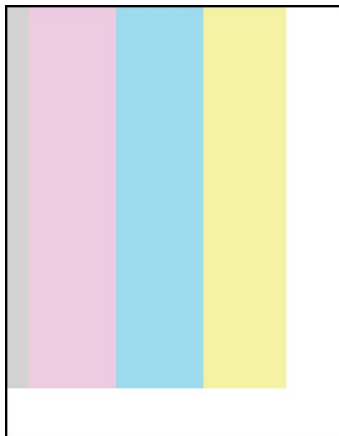
*Examples:*



### Image is not correctly placed on page

- Incorrect margins
- Skewed print
- Tilted page

*Examples:*



## Gray or light background

- Shaded background
- Tinted background

Examples:

| Leonard GXTMedia<br>Print Quality Test |               |                                                 |                                                 |
|----------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Fonts                                  | Double-Strike | Font Sizes, Pfr, n                              |                                                 |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 3 pt                                            | 4 pt                                            |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 6 pt                                            | 8 pt                                            |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 9 pt                                            | 12 pt                                           |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 14 pt                                           | 18 pt                                           |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 18 pt                                           | 24 pt                                           |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 24 pt                                           | 36 pt                                           |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 36 pt                                           | 48 pt                                           |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 48 pt                                           | 72 pt                                           |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 72 pt                                           | 144 pt                                          |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 144 pt                                          | 288 pt                                          |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 288 pt                                          | 576 pt                                          |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 576 pt                                          | 1152 pt                                         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1152 pt                                         | 2304 pt                                         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2304 pt                                         | 4608 pt                                         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 4608 pt                                         | 9216 pt                                         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 9216 pt                                         | 18432 pt                                        |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 18432 pt                                        | 36864 pt                                        |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 36864 pt                                        | 73728 pt                                        |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 73728 pt                                        | 147456 pt                                       |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 147456 pt                                       | 294912 pt                                       |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 294912 pt                                       | 589824 pt                                       |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 589824 pt                                       | 1179648 pt                                      |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1179648 pt                                      | 2359296 pt                                      |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2359296 pt                                      | 4718592 pt                                      |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 4718592 pt                                      | 9437184 pt                                      |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 9437184 pt                                      | 18874368 pt                                     |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 18874368 pt                                     | 37748736 pt                                     |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 37748736 pt                                     | 75497472 pt                                     |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 75497472 pt                                     | 150994944 pt                                    |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 150994944 pt                                    | 301989888 pt                                    |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 301989888 pt                                    | 603979776 pt                                    |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 603979776 pt                                    | 1207959552 pt                                   |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1207959552 pt                                   | 2415919104 pt                                   |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2415919104 pt                                   | 4831838208 pt                                   |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 4831838208 pt                                   | 9663676416 pt                                   |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 9663676416 pt                                   | 19327352832 pt                                  |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 19327352832 pt                                  | 38654705664 pt                                  |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 38654705664 pt                                  | 77309411328 pt                                  |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 77309411328 pt                                  | 154618822656 pt                                 |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 154618822656 pt                                 | 309237645312 pt                                 |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 309237645312 pt                                 | 618475290624 pt                                 |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 618475290624 pt                                 | 1236950581248 pt                                |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1236950581248 pt                                | 2473901162496 pt                                |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2473901162496 pt                                | 4947802324992 pt                                |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 4947802324992 pt                                | 9895604649984 pt                                |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 9895604649984 pt                                | 19791209299968 pt                               |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 19791209299968 pt                               | 39582418599936 pt                               |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 39582418599936 pt                               | 79164837199872 pt                               |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 79164837199872 pt                               | 158329674399744 pt                              |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 158329674399744 pt                              | 316659348799488 pt                              |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 316659348799488 pt                              | 633318697598976 pt                              |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 633318697598976 pt                              | 1266637395197952 pt                             |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1266637395197952 pt                             | 2533274790395904 pt                             |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2533274790395904 pt                             | 5066549580791808 pt                             |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 5066549580791808 pt                             | 10133099161583616 pt                            |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 10133099161583616 pt                            | 20266198323167232 pt                            |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 20266198323167232 pt                            | 40532396646334464 pt                            |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 40532396646334464 pt                            | 81064793292668928 pt                            |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 81064793292668928 pt                            | 162129586585337856 pt                           |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 162129586585337856 pt                           | 324259173170675712 pt                           |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 324259173170675712 pt                           | 648518346341351424 pt                           |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 648518346341351424 pt                           | 1297036692682702848 pt                          |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1297036692682702848 pt                          | 2594073385365405696 pt                          |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2594073385365405696 pt                          | 5188146770730811392 pt                          |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 5188146770730811392 pt                          | 10376293541461622784 pt                         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 10376293541461622784 pt                         | 20752587082923245568 pt                         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 20752587082923245568 pt                         | 41505174165846491136 pt                         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 41505174165846491136 pt                         | 83010348331692982272 pt                         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 83010348331692982272 pt                         | 166020696663385964544 pt                        |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 166020696663385964544 pt                        | 332041393326771929088 pt                        |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 332041393326771929088 pt                        | 664082786653543858176 pt                        |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 664082786653543858176 pt                        | 1328165573307087716352 pt                       |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1328165573307087716352 pt                       | 2656331146614175432704 pt                       |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2656331146614175432704 pt                       | 5312662293228350865408 pt                       |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 5312662293228350865408 pt                       | 10625324586456701730816 pt                      |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 10625324586456701730816 pt                      | 21250649172913403461632 pt                      |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 21250649172913403461632 pt                      | 42501298345826806923264 pt                      |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 42501298345826806923264 pt                      | 85002596691653613846528 pt                      |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 85002596691653613846528 pt                      | 170005193383307227693056 pt                     |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 170005193383307227693056 pt                     | 340010386766614455386112 pt                     |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 340010386766614455386112 pt                     | 680020773533228910772224 pt                     |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 680020773533228910772224 pt                     | 1360041547066457821544448 pt                    |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1360041547066457821544448 pt                    | 2720083094132915643088896 pt                    |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2720083094132915643088896 pt                    | 5440166188265831286177792 pt                    |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 5440166188265831286177792 pt                    | 10880332376531662572355584 pt                   |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 10880332376531662572355584 pt                   | 21760664753063325144711168 pt                   |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 21760664753063325144711168 pt                   | 43521329506126650289422336 pt                   |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 43521329506126650289422336 pt                   | 87042659012253300578844672 pt                   |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 87042659012253300578844672 pt                   | 174085318024506601157689344 pt                  |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 174085318024506601157689344 pt                  | 348170636049013202315378688 pt                  |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 348170636049013202315378688 pt                  | 696341272098026404630757376 pt                  |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 696341272098026404630757376 pt                  | 1392682544196052809261514752 pt                 |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1392682544196052809261514752 pt                 | 2785365088392105618523029504 pt                 |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2785365088392105618523029504 pt                 | 5570730176784211237046059008 pt                 |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 5570730176784211237046059008 pt                 | 11141460353568422474092118016 pt                |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 11141460353568422474092118016 pt                | 22282920707136844948184236032 pt                |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 22282920707136844948184236032 pt                | 44565841414273689896368472064 pt                |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 44565841414273689896368472064 pt                | 89131682828547379792736944128 pt                |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 89131682828547379792736944128 pt                | 178263365657094759585473888256 pt               |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 178263365657094759585473888256 pt               | 356526731314189519170947776512 pt               |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 356526731314189519170947776512 pt               | 713053462628379038341895553024 pt               |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 713053462628379038341895553024 pt               | 1426106925256758076683791106048 pt              |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1426106925256758076683791106048 pt              | 2852213850513516153367582212096 pt              |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2852213850513516153367582212096 pt              | 5704427701027032306735164424192 pt              |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 5704427701027032306735164424192 pt              | 11408855402054064613470328848384 pt             |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 11408855402054064613470328848384 pt             | 22817710804108129226940657696768 pt             |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 22817710804108129226940657696768 pt             | 45635421608216258453881315393536 pt             |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 45635421608216258453881315393536 pt             | 91270843216432516907762630787072 pt             |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 91270843216432516907762630787072 pt             | 182541686432865033815525261574144 pt            |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 182541686432865033815525261574144 pt            | 365083372865730067631050523148288 pt            |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 365083372865730067631050523148288 pt            | 730166745731460135262101046296576 pt            |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 730166745731460135262101046296576 pt            | 1460333491462920270524202092593152 pt           |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1460333491462920270524202092593152 pt           | 2920666982925840541048404185186304 pt           |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2920666982925840541048404185186304 pt           | 5841333965851681082096808370372608 pt           |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 5841333965851681082096808370372608 pt           | 11682667931703362164193616740745216 pt          |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 11682667931703362164193616740745216 pt          | 23365335863406724328387233481490432 pt          |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 23365335863406724328387233481490432 pt          | 46730671726813448656774466962980864 pt          |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 46730671726813448656774466962980864 pt          | 93461343453626897313548933925961728 pt          |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 93461343453626897313548933925961728 pt          | 186922686907253794627097867851833456 pt         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 186922686907253794627097867851833456 pt         | 373845373814507589254195735703666912 pt         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 373845373814507589254195735703666912 pt         | 747690747629015178508391471407333824 pt         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 747690747629015178508391471407333824 pt         | 149538149525803035701678294281466752 pt         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 149538149525803035701678294281466752 pt         | 299076299051606071403356588562933504 pt         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 299076299051606071403356588562933504 pt         | 598152598103212142806713177125867008 pt         |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 598152598103212142806713177125867008 pt         | 1196305196206424285613426354251734016 pt        |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1196305196206424285613426354251734016 pt        | 2392610392412848571226852708503468032 pt        |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2392610392412848571226852708503468032 pt        | 4785220784825697142453705417006936064 pt        |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 4785220784825697142453705417006936064 pt        | 9570441569651394284907410834013872128 pt        |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 9570441569651394284907410834013872128 pt        | 19140883139302788569814821668027744256 pt       |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 19140883139302788569814821668027744256 pt       | 38281766278605577139629643336055488512 pt       |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 38281766278605577139629643336055488512 pt       | 76563532557211154279259286672110977024 pt       |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 76563532557211154279259286672110977024 pt       | 153127065114422308558518573344221954048 pt      |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 153127065114422308558518573344221954048 pt      | 306254130228844617117037146688443908096 pt      |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 306254130228844617117037146688443908096 pt      | 612508260457689234234074293376887816192 pt      |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 612508260457689234234074293376887816192 pt      | 1225016520915378468468148586753775632384 pt     |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1225016520915378468468148586753775632384 pt     | 2450033041830756936936297173507551264768 pt     |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2450033041830756936936297173507551264768 pt     | 4900066083661513873872594347015102529536 pt     |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 4900066083661513873872594347015102529536 pt     | 9800132167323027747745188694030205059072 pt     |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 9800132167323027747745188694030205059072 pt     | 19600264334646055495490377388060410118144 pt    |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 19600264334646055495490377388060410118144 pt    | 39200528669292110990980754776120820236288 pt    |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 39200528669292110990980754776120820236288 pt    | 78401057338584221981961509552241640472576 pt    |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 78401057338584221981961509552241640472576 pt    | 156802114677168443963923019104483280945152 pt   |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 156802114677168443963923019104483280945152 pt   | 313604229354336887927846038208966561890304 pt   |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 313604229354336887927846038208966561890304 pt   | 627208458708673775855692076417933123780608 pt   |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 627208458708673775855692076417933123780608 pt   | 1254416917417347551711384152835866247561216 pt  |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 1254416917417347551711384152835866247561216 pt  | 2508833834834695103422768305671732495122432 pt  |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 2508833834834695103422768305671732495122432 pt  | 5017667669669390206845536611343464990244864 pt  |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 5017667669669390206845536611343464990244864 pt  | 10035335339338780413691073222686929980489728 pt |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 10035335339338780413691073222686929980489728 pt | 20070670678677560827382146445373859960979552 pt |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 20070670678677560827382146445373859960979552 pt | 40141341357355121654764292890747719921959104 pt |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 40141341357355121654764292890747719921959104 pt | 80282682714710243309528585781495439843918208 pt |
| Alto 12pt                              | Double        | 802                                             |                                                 |



## Solid black or color pages

- Full page black or color print
- Blackout print

*Example:*



## Compressed images appear on prints

- Stretched image
- Distorted print

*Example:*



### Fuzzy or blurry print

- Poor print resolution
- Low print sharpness

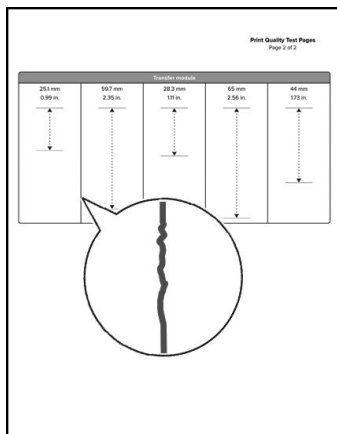
*Example:*



### Wiggly, wavy or distorted lines

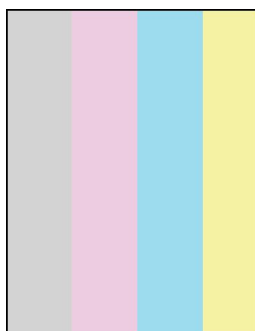
- Warped lines
- Rippling lines

*Example:*

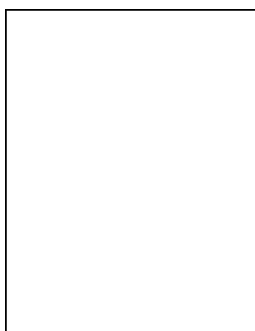


## MISSING PRINT

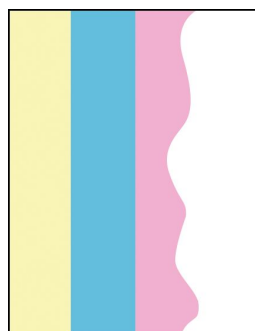
Expected print output



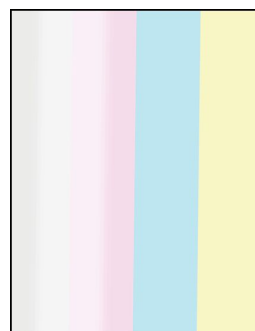
Defective print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



### Issue description

The printed page is completely blank or contains sections where content is partially missing.

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 248](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

#### Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
  - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

#### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

3. Check the toner darkness setting. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Print > Quality > Toner Darkness**.

#### Notes

- If the print is too dark, then set the value to **Light** and print again.
- If the print is too light, then set the value to **Dark** and print again.
- Change the value back to **Normal** if there are no significant changes in the printed page.

4. Initiate the color adjust process. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging › Color Adjust**.

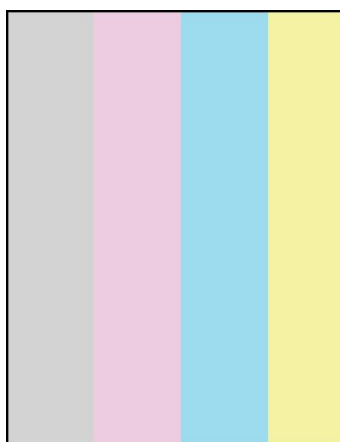


**Note:** The color adjust process takes about one minute to complete.

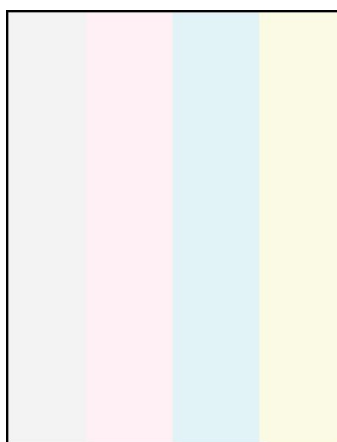
5. If your color print is only printing black, then do the following:
  - a. Check if black only mode is enabled. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Print Mode**. If the setting is **Black and White**, then change it to **Color**.
  - b. Check the print driver settings. Make sure that the driver is not set to print in black and white. With a document open, click **File › Print › Properties**. In the dialog box, click **Color Printing**. If **Xerox Black and White** is enabled, then change it to **Color**.
6. Check the print cartridge tray for improper installation.
  - If the print quality issue is occurring in black, then remove and reinstall the black print cartridge.
  - If the print quality issue is occurring in cyan, magenta, or yellow, then remove and reinstall the respective print cartridges.

## IMAGE IS TOO LIGHT OR TOO DARK

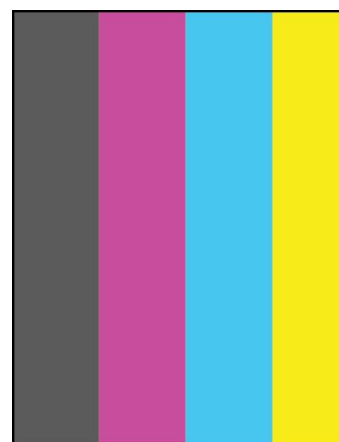
Expected print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



### Issue description

The printed output is significantly lighter or darker than expected, text and images appear faded or overly dark. In some cases, fine details are lost due to excessive darkness or insufficient contrast.

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Troubleshooting › Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 248](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

### Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
  - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

3. Check the toner darkness setting. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Toner Darkness**.

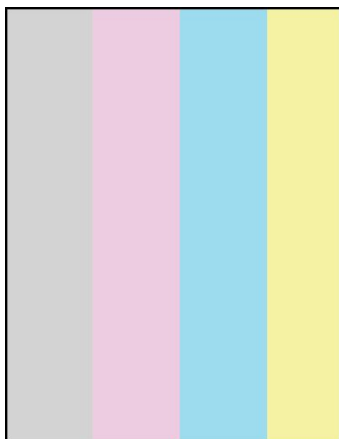
### Notes

- If the print is too light, then set the value to **Dark** and print again.
  - Change the value back to **Normal** if there are no significant changes in the printed page.
4. Make sure that Color Saver is turned off. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Color Saver**.
  5. Initiate the color adjust process. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging › Color Adjust**.

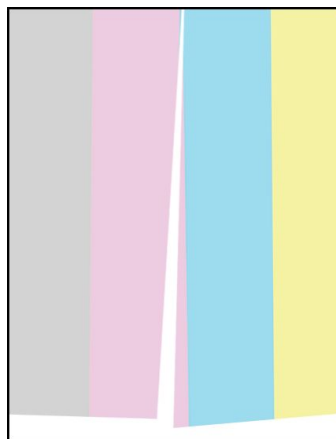
 **Note:** The color adjust process takes about one minute to complete.

## FOLDED, WRINKLED, OR CURLED PAPER

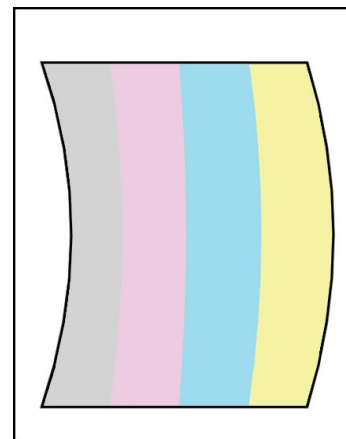
Expected print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



### Issue description

The printed pages have folds, wrinkles, or curled edges.

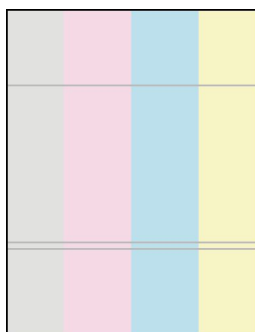
Folded, wrinkled, or curled paper is usually caused by a mismatch in printer settings or paper with excessive or uneven moisture.

### Troubleshooting steps

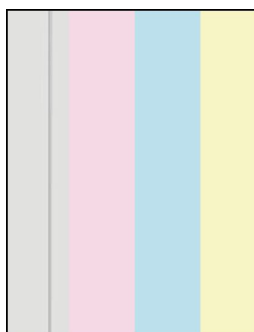
1. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
2. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
3. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
4. Make sure that the paper loaded is from a fresh package.

### VERTICAL OR HORIZONTAL LINES

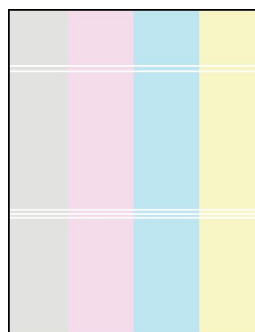
Defective print output



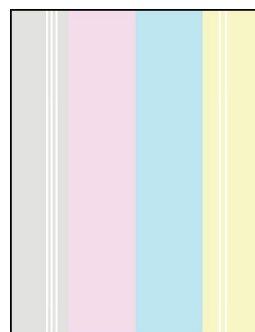
Defective print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



### Issue description

The printed page shows unwanted vertical or horizontal lines across the page, resulting in streaks or banding that affect image clarity.

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 248](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

### Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
  - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

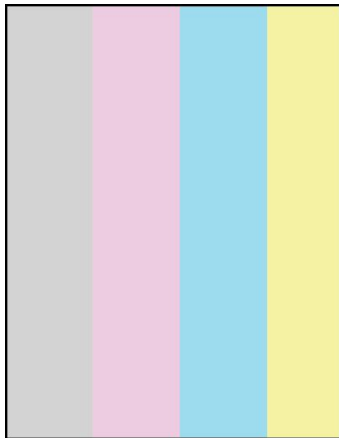
### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

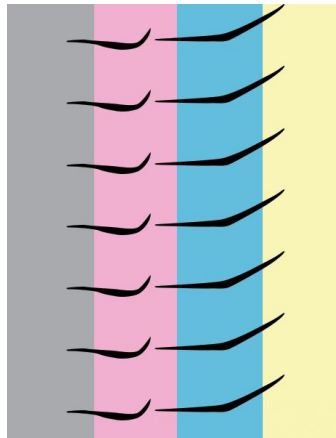
3. Check the print cartridge tray for improper installation.
  - If the print quality issue is occurring in black, then remove and reinstall the black print cartridge.
  - If the print quality issue is occurring in cyan, magenta, or yellow, then remove and reinstall the respective print cartridges.

## REPEATING DEFECTS

Expected print output



Defective print output



### Issue description

The printed page shows the same mark or spot appearing over and over at equal distances down the page.

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Troubleshooting** › **Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 248](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

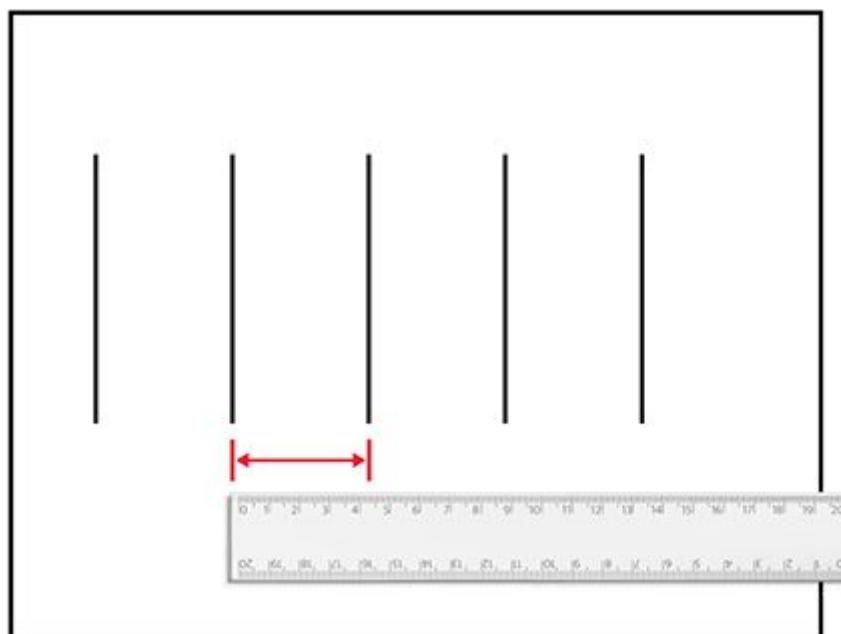
### Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
  - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

3. Measure the distance between the repeating defects using a ruler. If the distances are small, marking the first defect and the second defect with a pencil or pen will make them easier to measure.



4. Match the distance between the repeating defects to its corresponding replaceable part. Refer to the following table to determine which part to replace.

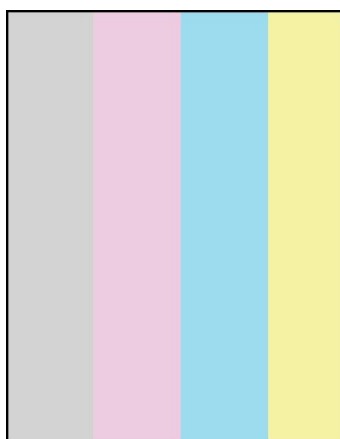
| Distance           | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 25.7 mm (1.01 in.) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◦ If the defect occurs in black, then replace the black print cartridge.</li><li>◦ If the defect occurs in cyan, magenta, or yellow, then replace the specific print cartridge where the issue occurs.</li></ul> |
| 35.3 mm (1.39 in.) |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 75.6 mm (2.98 in.) |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 26.7 mm (1.05 in.) |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |



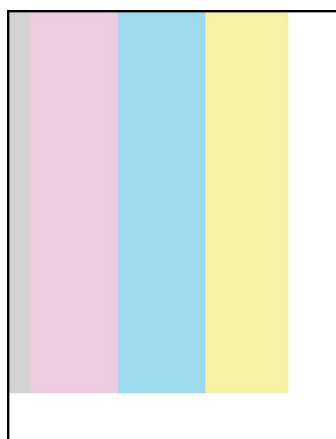
| Distance                                                                                                   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 56.5 mm (2.22 in.)                                                                                         | Replace the fuser.<br> <b>Note:</b> Only an authorized service technician can replace this part.<br>Contact <b>customer support</b> .           |
| 25.1 mm (0.99 in.)<br>59.7 mm (2.35 in.)<br>28.3 mm (1.11 in.)<br>65.0 mm (2.56 in.)<br>44.0 mm (1.73 in.) | Replace the transfer module.<br> <b>Note:</b> Only an authorized service technician can replace this part.<br>Contact <b>customer support</b> . |

## IMAGE IS NOT CORRECTLY PLACED ON PAGE

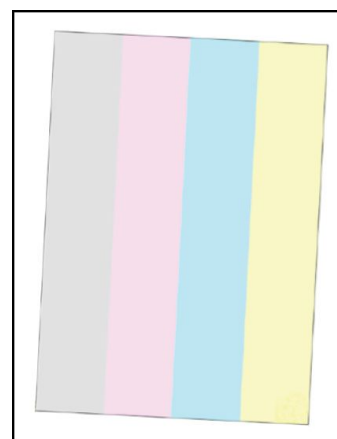
Expected print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



### Issue description

Printed pages are not straight or properly aligned. Margins may be wrong, and the content can look tilted, shifted to one side, or even cut off.

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see **Loading trays**.
2. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact **customer support**.
3. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see **Loading trays**.
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:

- The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
- The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

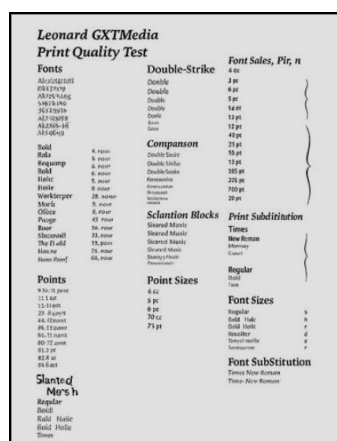
5. Make sure that the margin, paper size, and other settings in the original document match the print driver and printer settings.

## GRAY OR LIGHT BACKGROUND

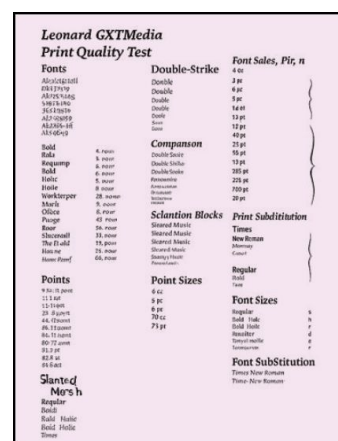
### Expected print output



### Defective print output



### Defective print output



## Issue description

The printed page has a light to medium gray tint or shaded background that covers the entire sheet or a large portion of it.

## Troubleshooting steps

1. If the printer has been used continuously, allow it to cool down for several minutes, then check if the issue is resolved.
2. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 248](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

### Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
  - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
    - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).

- The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
4. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

#### **Warning—Potential Damage**

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

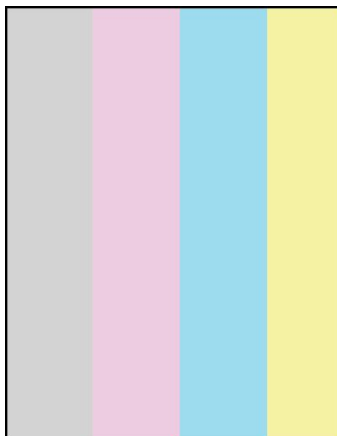
5. Check the toner darkness setting. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Toner Darkness**.

#### **Notes**

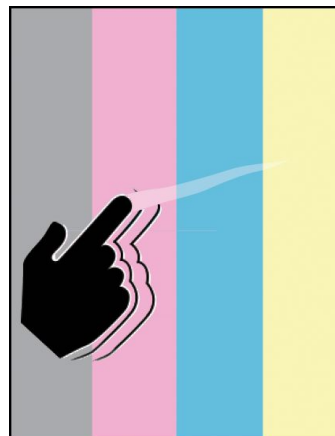
- If the print is too dark, then set the value to **Light** and print again.
  - If the print is too light, then set the value to **Dark** and print again.
  - Change the value back to **Normal** if there are no significant changes in the printed page.
6. Initiate the color adjust process. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging › Color Adjust**.
-  **Note:** The color adjust process takes about one minute to complete.
7. Check the print cartridge tray for improper installation.
    - If the print quality issue is occurring in black, then remove and reinstall the black print cartridge.
    - If the print quality issue is occurring in cyan, magenta, or yellow, then remove and reinstall the respective print cartridges.

## TONER EASILY RUBS OFF

Expected print output



Defective print output



### Issue description

Printed text or images can be wiped or rubbed off the page easily, leaving smudges or blank spots.

If the toner is rubbing off too easily, then the printer setting likely does not match the paper you are using.

## Troubleshooting steps

1. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
2. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Troubleshooting** > **Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 248](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

 **Note:** Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.

3. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

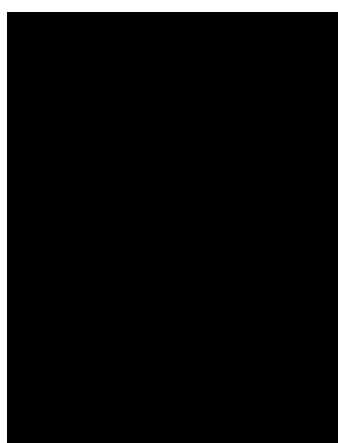
4. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

## SOLID BLACK OR COLOR PAGES

Expected print output



Defective print output



Defective print output



## Issue description

The printed page comes out fully black or colored with no visible text or images.

## Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 248](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

### Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
  - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

3. Check the print cartridge tray for improper installation.
  - If the print quality issue is occurring in black, then remove and reinstall the black print cartridge.
  - If the print quality issue is occurring in cyan, magenta, or yellow, then remove and reinstall the respective print cartridges.

## COMPRESSED IMAGES ON PRINTS

### Expected print output



### Defective print output



## Issue description

Some images on the printed page look squished or compressed, making them appear smaller or distorted compared to their original shape.

## Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 248](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

### Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
  - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
2. Check the paper loaded for the following:
    - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
    - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
  3. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.

### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

4. Check the print cartridge tray for improper installation.
  - If the print quality issue is occurring in black, then remove and reinstall the black print cartridge.
  - If the print quality issue is occurring in cyan, magenta, or yellow, then remove and reinstall the respective print cartridges.

## FUZZY OR BLURRY PRINT

### Expected print output



### Defective print output



## Issue description

Printed text or images look unclear, smudged, or out of focus instead of sharp and crisp. This makes the output hard to read or gives graphics a fuzzy appearance.

## Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Troubleshooting › Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 248](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.



### Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
  - Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.
2. Check the paper loaded for the following:
    - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
    - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
  3. Make sure that the paper loaded is from a fresh package.
  4. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.



### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

5. Check the toner darkness setting. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Toner Darkness**.



### Notes

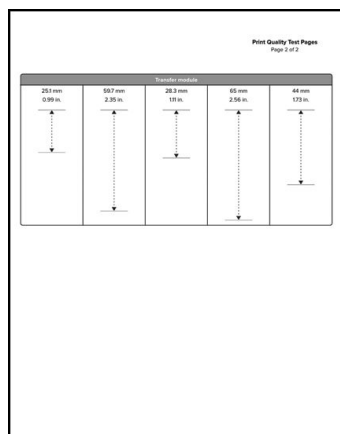
- If the print is too dark, then set the value to **Light** and print again.
  - If the print is too light, then set the value to **Dark** and print again.
  - Change the value back to **Normal** if there are no significant changes in the printed page.
6. Initiate the color adjust process. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging › Color Adjust**.



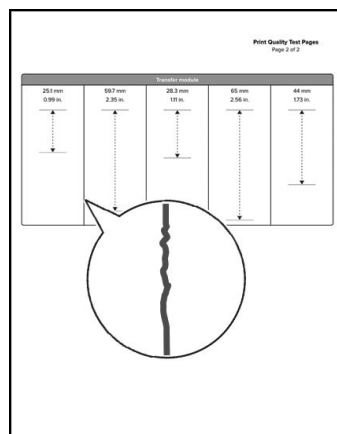
**Note:** The color adjust process takes about one minute to complete.

## WIGGLY, WAVY, OR DISTORTED LINES AND TEXT

Expected print output



Defective print output



### Issue description

The printed page shows lines or text that appear wavy, uneven, or distorted instead of straight and sharp.

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**, and then check if the defect on the test pages matches the defect shown in this topic. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**.

If the defect does not match the image shown in this topic, then see [Print quality issues guide on page 248](#) and look for the image that matches the defect.

#### Notes

- Verify that the issue does not occur when using the scanner. Using the scanner glass, copy the first page of the **Print Quality Test Pages** to see if the issue occurs again. If it does, then see the **Scanning problems** section.
- Check the source file and print driver settings to make sure that they are not causing the issue.

### Printer error codes

#### INTERVENTION REQUIRED ERROR CODES

| Error codes | Error message                    | Solution                                                               |
|-------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3.01        | <b>The standard bin is full.</b> | Remove the paper from the bin, and then select <b>Continue job</b> .   |
| 8.01, 8.02  | <b>Close door [x].</b>           | Keep the indicated door closed unless performing maintenance.          |
| 8.12, 8.13  | Close tray [x] and door [x]      | Keep the indicated door and tray closed unless performing maintenance. |



| Error codes         | Error message                 | Solution                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9.00                | Printer restarted.            | Reprint any jobs which did not finish printing before the reboot.                                                                   |
| 11.11, 11.21, 11.31 | Load [source].                | For more information, see the <a href="#">Loading error in trays on page 319</a> .                                                  |
| 11.12, 11.22, 11.32 | Load [source].                |                                                                                                                                     |
| 11.81               | Load [source].                | For more information, see the <a href="#">Loading error in the manual feeder on page 319</a> .                                      |
| 11.82               | Load [source].                |                                                                                                                                     |
| 12.11, 12.21, 12.31 | Change paper in [source].     | For more information, see the <a href="#">Loading error in trays on page 319</a> .                                                  |
| 12.12, 12.22, 12.32 | Change paper in [source].     |                                                                                                                                     |
| 12.81               | Change paper in [source].     | For more information, see the <a href="#">Loading error in the manual feeder on page 319</a> .                                      |
| 12.82               | Change paper in [source].     |                                                                                                                                     |
| 24.04               | Paper too small.              | For more information, see <a href="#">Paper size mismatch (two-sided printing) on page 320</a> .                                    |
| 34.00               | <b>Paper too short.</b>       | For more information, see <a href="#">Insufficient paper size for print on page 320</a> .                                           |
| 37.01               | Low memory.                   | For more information, see <a href="#">Insufficient memory on page 330</a> .                                                         |
| 37.03               | Low memory.                   | For more information, see <a href="#">Insufficient memory on page 330</a> .                                                         |
| 38.00               | Scanned document is too long. | For more information, see <a href="#">Scan job hang-up on page 328</a>                                                              |
| 38.01               | <b>Memory full.</b>           | For more information, see <a href="#">Insufficient memory on page 330</a> .                                                         |
| 39.01, 39.02        | Page is too complex.          | For more information, see <a href="#">Insufficient memory on page 330</a> .                                                         |
| 50.00               | <b>PPDS font error.</b>       | Install the PPDS font indicated in the print job, and then select <b>Dismiss</b> to let the printer search for the substitute font. |

| Error codes | Error message                                        | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 52.00       | Not enough free space in flash memory for resources. | <p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select <b>Dismiss</b> to clear the message and continue printing.</li> <li>• Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in the flash memory.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note:</b> Downloaded fonts and macros that are not previously stored in the flash memory are deleted.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Install a storage drive.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 71.01       | <b>No fax station name.</b>                          | <p>Set up fax name and fax number.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the control panel, navigate to <b>Settings › Fax › Fax Setup › General Fax Settings</b>.</li> <li>2. Enter the fax name and fax number.</li> </ol> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Setting up the fax function using analog fax on page 46</a>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 71.02       | <b>No fax station number.</b>                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 71.03       | <b>Fax disabled.</b>                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 71.04       | <b>Line connected in wrong jack.</b>                 | For more information, see <a href="#">Fax connection error</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 71.06       | <b>HTTPS Fax Server error.</b>                       | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Perform a Power-On-Reset on the printer. Do the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord.</li> <li>b. Wait 30 seconds to discharge electrical energy and clear buffered data.</li> <li>c. Plug the power cord back in, and then turn on the printer.</li> <li>d. Allow the printer to fully initialize before sending a print job.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Make sure that your printer is connected to a stable network and has access to the internet.</li> <li>3. Verify that your network proxy and firewall rules allow outgoing traffic to the etherFAX API.</li> <li>4. Make sure that etherFAX is properly set up. For more information, see <a href="#">Setting up the fax function using etherFAX on page 47</a>.</li> </ol> |
| 71.07       | <b>HTTPS Fax Server error.</b>                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

| Error codes | Error message                          | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 71.13       | <b>Memory full. Cannot send faxes.</b> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clear all print jobs from the printer queue to reset the device and free memory. For more information, see <a href="#">Canceling a print job on page 96</a>.</li> <li>2. Resend the fax job and reduce fax job complexity. Do the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Fax fewer pages at a time.</li> <li>b. Change the fax resolution to <b>Standard</b>. For more information, see .</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. If you frequently send large or complex print or scan jobs, installing an intelligent storage drive (ISD) can improve job handling and reduce memory-related errors. For more information, see <a href="#">Installing the intelligent storage drive</a>.</li> </ol> <p> <b>Note:</b> The ISD is only supported in certain printer models.</p> |
| 71.40       | <b>Printer's time is incorrect.</b>    | <p>Set printer date and time.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. From the control panel, navigate to <b>Settings › Device › Preferences › Country/Region</b>.</li> <li>2. Select your country or region.</li> <li>3. From the control panel, navigate to <b>Settings › Device › Preferences › Date and Time › Configure › Manually Set Date and Time</b>.</li> <li>4. Set the date and time.</li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 72.01       | <b>Email SMTP server not set up.</b>   | For more information, see <a href="#">SMTP server error on page 310</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 72.02       | <b>Web Link not set up.</b>            | For more information, see <a href="#">SMTP server error on page 310</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

## SUPPLY ERROR CODES

| Error codes                       | Error message               | Solution                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 29.40, 29.41, 29.42, 29.43, 29.49 | Remove cartridge packaging. | For more information, see <a href="#">Print cartridge smart chip error on page 311</a> . |

| Error codes                                                                                                                                         | Error message                              | Solution                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 31.40A, 31.40A-H,<br>31.40B-H, 31.41A,<br>31.41A-H, 31.41B-H,<br>31.42A, 31.42A-H,<br>31.42B-H, 31.43A,<br>31.43A-H, 31.43B-H                       | [Color] cartridge problem.                 | For more information, see <a href="#">Print cartridge smart chip error on page 311</a> .            |
| 32.40B, 32.40C,<br>32.40D, 32.40F,<br>32.41B, 32.41C,<br>32.41D, 32.41F,<br>32.42B, 32.42C,<br>32.42D, 32.42F,<br>32.43B, 32.43C,<br>32.43D, 32.43F | [Color] cartridge problem.                 | For more information, see <a href="#">Unsupported print cartridge error on page 312</a> .           |
| 32.40A, 32.40E,<br>32.41A, 32.41E,<br>32.42A, 32.42E,<br>32.43A, 32.43E                                                                             | Unauthorized [color] cartridge.            | For more information, see <a href="#">Unsupported print cartridge error on page 312</a> .           |
| 32.40J, 32.41J, 32.42J,<br>32.43J                                                                                                                   | [Color] cartridge problem.                 | For more information, see <a href="#">Print cartridge supplies plan mismatch</a> .                  |
| 33.40, 33.41, 33.42,<br>33.43                                                                                                                       | <b>Refilled regular [color] cartridge.</b> | For more information, see <a href="#">Unsupported print cartridge error on page 312</a> .           |
| 42.yy                                                                                                                                               | [Color] cartridge region mismatch.         | For more information, see <a href="#">Print cartridge and printer region mismatch on page 314</a> . |
| 82.00, 82.02, 82.09                                                                                                                                 | Waste toner bottle nearly full.            | For more information, see <a href="#">Nearly full or full waste toner bottle on page 315</a> .      |
| 82.12, 82.13, 82.19,<br>82.20, 82.22, 82.23,<br>82.29, 82.30, 82.32,<br>82.33, 82.39, 82.40,<br>82.42, 82.49                                        | <b>Replace the waste toner bottle.</b>     |                                                                                                     |
| 88.00, 88.01, 88.02,<br>88.09                                                                                                                       | [Color] cartridge is nearly low.           | For more information, see <a href="#">Low or end-of-life print cartridge on page 317</a> .          |
| 88.10c, 88.13c, 88.19c,<br>88.10k, 88.13k, 88.19k,<br>88.10m, 88.13m,<br>88.19m, 88.10y,<br>88.13y, 88.19y                                          | [Color] cartridge is low.                  |                                                                                                     |
| 88.20c, 88.23c, 88.29c,<br>88.20k, 88.23k, 88.29k,<br>88.20m, 88.23m,<br>88.29m, 88.20y,<br>88.23y, 88.29y                                          | [Color] cartridge is very low.             |                                                                                                     |

| Error codes                                                                                                | Error message                 | Solution                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 88.30c, 88.33c, 88.39c,<br>88.30k, 88.33k, 88.39k,<br>88.30m, 88.33m,<br>88.39m, 88.30y,<br>88.33y, 88.39y | Replace [color]<br>cartridge. | For more information, see <a href="#">Low or end-of-life print cartridge on page 317</a> . |
| 88.40, 88.41, 88.42,<br>88.48                                                                              | Replace [color]<br>cartridge. |                                                                                            |

## PAPER JAM ERROR CODES

| Error codes                       | Error message | Solution                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 200.05                            | Paper jam.    | For more information, see <a href="#">200.05 Paper jam in tray 1 from the manual feeder on page 296</a> .                      |
| 200.06                            | Paper jam.    | For more information, see <a href="#">200.06 Paper jam in the manual feeder on page 295</a> .                                  |
| 200.15, 200.25, 200.35            | Paper jam.    | For more information, see <a href="#">200.x5 Paper jam in tray 1 or paper jam in doors B and E from tray [x] on page 297</a> . |
| 200.16                            | Paper jam.    | For more information, see <a href="#">200.16 Paper jam in tray 1</a> .                                                         |
| 200.23, 200.33                    | Paper jam.    | For more information, see <a href="#">200.x3 Paper jam in the optional tray on page 297</a> .                                  |
| 200.91                            | Paper jam.    | For more information, see <a href="#">200.91 Paper jam in tray 1 on page 297</a> .                                             |
| 202.03                            | Paper jam.    | For more information, see <a href="#">202.03 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder on page 298</a> .                      |
| 202.04                            | Paper jam.    | For more information, see <a href="#">202.04 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder on page 299</a> .                      |
| 202.05                            | Paper jam.    | For more information, see <a href="#">202.05 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder on page 299</a> .                      |
| 202.13, 202.23, 202.33            | Paper jam.    | For more information, see <a href="#">202.x3 Paper jam in door B from tray [x] on page 299</a> .                               |
| 202.14, 202.24,<br>202.25, 202.34 | Paper jam.    | For more information, see <a href="#">202.x4 Paper jam in door B from tray [x] on page 300</a> .                               |
| 202.15, 202.25, 202.35            | Paper jam.    | For more information, see <a href="#">202.x5 Paper jam in door B from tray [x] on page 300</a> .                               |

| Error codes                                                            | Error message                            | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 232.03, 232.13, 232.23, 232.33                                         | Paper jam.                               | For more information, see <a href="#">232.x3 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder or tray [x] on page 301.</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 232.05, 232.15, 232.25, 232.35                                         | Paper jam.                               | For more information, see <a href="#">232.x5 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder or tray [x] on page 302.</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 241.91                                                                 | Paper jam.                               | For more information, see <a href="#">241.91 Paper jam in the manual feeder on page 296.</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 242.25, 242.35                                                         | Paper jam.                               | For more information, see <a href="#">242.x5 Paper jam in doors B and E from tray [x] on page 303.</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 242.33                                                                 | Paper jam.                               | For more information, see <a href="#">242.33 Paper jam in door E from tray 3 on page 303.</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 242.92                                                                 | Paper jam.                               | For more information, see <a href="#">242.91 Paper jam in doors B and E from tray 2 on page 304.</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 243.35                                                                 | Paper jam.                               | For more information, see <a href="#">243.35 Paper jam in door B from tray 3 on page 304.</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 243.91                                                                 | Paper jam.                               | For more information, see <a href="#">243.91 Paper jam in door E from tray 3 on page 305.</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 242.74, 242.75, 242.84, 242.85                                         | Paper loading error.                     | For more information, see <a href="#">Loading trays.</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 243.74, 243.75, 243.84, 243.85                                         | Paper loading error.                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 280.06                                                                 | Reload originals in ADF and restart job. | <p>Try one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scan from the scanner glass.</li> <li>• Scan from the automatic document feeder.</li> <li>• Finish the job without further scanning, and then restart the job.</li> <li>• Cancel the job, and then restart the job.</li> <li>• Make sure that the pages are not stapled, folded, or curled.</li> <li>• Remove all originals, align the pages evenly, and then place them correctly in the ADF tray.</li> </ul> |
| 28X.13K, 28X.93K, 28X.15K, 28X.95K, 680.20K, 680.40K, 281.16K, 281.96K | Replace all originals if restarting job. | <p>Try either of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the job.</li> <li>• Cancel the job.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

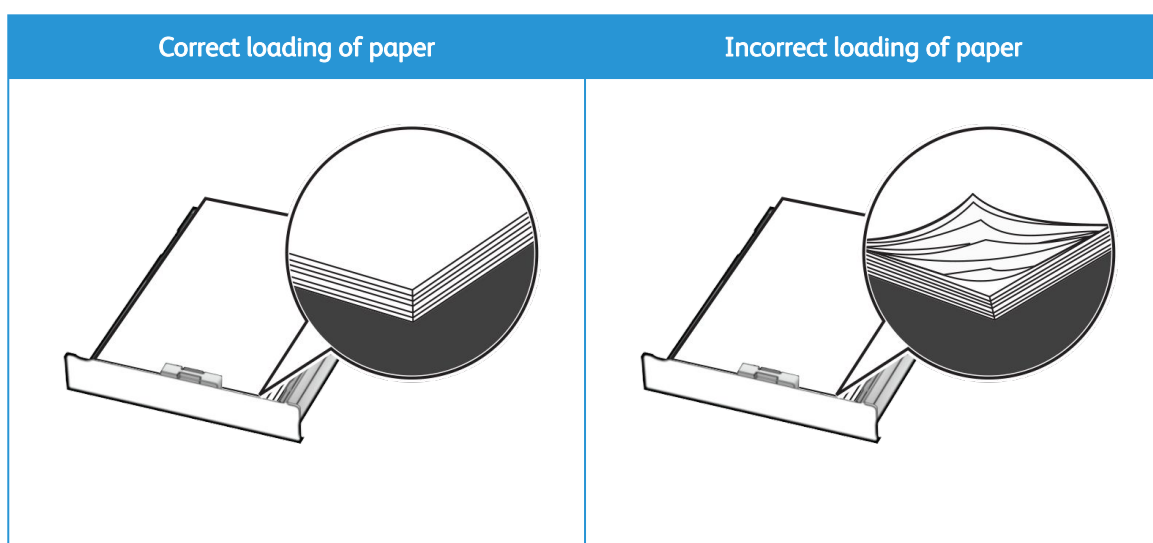
| Error codes                                                   | Error message                                      | Solution                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 28X.13Q, 28X.93Q, 28X.15Q, 28X.95Q, 680.20Q, 281.16Q, 281.96Q | <b>Replace jammed originals if continuing job.</b> | Try one or more of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scan from the scanner glass.</li> <li>• Scan from the automatic document feeder.</li> <li>• Finish the job without further scanning.</li> <li>• Cancel the job.</li> </ul> |
| 280.06                                                        | <b>Scanner jam.</b>                                | For more information, see <a href="#">280.06 Reload originals in ADF on page 306</a> .                                                                                                                                                                |
| 280.11                                                        | <b>Scanner jam.</b>                                | For more information, see <a href="#">280.11 ADF scanner jam on page 307</a> .                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 280.13                                                        | <b>Scanner jam.</b>                                | For more information, see <a href="#">280.13 ADF scanner jam on page 306</a> .                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 280.15                                                        | <b>Scanner jam.</b>                                | For more information, see <a href="#">280.15 ADF scanner jam on page 306</a> .                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 295.01                                                        | <b>Scanner jam.</b>                                | For more information, see <a href="#">Paper jam in the automatic document feeder on page 294</a> .                                                                                                                                                    |
| 680.20, 680.40                                                | <b>Scanner jam.</b>                                | For more information, see <a href="#">Paper jam in the automatic document feeder on page 294</a> .                                                                                                                                                    |

## Paper jams

### AVOIDING JAMS

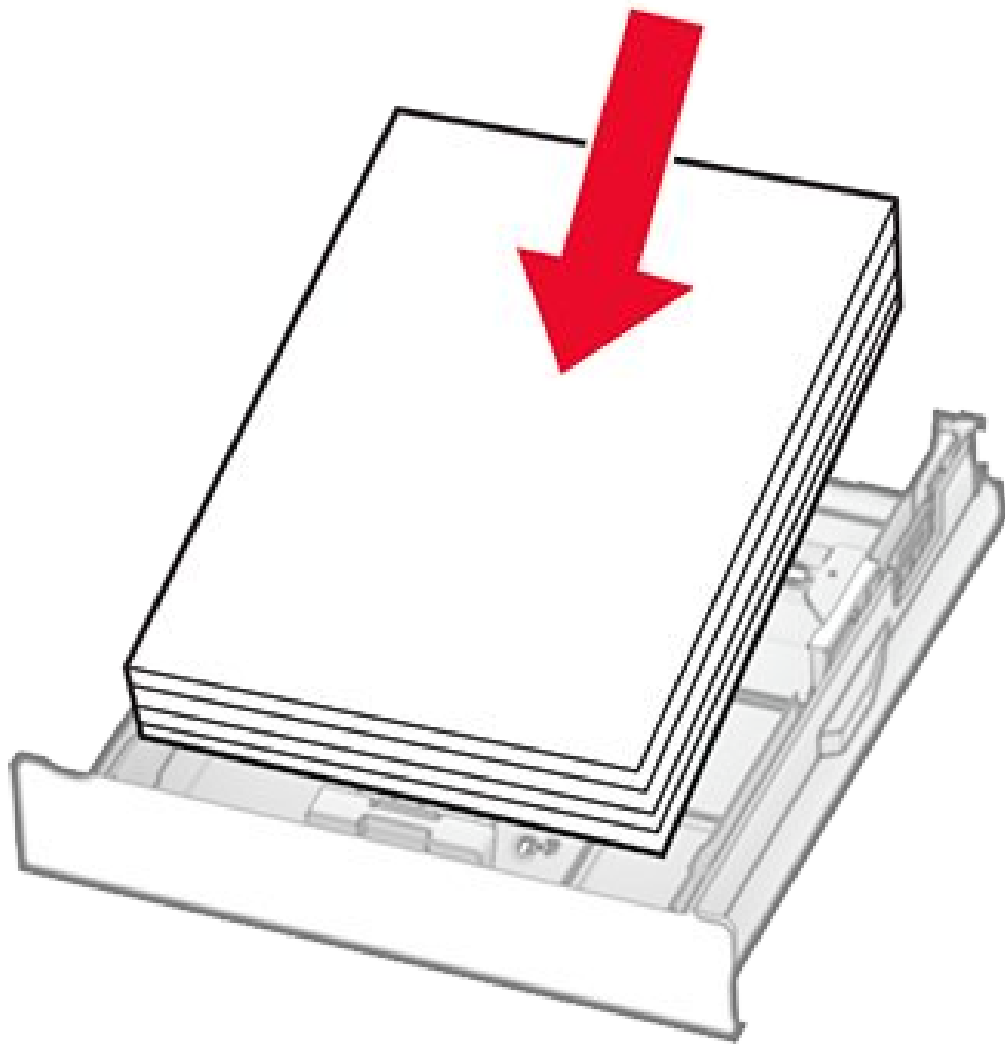
#### Load paper properly

- Make sure that the paper lies flat in the tray.



- Do not load or remove a tray while the printer is printing.
- Do not load too much paper. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line.

- Do not slide paper into the tray. Load paper as shown in the illustration.

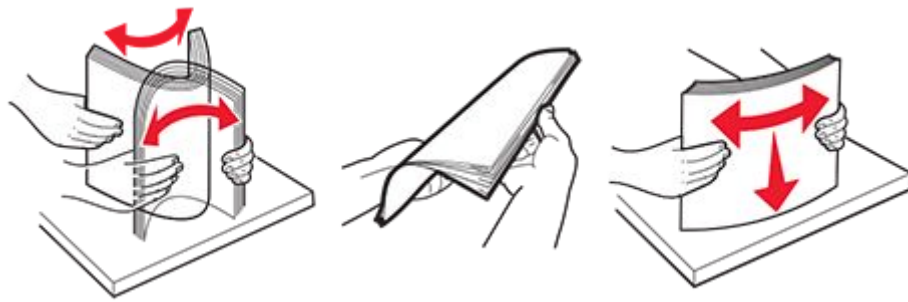


- Make sure that the paper guides are positioned correctly and are not pressing tightly against the paper or envelopes.
- Push the tray firmly into the printer after loading paper.

#### **Use recommended paper**

- Use only recommended paper or specialty paper.
- Do not load paper that is wrinkled, creased, damp, bent, or curled.
- Flex, fan, and align the paper edges before loading.



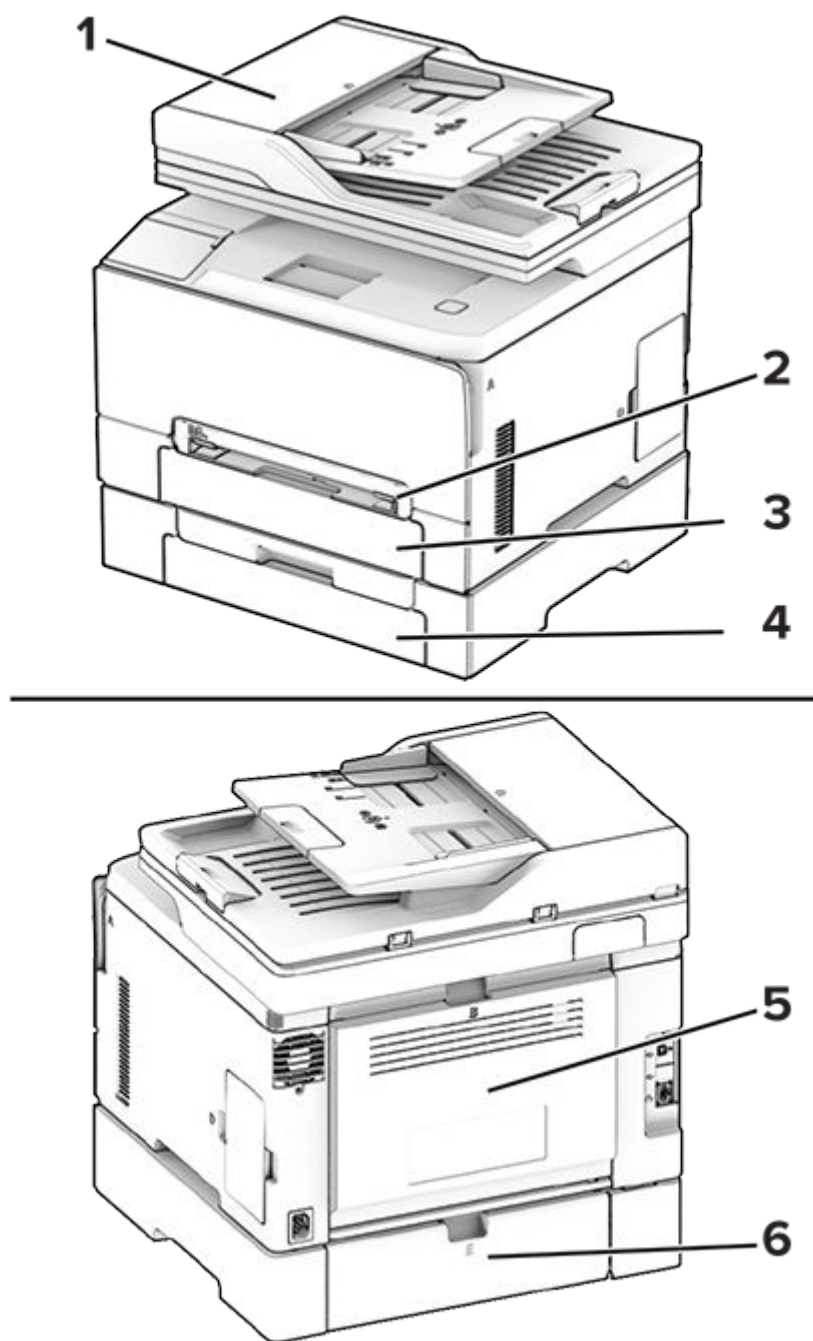


- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, weights, or types in the same tray.
- Make sure that the paper size and type are set correctly on the computer or printer control panel.
- Store paper according to manufacturer recommendations.

## IDENTIFYING JAM LOCATIONS

### Notes

- When **Jam Assist** is set to **On**, the printer flushes blank pages or pages with partial prints after a jammed page has been cleared. Check your printed output for blank pages.
- When **Jam Recovery** is set to **On** or **Auto**, the printer reprints jammed pages.

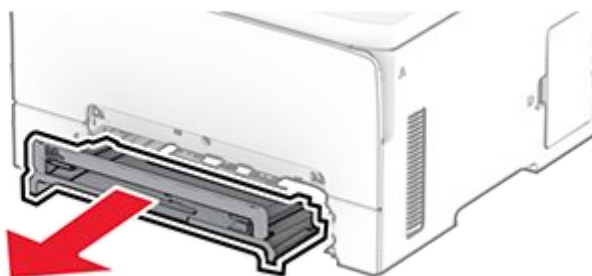
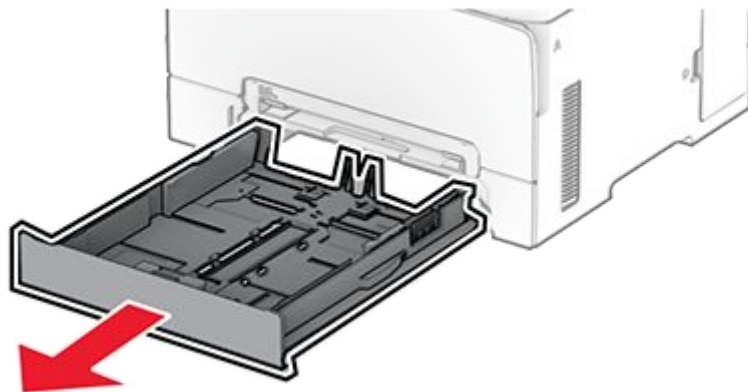


| Jam locations |                           |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| 1             | Automatic document feeder |
| 2             | Manual feeder             |
| 3             | Standard tray             |
| 4             | Optional tray             |
| 5             | Door B                    |
| 6             | Door E                    |

## CLEARING JAMS

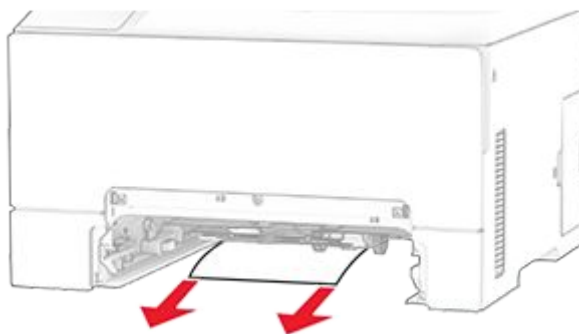
### Paper jam in the standard tray

1. Remove the standard tray and the manual feeder.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



3. Insert the manual feeder and the tray.
4. Open door B.

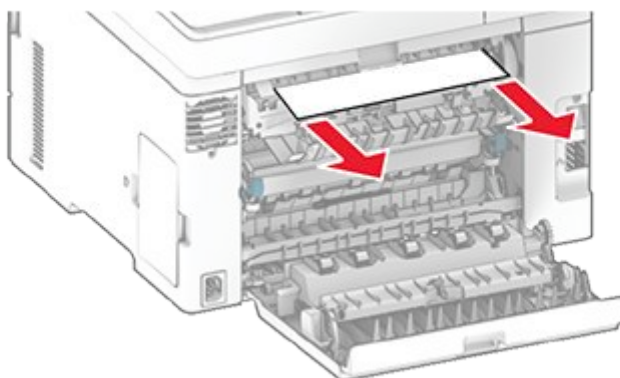
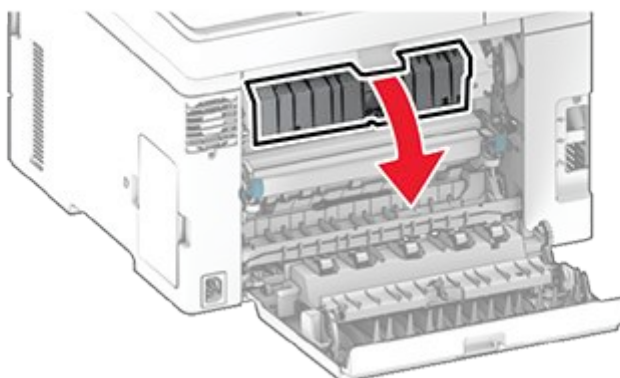


**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

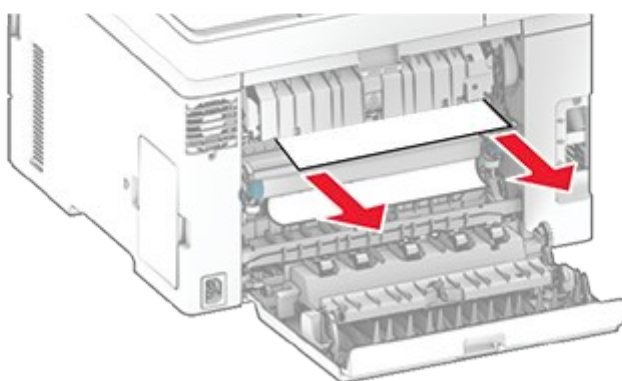
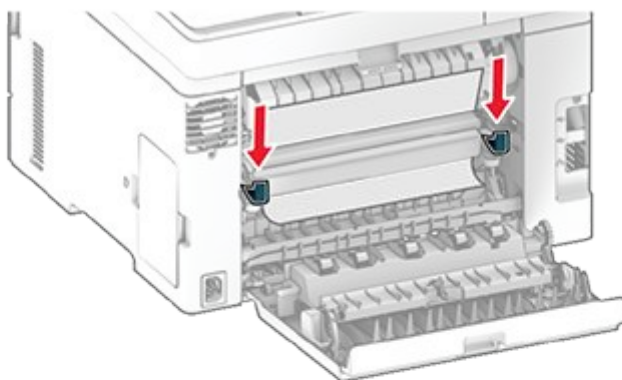
The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



5. Pull down the fuser cover, and then remove the jammed paper from the fuser.



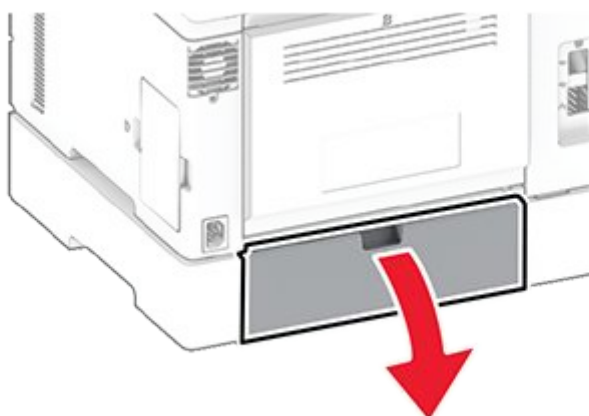
6. Push down the blue latches to release the paper, and then remove the jammed paper.



7. Close door B.

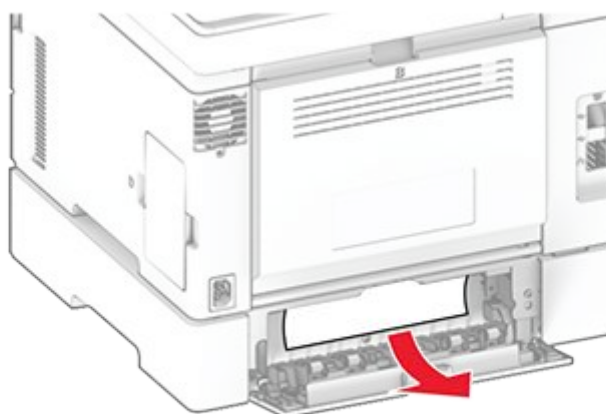
### Paper jam in the optional tray

1. Open door E.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.

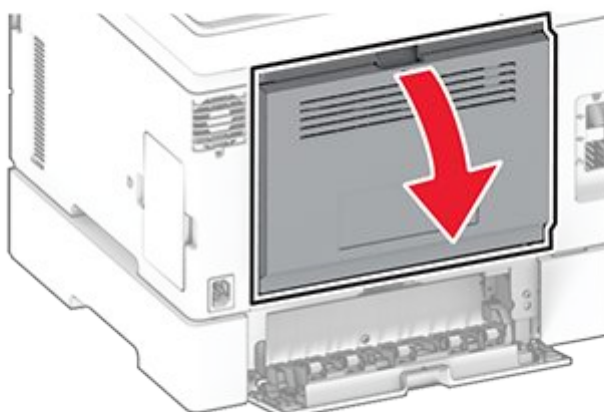


3. Open door B.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

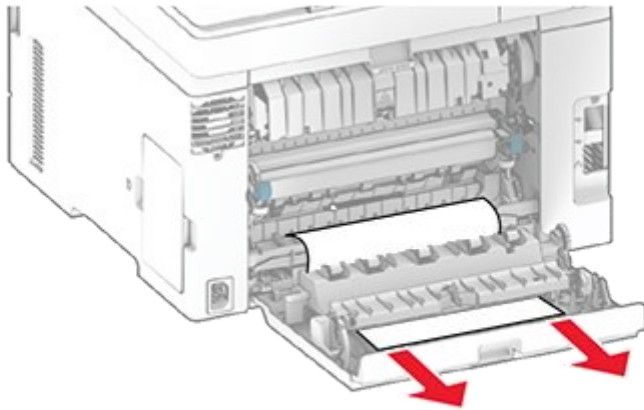
The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



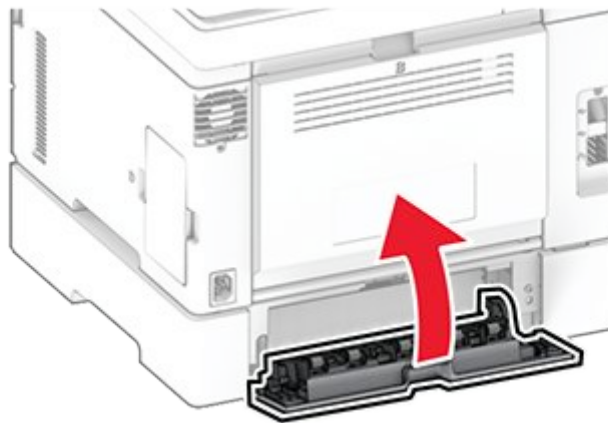
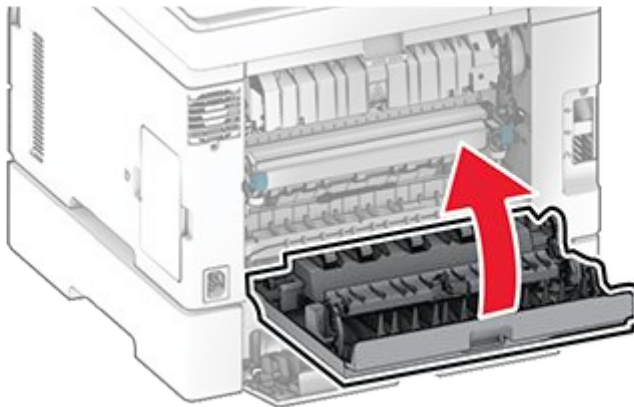
4. Remove the jammed paper.



**Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



5. Close door B, and then close door E.

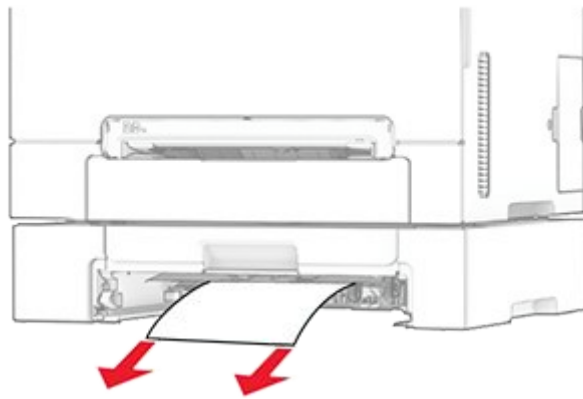


6. Remove the optional tray.



7. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.

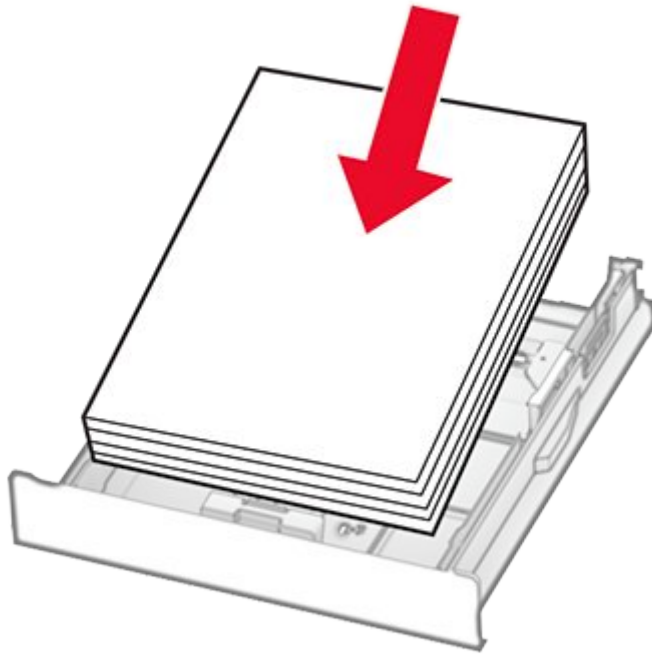


8. Remove the paper stack in the tray.
9. Flex, fan, and align the paper stack before loading.

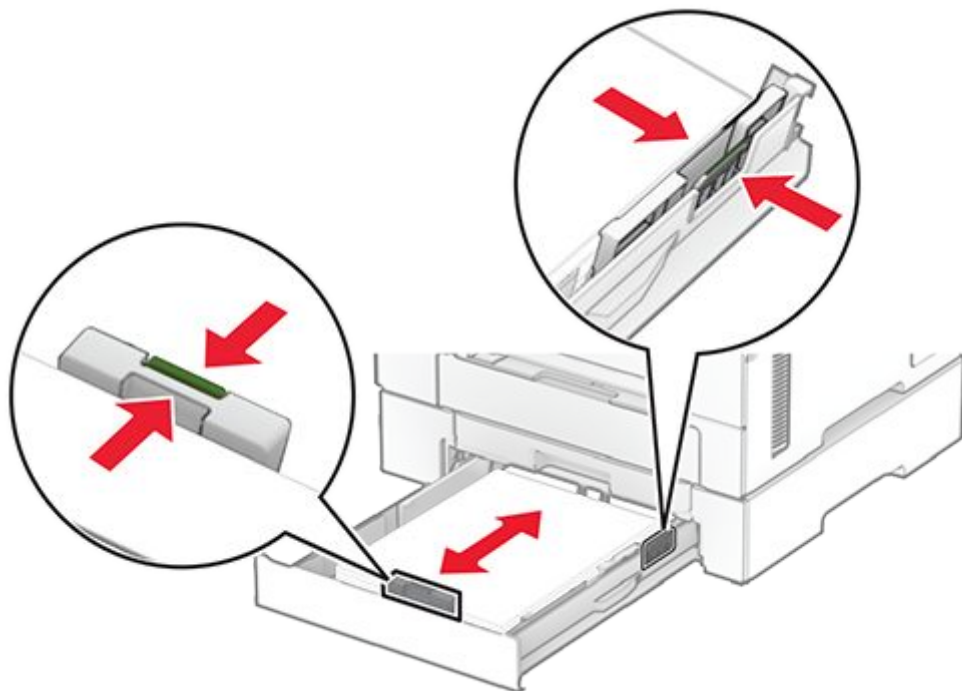


10. Load the paper stack and make sure that the paper sits flat in the tray.





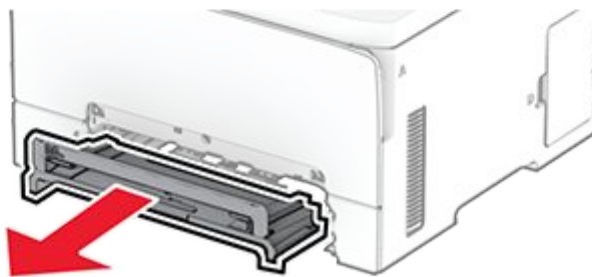
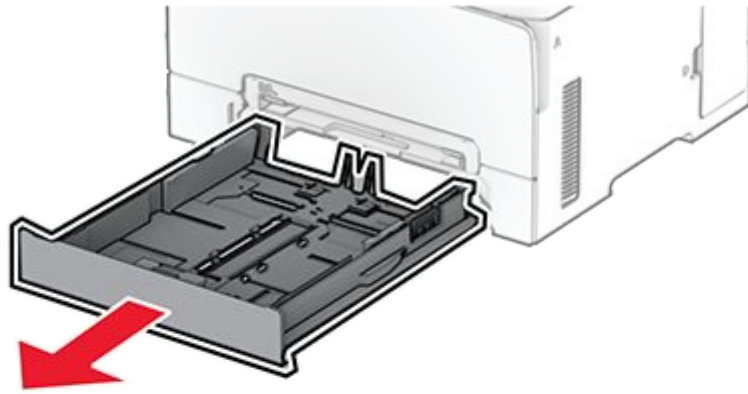
11. Adjust the paper guides.



12. Insert the tray.

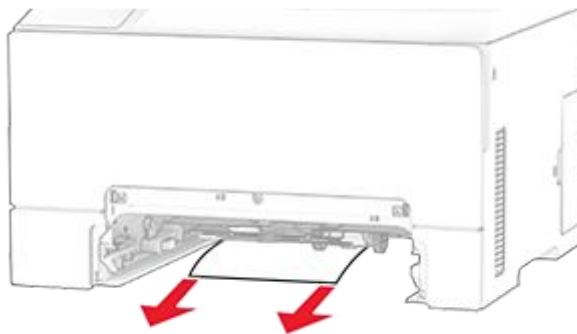
#### **Paper jam in the manual feeder**

1. Remove the standard tray, and then the manual feeder.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.

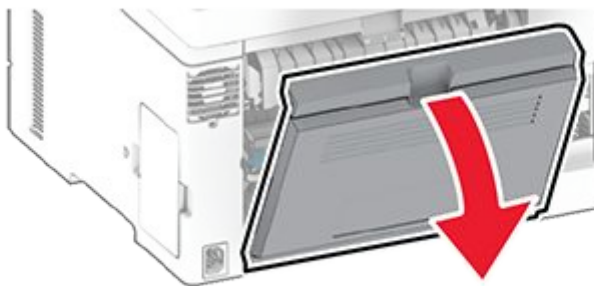


3. Insert the manual feeder, and then the tray.
4. Open door B.



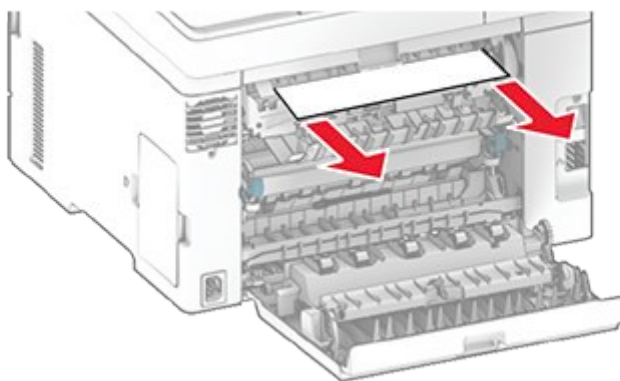
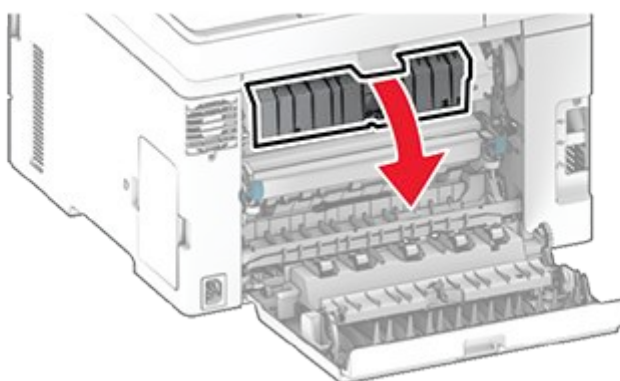
**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



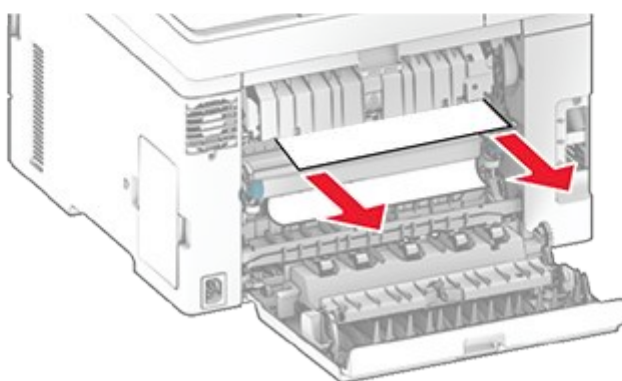
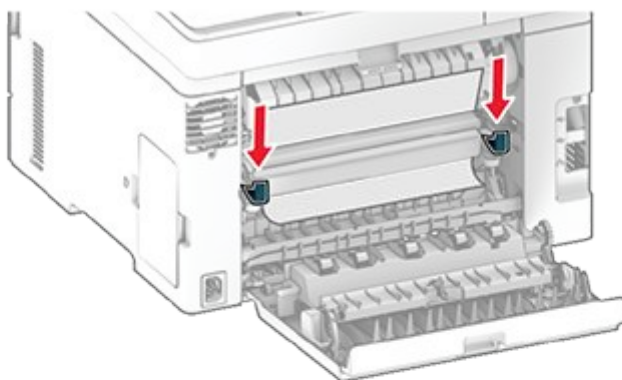
5. Pull down on the fuser cover, and then remove the jammed paper from the fuser.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



6. Push down the blue latches to release the paper, and then remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



7. Close door B.
8. Load only one sheet of paper at a time when using the manual feeder.

 **Notes**

- Do not load the manual feeder until all previous print jobs are complete and the printer has returned to Ready.
- If you load a sheet into the manual feeder, the printer will print that sheet next.



### Paper jam in door B

1. Open door B.

**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



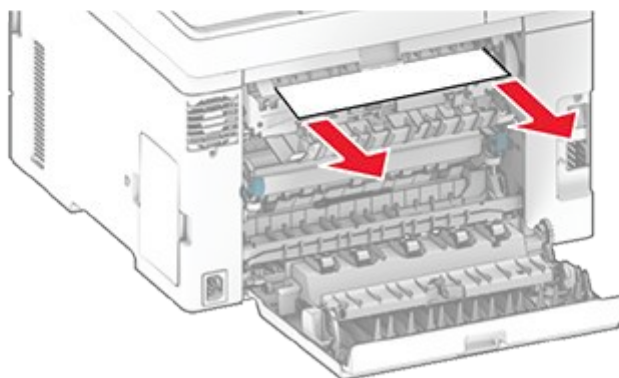
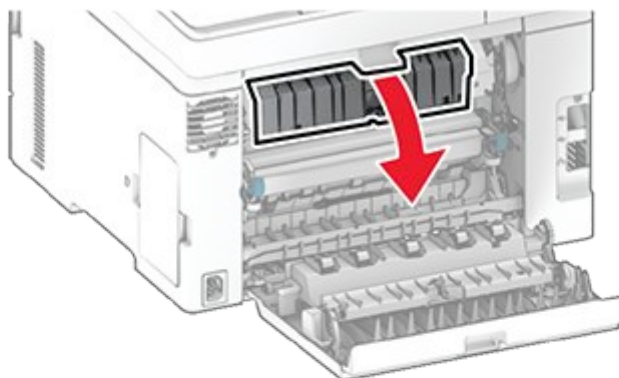
2. Remove the jammed paper from any of the following locations:



**Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.

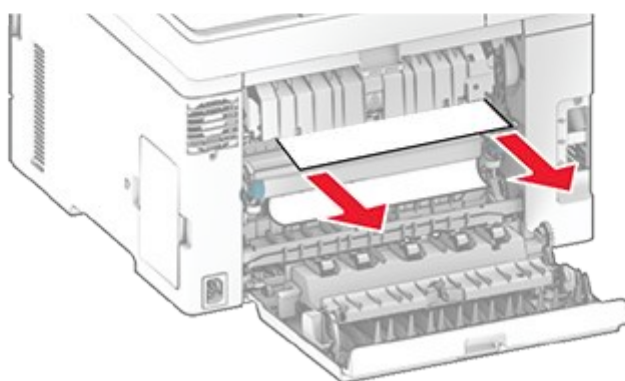
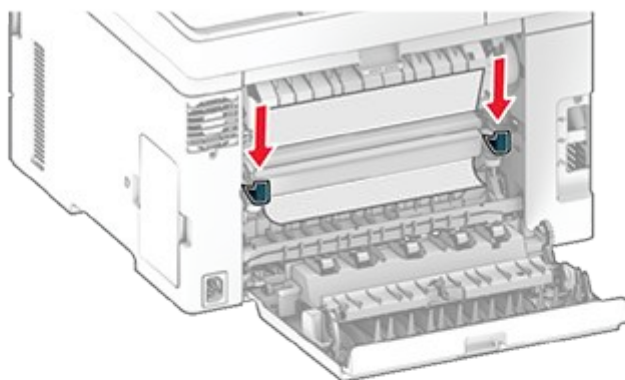
- Fuser area

Pull down the fuser cover, and then remove any jammed paper from the fuser.

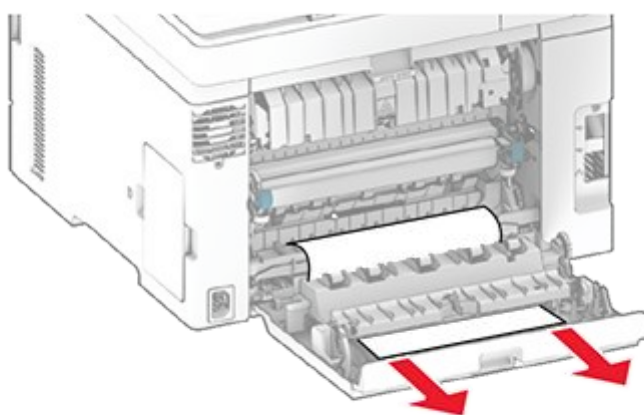


- Below the fuser area

Push down the blue latches to release the paper, and then remove any jammed paper.



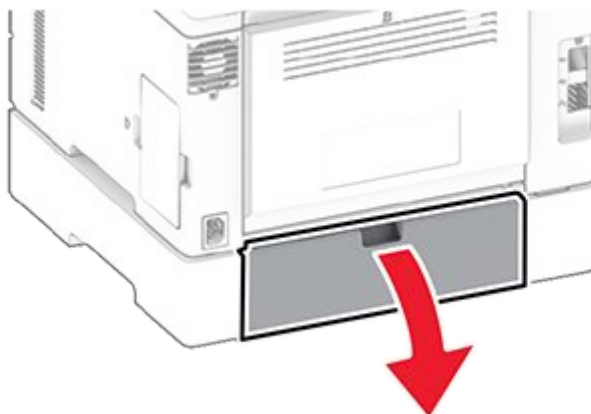
- Duplex unit



3. Close door B.

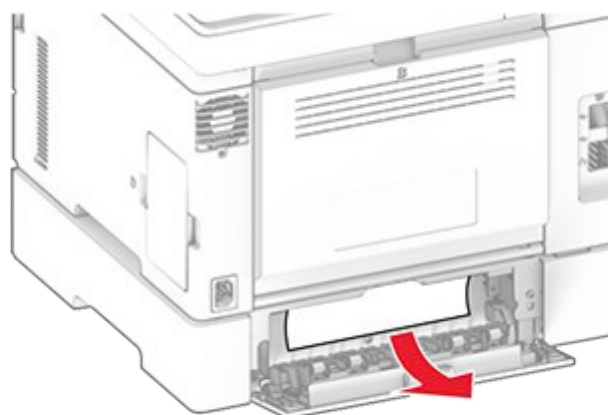
### Paper jam in door E

1. Open door E.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

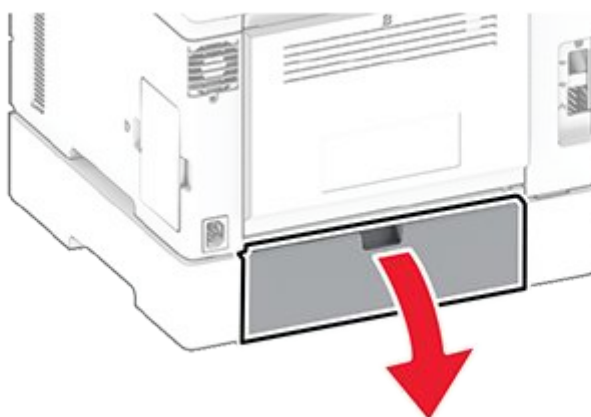
 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



3. Close door E.

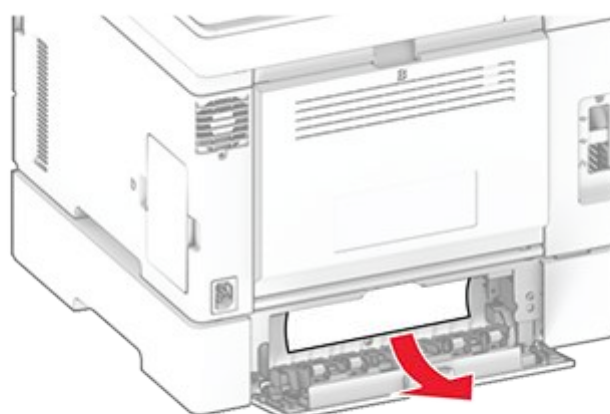
### Paper jam in door E and door B

1. Open door E.



2. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



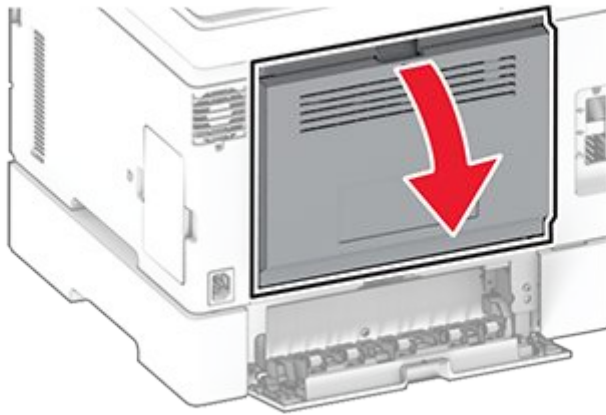
3. Open door B.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE**

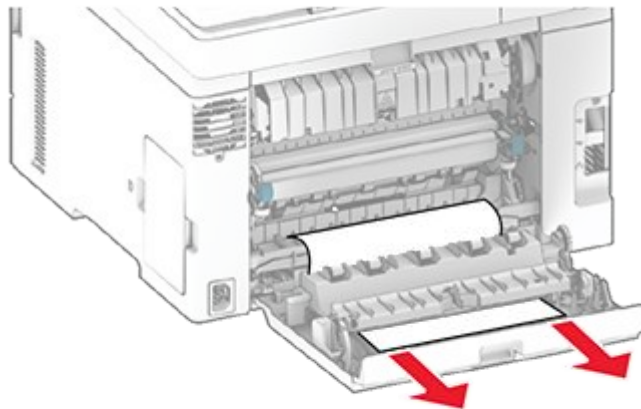
The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching it.



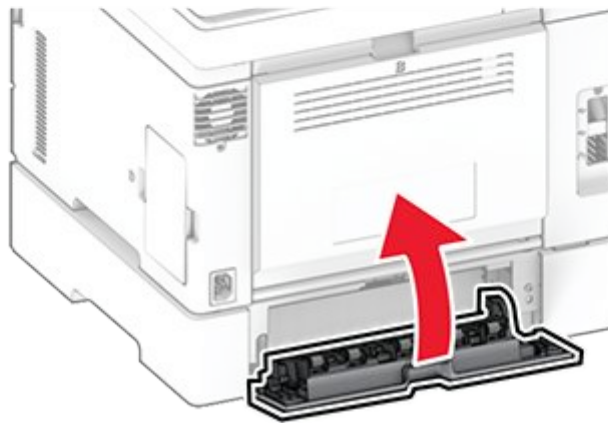
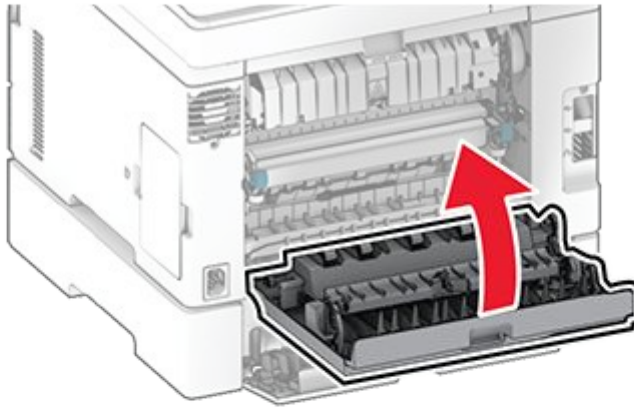


4. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.

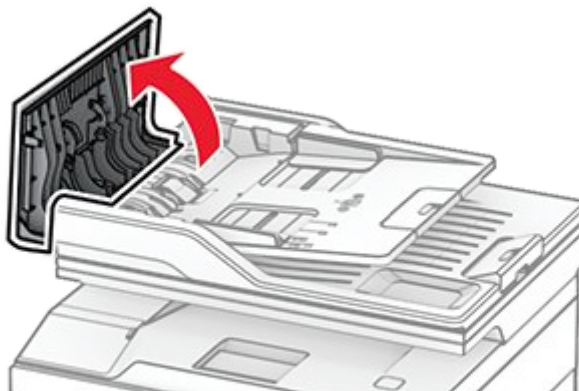


5. Close door B, and then close door E.



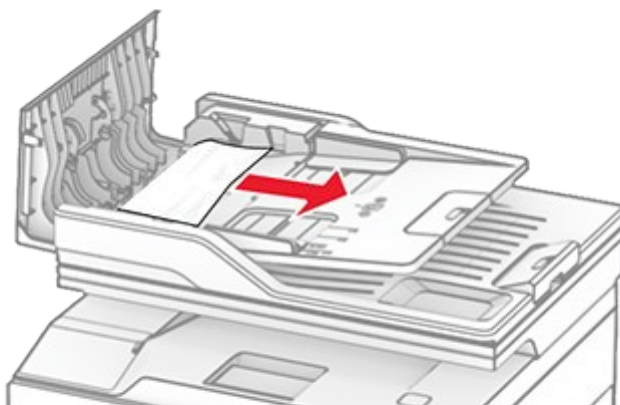
### Paper jam in the automatic document feeder

1. Remove all original documents from the ADF tray.
2. Open the ADF cover.



3. Remove the jammed paper.

 **Note:** Make sure that all paper fragments are removed.



4. Close the ADF cover.

## TROUBLESHOOTING PAPER JAMS

### Paper jam in the manual feeder

#### 200.06 Paper jam in the manual feeder

##### Issue description

Applicable error code: 200.06

##### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and rear door are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B and door E](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Make sure that the manual feeder is not damaged. Inspect for physical damage, misalignment, or broken guides. Make sure that all locking mechanisms are intact. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

## 241.91 Paper jam in the manual feeder

### Issue description

Applicable error code: 241.91

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and rear door are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B and door E](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
5. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

## Paper jam in trays

### 200.05 Paper jam in tray 1 from the manual feeder

### Issue description

Applicable error code: 200.05

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and rear door are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B and door E](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Make sure that the manual feeder is not damaged. Inspect for physical damage, misalignment, or broken guides. Make sure that all locking mechanisms are intact. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).

- The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

## 200.x5 Paper jam in tray 1 or paper jam in doors B and E from tray [x]

### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 200.15
- 200.25
- 200.35

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Paper jam in the standard tray on page 279](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

## 200.91 Paper jam in tray 1

### Issue description

Applicable error code: 200.91

### Troubleshooting step

Make sure that the paper path and rear door are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B and door E](#).

## 200.x3 Paper jam in the optional tray

### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 200.23
- 200.33

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Paper jam in the standard tray on page 279](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the tray pick roller for wear and contamination. Do the following:
  - a. Check for cracks, smooth surfaces, or deformation.
  - b. Check for dust or paper debris. Gently wipe the roller and separator using a damp, soft, lint-free cloth.
5. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

### Paper jam in doors

#### 202.03 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder

##### Issue description

Applicable error code: 202.03

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and rear door are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B and door E](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

## 202.04 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder

### Issue description

Applicable error code: 202.04

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and fuser are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

## 202.05 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder

### Issue description

Applicable error code: 202.05

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and fuser are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

## 202.x3 Paper jam in door B from tray [x]

### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 202.13

- 202.23
- 202.33

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Paper jam in the standard tray on page 279](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

#### 202.x4 Paper jam in door B from tray [x]

##### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 202.14
- 202.24
- 202.34

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Paper jam in the standard tray on page 279](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

#### 202.x5 Paper jam in door B from tray [x]

##### Issue description

Applicable error codes:



- 202.15
- 202.25
- 202.35

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Paper jam in the standard tray on page 279](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
4. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

#### 202.91 Paper jam in door B

##### Issue description

Applicable error code: 202.91

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and fuser are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in door B](#).

#### 232.x3 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder or tray [x]

##### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 232.03
- 232.13
- 232.23
- 232.33

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Paper jam in the standard tray on page 279](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the tray pick roller for wear and contamination. Do the following:
  - a. Check for cracks, smooth surfaces, or deformation.
  - b. Check for dust or paper debris. Gently wipe the roller and separator using a damp, soft, lint-free cloth.
5. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

### 232.x5 Paper jam in door B from the manual feeder or tray [x]

#### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 232.05
- 232.15
- 232.25
- 232.35

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Paper jam in the standard tray on page 279](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).

- The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

### 242.33 Paper jam in door E from tray 3

#### Issue description

Applicable error code: 242.33

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and rear door are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#). Open door E on tray 2, remove tray 3, and then remove and reload paper.
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
5. Remove paper from the tray or feeder and inspect for damage or defects. Fan the paper, flip it, and then reload. If the paper is damp, damaged, wavy, or curled, then replace it.

### 242.x5 Paper jam in doors B and E from tray [x]

#### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 242.25
- 242.35

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Paper jam in the standard tray on page 279](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).

2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
5. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

### 242.91 Paper jam in doors B and E from tray 2

#### Issue description

Applicable error code: 242.91

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Paper jam in the standard tray on page 279](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
5. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

### 243.35 Paper jam in door B from tray 3

#### Issue description

Applicable error code: 243.35

## Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Paper jam in the standard tray on page 279](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
5. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

### 243.91 Paper jam in door E from tray 3

#### Issue description

Applicable error code: 243.91

#### Troubleshooting

1. Make sure that the paper path and trays are clear of debris and free from obstructions. For more information, see [Paper jam in the standard tray on page 279](#) and [Clearing paper jam in the optional tray](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).
4. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
5. Remove paper from the tray, and then fan, flip, and reload it. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

## Paper jam in the ADF

### 280.06 Reload originals in ADF

#### Issue description

Applicable error code: 280.06

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the original document is loaded correctly in the ADF tray, and then adjust the guides to fit the document size.
2. Make sure that the document is loaded properly. Do the following:
  - a. Make sure that the ADF cover is completely closed.
  - b. Make sure that the document is fully inserted in the ADF tray.

### 280.13 ADF scanner jam

#### Issue description

Applicable error code: 280.13

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and ADF are clear of debris and free from obstructions. Verify that the original document loaded into the ADF has no staples, clips, and tears.  
 **Note:** If the ADF jams again, record the error code that appears and follow the troubleshooting steps for that specific code.
2. Make sure that the original document is loaded correctly in the ADF tray, and then adjust the guides to fit the document size.
3. Make sure that the paper size, type, and weight of the loaded original documents are supported by the ADF. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
4. Remove the original document from the ADF tray, make sure it is flat and unstapled, and then reload it. Do not overfill the ADF tray.

### 280.15 ADF scanner jam

#### Issue description

Applicable error code: 280.15

## Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and ADF are clear of debris and free from obstructions. Verify that the original document loaded into the ADF has no staples, clips, and tears.



**Note:** If the ADF jams again, record the error code that appears and follow the troubleshooting steps for that specific code.

2. Make sure that the original document is loaded correctly in the ADF tray, and then adjust the guides to fit the document size.
3. Make sure that the paper size, type, and weight of the loaded original documents are supported by the ADF. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
4. Remove the original document from the ADF tray, make sure it is flat and unstapled, and then reload it. Do not overfill the ADF tray.

## 280.11 ADF scanner jam

### Issue description

Applicable error code: 280.11

### Troubleshooting step

Make sure that the paper path and ADF are clear of debris and free from obstructions. Verify that the original document loaded into the ADF has no staples, clips, and tears.



**Note:** If the ADF jams again, record the error code that appears and follow the troubleshooting steps for that specific code.

## 295.01 ADF scanner jam

### Issue description

Applicable error code: 295.01

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the paper path and ADF are clear of debris and free from obstructions. Verify that the original document loaded into the ADF has no staples, clips, and tears.



**Note:** If the ADF jams again, record the error code that appears and follow the troubleshooting steps for that specific code.

2. Make sure that the original document is loaded correctly in the ADF tray, and then adjust the guides to fit the document size.
3. Make sure that the paper size, type, and weight of the loaded original documents are supported by the ADF. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).

4. Remove the original document from the ADF tray, make sure it is flat and unstapled, and then reload it. Do not overfill the ADF tray.

## Printing problems

### PRINT JOBS DO NOT PRINT

Try one or more of the following:

- From the document that you are trying to print, open the Printing Preferences or Print dialog, and then check if the correct printer is selected.
- Check if the printer is on, and then resolve any error messages that appear on the display.
- Check if the ports are working and if the cables are securely connected to the computer and the printer. For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.
- Turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
- Remove, and then reinstall the print driver.

### CONFIDENTIAL AND OTHER HELD DOCUMENTS DO NOT PRINT

Try one or more of the following:

- From the control panel, check if the documents appear in the **Held Jobs** list.  
 **Note:** If the documents are not listed, then print the documents using the Print and Hold options.
- Resolve possible formatting errors or invalid data in the print job.
  - Delete the print job, and then send it again.
  - For PDF files, generate a new file, and then print the document.
- If you are printing from the Internet, then the printer may be reading the multiple job titles as duplicates.
  - For Windows users, make sure to select **Keep duplicate documents** in the Printing Preferences or Print dialog.
  - For Macintosh users, name each job differently.
- Delete some held jobs to free up printer memory.
- Install more printer memory.

### JOB PRINTS FROM THE WRONG TRAY OR ON THE WRONG PAPER

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that you are printing on the correct paper.
- Depending on your operating system, specify the paper size and paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog. Make sure that the settings match the paper loaded.



**Note:** You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. Navigate to **Settings > Paper > Tray Configuration > Paper Size/Type**.

- Check if the trays are linked. For more information, see [Linking trays on page 66](#).



## Connectivity problems

### CANNOT OPEN EMBEDDED WEB SERVER

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure the printer is on.
- Make sure the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
- Make sure the printer IP address is correct.



**Note:** You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.

- Make sure that you installed a supported browser.
  - Microsoft Edge
  - Safari version 6 or later
  - Google Chrome™ version 32 or later
  - Mozilla Firefox version 24 or later
- Check if the network connection is working.



**Note:** If the connection is not working, then contact your administrator.

- Check if the web proxy servers are disabled.



**Note:** If the servers are disabled, then contact your administrator.

### CANNOT CONNECT THE PRINTER TO THE WI-FI NETWORK

Try one or more of the following:

- From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Network Overview** › **Active Adapter**, and then select **Auto**.
- Make sure the printer is connected to the correct Wi-Fi network. For more information, see [Connecting the printer to a Wi-Fi network on page 82](#).



**Note:** Some routers may share the default Wi-Fi name.

- Make sure that you entered the correct network password.



**Note:** Take note of the spaces, numbers, and capitalization in the password.

- Make sure the correct wireless security mode is selected. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **Wireless** › **Wireless Security Mode**.

### ENABLING THE USB PORT

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Network/Ports** › **USB**.
2. Select **Enable USB Port**.

## SMTP SERVER ERROR

### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 72.10
- 72.20

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Disable the intervention message if you do not plan to use the Email feature.
  - a. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Email** > **Email Setup**.
  - b. Set **Disable "SMTP server not set up" error** to **On**.
2. Enter the **Primary SMTP Gateway** in the **Email Setup** menu. For more information, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 34](#).

## UNABLE TO READ FLASH DRIVE

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the printer is not busy processing multiple jobs.
- Make sure that the flash drive is inserted into the front USB port.



**Note:** The flash drive does not work when inserted into the rear USB port.

- Make sure that the flash drive is supported. For more information, see [Supported flash drives and file types on page 25](#).
- Remove, and then insert the flash drive.

## Hardware options problems

### CANNOT DETECT A HARDWARE OPTION

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
- Make sure that the hardware option is properly installed.

### CANNOT DETECT INTERNAL OPTION

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
- Print the **Menu Settings Page** report, and then check if the internal option appears in the Installed Features list. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Reports** > **Menu Settings Page**.
- Check if the internal option is installed properly into the controller board.
  1. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet.
  2. Make sure that the internal option is installed into the appropriate connector on the controller board.

3. Connect the power cord to the electrical outlet, and then turn on the printer.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY**

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

## NOT ENOUGH FREE SPACE IN FLASH MEMORY FOR RESOURCES

Try one or more of the following:

- Select **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data that are stored in the flash memory.



**Note:** Downloaded fonts and macros that are not previously stored in the flash memory are deleted.

- Install a storage drive.

## Issues with supplies

### PRINT CARTRIDGE SMART CHIP ERROR

#### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 29.40
- 29.41
- 29.42
- 29.43
- 29.49
- 31.40
- 31.41
- 31.42
- 31.43

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Remove all print cartridges. Make sure all packing materials, such as plastic covers, protective tape, and foam inserts, are fully removed. For more information, see [Setting up the printer](#).
2. Make sure that the print cartridge contacts are not damaged. Do the following:
  - a. Verify the print cartridge is not damaged and free of leaks.
  - b. Confirm the print cartridge is supported and properly installed.
  - c. Make sure that the print cartridge gold contacts are not contaminated.

For more information, see [Cleaning the print cartridge contacts](#).

3. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.



#### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

## UNSUPPORTED PRINT CARTRIDGE ERROR

### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

|                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 32.40A</li><li>• 32.40B</li><li>• 32.40C</li><li>• 32.40E</li><li>• 32.41A</li><li>• 32.41B</li><li>• 32.41C</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 32.41E</li><li>• 32.42A</li><li>• 32.42B</li><li>• 32.42C</li><li>• 32.42E</li><li>• 32.43A</li><li>• 32.43B</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 32.43C</li><li>• 32.43E</li><li>• 33.40</li><li>• 33.41</li><li>• 33.42</li><li>• 33.43</li></ul> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the print cartridge contacts are not damaged. Do the following:
  - a. Verify the print cartridge is not damaged and free of leaks.
  - b. Confirm the print cartridge is supported and properly installed.
  - c. Make sure that the print cartridge gold contacts are not contaminated.

For more information, see [Cleaning the print cartridge contacts](#).

2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.



#### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

3. When installing a genuine aftermarket supply for the first time, do the following:
  - a. Make sure that the correct, supported aftermarket print cartridge is installed.
  - b. When a supply error message appears, make sure that the latest firmware version available for your printer is installed.

## PRINT CARTRIDGE SUPPLIES PLAN MISMATCH

### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 32.40J
- 32.41J
- 32.42J
- 32.43J

1. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.



#### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

2. Make sure that the print cartridge contacts are not damaged. Do the following:
  - a. Verify the print cartridge is not damaged and free of leaks.
  - b. Confirm the print cartridge is supported and properly installed.
  - c. Make sure that the print cartridge gold contacts are not contaminated.

For more information, see [Cleaning the print cartridge contacts](#).
3. When installing a genuine aftermarket supply for the first time, do the following:
  - a. Make sure that the correct, supported aftermarket print cartridge is installed.
  - b. When a supply error message appears, make sure that the latest firmware version available for your printer is installed.
4. The printer supplies plan may not match the print cartridge used. Do the following:
  - If you do not have a plan conversion code, then contact [customer support](#).
  - If you have a conversion code from customer support, follow the instructions.



#### Notes

- Make sure that there are no pending jobs in the printer job queue. If an invalid code is entered three times, then toner conversion feature will be locked for 24 hours before you can try again.
- You may need printer admin access.
- **Using the control panel**
  - a. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Supplies Plan** › **Plan Conversion**.
  - b. Select **Conversion Code**, enter the six-digit conversion code that was provided, and then select **OK**.
  - c. Select **Convert Plan**.
  - d. Select **OK** when the **Plan successfully converted** message appears.
- **Using the Embedded Web Server (EWS)**

- a. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



#### Notes

- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
  - Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.
- b. Click **Settings** › **Supplies Plan** › **Plan Conversion**.
  - c. Click **Conversion Code**, enter the six-digit conversion code that was provided, and then click **OK**.
  - d. Click **Convert Plan**.
  - e. Click **OK** when the **Plan successfully converted** message appears.

## PRINT CARTRIDGE AND PRINTER REGION MISMATCH

### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

|         |         |          |
|---------|---------|----------|
| • 42.01 | • 42.30 | • 42.59  |
| • 42.02 | • 42.31 | • 42.60  |
| • 42.03 | • 42.32 | • 42.60K |
| • 42.04 | • 42.34 | • 42.61  |
| • 42.05 | • 42.35 | • 42.61K |
| • 42.09 | • 42.39 | • 42.62  |
| • 42.10 | • 42.40 | • 42.62K |
| • 42.12 | • 42.41 | • 42.63  |
| • 42.13 | • 42.42 | • 42.63K |
| • 42.14 | • 42.43 | • 42.64  |
| • 42.15 | • 42.45 | • 42.64K |
| • 42.19 | • 42.49 | • 42.90  |
| • 42.20 | • 42.50 | • 42.91  |
| • 42.21 | • 42.51 | • 42.92  |
| • 42.23 | • 42.52 | • 42.93  |
| • 42.24 | • 42.53 | • 42.94  |
| • 42.25 | • 42.54 | • 42.95  |
| • 42.29 |         |          |

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the print cartridge region matches the printer region, or use a worldwide print cartridge. For more information, see [Replace cartridge, printer region mismatch](#).

2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.



#### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

## NEARLY FULL OR FULL WASTE TONER BOTTLE

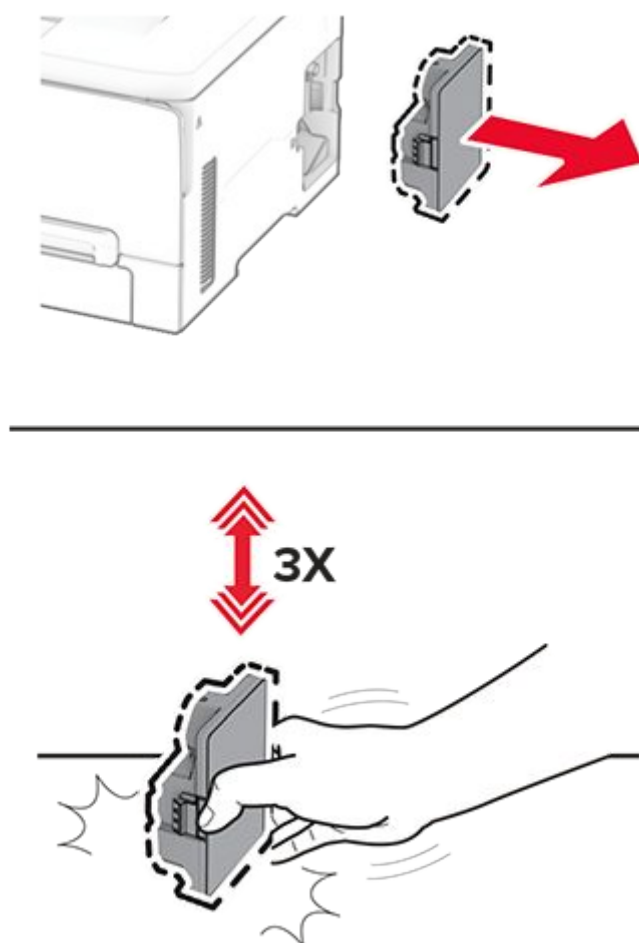
### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 82.00
- 82.02
- 82.09
- 82.12
- 82.13
- 82.19
- 82.20
- 82.22
- 82.23
- 82.29
- 82.30
- 82.32
- 82.33
- 82.39
- 82.40
- 82.42
- 82.49

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Make sure that the waste toner settles properly in the bottle and is not full. Do the following:
  - a. Remove the waste toner bottle.
  - b. Check if the waste toner bottle is full. If the toner level reaches the sensor detection area, then the bottle is full.
  - c. Gently tap the bottle upright on a table.



 **Note:** The bottle may contain excess toner that could spill. Place paper under the bottle before performing this step.

2. Check if the waste toner bottle is full. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Device** > **Notifications** > **Show Supply Estimates**. If the waste toner bottle is full, replace it. For more information, see [Replacing the waste toner bottle](#).
3. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox waste toner bottle. If the printer is using third-party supplies, then contact your supplier.

 **Warning—Potential Damage**

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

4. If the message appears again after installing genuine, supported supplies, perform a Power-On Reset. Do the following:
  - a. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord.
  - b. Wait 30 seconds to discharge electrical energy and clear buffered data.
  - c. Plug the power cord back in, and then turn on the printer.
  - d. Allow the printer to fully initialize before sending a print job.



## LOW OR END-OF-LIFE PRINT CARTRIDGE

### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

|          |          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| • 84.03C | • 88.08K | • 88.13Y | • 88.22M | • 88.31C | • 88.40K |
| • 84.03K | • 88.09C | • 88.13K | • 88.22Y | • 88.31M | • 88.41C |
| • 84.13C | • 88.09M | • 88.18C | • 88.22K | • 88.31Y | • 88.41M |
| • 84.13K | • 88.09Y | • 88.18M | • 88.23C | • 88.31K | • 88.41Y |
| • 88.00C | • 88.09K | • 88.18Y | • 88.23M | • 88.32C | • 88.41K |
| • 88.00M | • 88.10C | • 88.18K | • 88.23Y | • 88.32M | • 88.42C |
| • 88.00Y | • 88.10M | • 88.19C | • 88.23K | • 88.32Y | • 88.42M |
| • 88.00K | • 88.10Y | • 88.19M | • 88.28C | • 88.32K | • 88.42Y |
| • 88.01C | • 88.10K | • 88.19Y | • 88.28M | • 88.33C | • 88.42K |
| • 88.01M | • 88.11C | • 88.19K | • 88.28Y | • 88.33M | • 88.43C |
| • 88.01Y | • 88.11M | • 88.20C | • 88.28K | • 88.33Y | • 88.43M |
| • 88.01K | • 88.11Y | • 88.20M | • 88.29C | • 88.33K | • 88.43Y |
| • 88.02C | • 88.11K | • 88.20Y | • 88.29M | • 88.38C | • 88.43K |
| • 88.02M | • 88.12C | • 88.20K | • 88.29Y | • 88.38M | • 88.48C |
| • 88.02Y | • 88.12M | • 88.21C | • 88.29K | • 88.38Y | • 88.48M |
| • 88.02K | • 88.12Y | • 88.21M | • 88.30C | • 88.38K | • 88.48Y |
| • 88.08C | • 88.12K | • 88.21Y | • 88.30M | • 88.40C | • 88.48K |
| • 88.08M | • 88.13C | • 88.21K | • 88.30Y | • 88.40M |          |
| • 88.08Y | • 88.13M | • 88.22C | • 88.30K | • 88.40Y |          |

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Check the remaining life of the print cartridge. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Device > Notifications > Show Supply Estimates**. Replace any print cartridge that is nearly end-of-life or end-of-life. For more information, see [Replacing a print cartridge](#).
2. Make sure that the printer is using a genuine and supported Xerox print cartridge. For more information, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/printer-supplies/toner-cartridge-authentication>. If the print cartridge is not a genuine Xerox supply, then contact your supplier.



#### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by using third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty. For more information, see [Non-Xerox supply](#).

3. If the message appears again after installing genuine, supported supplies, perform a Power-On Reset. Do the following:
  - a. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord.
  - b. Wait 30 seconds to discharge electrical energy and clear buffered data.

- c. Plug the power cord back in, and then turn on the printer.
- d. Allow the printer to fully initialize before sending a print job.

## REPLACE CARTRIDGE, PRINTER REGION MISMATCH

To correct this problem, purchase a cartridge with the correct region that matches the printer region, or purchase a worldwide cartridge.

| Region                                                                             | Numeric code |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Global                                                                             | 0            |
| North America (United States, Canada),<br>Australia, New Zealand, Puerto Rico      | 1            |
| European Union, Iceland, Liechtenstein, Norway,<br>Switzerland, and United Kingdom | 2            |
| Asia Pacific                                                                       | 3            |
| Latin America                                                                      | 4            |
| Rest of Europe, Middle East, Africa                                                | 5            |
| Xerox Distribution                                                                 | 7            |
| People's Republic of China                                                         | C            |

## REFILLED REGULAR [COLOR] CARTRIDGE

Select **OK** to continue.

For more information, see the printer statement of limited warranty.

## NON-XEROX SUPPLY

The printer has detected a non-Xerox supply or part installed in the printer.

Your Xerox printer is designed to function best with genuine Xerox supplies and parts. Use of third-party supplies or parts may affect the performance, reliability, or life of the printer and its imaging components.

All life indicators are designed to function with Xerox supplies and parts and may deliver unpredictable results if third-party supplies or parts are used. Imaging component usage beyond the intended life may damage your Xerox printer or associated components.



### Warning—Potential Damage

Use of third-party supplies or parts can affect warranty coverage. Damage caused by the use of third-party supplies or parts may not be covered by the warranty.

To accept any and all of these risks and to proceed with the use of non-genuine supplies or parts in your printer, touch **Continue** when a confirmation dialog box appears.

If you do not want to accept these risks, then remove the third-party supply or part from your printer and install a genuine Xerox supply or part. For more information, see [Using genuine Xerox supplies on page 212](#).

## Paper handling problems

### LOADING ERROR IN THE MANUAL FEEDER

#### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 11.81
- 11.82
- 12.81
- 12.82

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the manual feeder. Feed the paper until its leading edge gets pulled in. For more information, see [Loading the manual feeder](#).
3. Make sure that the manual feeder is not damaged. Inspect for physical damage, misalignment, or broken guides. Make sure that all locking mechanisms are intact. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).

### LOADING ERROR IN TRAYS

#### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 11.11
- 11.12
- 11.21
- 11.22
- 11.31
- 11.32
- 12.11
- 12.12
- 12.21
- 12.22
- 12.31
- 12.32

## Troubleshooting steps

1. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).
3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).

## INSUFFICIENT PAPER SIZE FOR PRINT

### Issue description

Applicable error code: 34.00

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Check the page setup before printing. Make sure that the original document—whether from a print job or a copy job—matches the selected paper size.
2. Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
3. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

## PAPER SIZE MISMATCH (TWO-SIDED PRINTING)

### Issue description

Applicable error code: 24.04

### Troubleshooting steps

1. The error is most likely caused by attempting two-sided printing on paper that is too narrow. Load only paper sizes supported for two-sided printing, such as A4, Letter, Legal, or Oficio. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#).
2. Make sure that the paper is loaded properly in the tray and the guides are adjusted to match the size of the paper loaded. Make sure that the stack height is below the maximum fill line. For more information, see [Loading trays](#).

3. Make sure that the tray is installed properly and free from obstructions and damage. Verify that the side guides can move freely and are not broken. If there are signs of damage, then contact [customer support](#).

## PAPER CURL

Try one or more of the following:

- Adjust the guides in the tray to the correct position of the paper loaded.
- Depending on your operating system, specify the paper type from the Printing Preferences or Print dialog. Make sure that the setting matches the paper loaded.



**Note:** You can also change the setting on the printer control panel. Navigate to **Settings › Paper › Tray Configuration › Paper Size/Type**.

- Remove the paper, flip it over, and then reload the paper.
- Load paper from a fresh package.



**Note:** Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store the paper in its original wrapper until you are ready to use it.

## ENVELOPE SEALS WHEN PRINTING

Try one or more of the following:

- Use an envelope that has been stored in a dry environment.



**Note:** Printing on envelopes with high moisture content can seal the flaps.

- Make sure that the paper type is set to **Envelope**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Paper › Tray Configuration › Paper Size/Type**.

## Emailing problems

### DISABLING THE “SMTP SERVER NOT SET UP” ERROR MESSAGE

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Email › Email Setup**.
2. Set **Disable “SMTP server not set up” error** to **On**.

To prevent the error from happening again, do one or more of the following:

- Update the printer firmware. For more information, see the **Updating firmware** section.
- Configure the email SMTP settings. For more information, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 34](#).

## CANNOT SEND EMAILS

Try one more of the following:

- Make sure that the email SMTP settings are configured correctly. For more information, see [Configuring the email SMTP settings on page 34](#).
- Make sure that the printer is connected to a network and the network is connected to the Internet.

- If your email service provider is Microsoft, Outlook, or Hotmail, then configure the OAuth2.0 settings. For more information, see the Setting up OAuth 2.0 Authentication for Email Server using the Embedded Web Server section in .

## Faxing problems

### CALLER ID IS NOT SHOWN

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** > **Fax** > **Fax Setup** > **Fax Receive Settings** > **Admin Controls**.
2. Set **Enable Caller ID** to **On**.

### CANNOT SEND OR RECEIVE FAXES USING ANALOG FAX

 **Note:** These instructions apply only to certain printer models.

**Try one or more of the following:**

- Resolve any error messages that appear on the display.
- Make sure that the cable connections for the telephone, handset, or answering machine are secure.
- Check for a dial tone.
  - Call the fax number to check if it is working properly.
  - If you are using the On Hook Dial feature, then turn up the volume to check if you hear a dial tone.
- Check the telephone wall jack.
  1. Connect the analog telephone directly to the wall jack.
  2. Listen for a dial tone.
  3. If you do not hear a dial tone, then use a different telephone cable.
  4. If you still do not hear a dial tone, then connect the analog telephone to a different wall jack.
  5. If you hear a dial tone, then connect the printer to that wall jack.
- Check if the printer is connected to an analog phone service or to the correct digital connector.
  - If you are using an Integrated Services for Digital Network (ISDN) telephone service, then connect to an analog telephone port of an ISDN terminal adapter. For more information, contact your ISDN provider.
  - If you are using DSL, then connect to a DSL filter or router that supports analog use. For more information, contact your DSL provider.
  - If you are using a private branch exchange (PBX) telephone service, then make sure that you are connecting to an analog connection on the PBX. If none exists, then consider installing an analog telephone line for the fax machine.
- Temporarily disconnect other equipment and disable other telephone services.
  1. Disconnect other equipment (such as answering machines, computers, modems, or telephone line splitters) between the printer and the telephone line.
  2. Disable call waiting and voice mail. For more information, contact your telephone company.
- Scan the original document one page at a time.

### CAN RECEIVE BUT NOT SEND FAXES USING ANALOG FAX

 **Note:** These instructions apply only to certain printer models.

Try one or more of the following:

- Load an original document into the ADF tray or on the scanner glass. For more information, see [Using the automatic document feeder and scanner glass on page 18](#).
- Set up the shortcut number properly.
  - Check if the shortcut number is set for the telephone number that you want to dial.
  - Dial the telephone number manually.

## CAN SEND BUT NOT RECEIVE FAXES USING ANALOG FAX

 **Note:** These instructions apply only to certain printer models.

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the paper source is not empty.
- Check the ring count delay settings. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Fax** › **Fax Setup** › **Fax Receive Settings** › **Rings to Answer**.
- If the printer is printing blank pages, then see [Missing print](#).

## CANNOT SET UP ETHERFAX

Try one or more of the following:

- Check the printer connectivity.
  1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Reports** › **Network** › **Network Setup Page**.
  2. Check the network status on the printed page.
- Make sure that the printer is connected to a network and the network is connected to the Internet.
- Make sure that etherFAX is set up correctly. For more information, see [Setting up the fax function using etherFAX on page 47](#).

If the problem persists, then go to <https://www.etherfax.net/>

## CANNOT SEND OR RECEIVE FAXES USING ETHERFAX

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the printer is connected to a network and the network is connected to the Internet.
- Make sure that etherFAX is set up correctly. For more information, see [Setting up the fax function using etherFAX on page 47](#).
- Split large documents into smaller file sizes.

If the problem persists, then go to <https://www.etherfax.net/>

## POOR FAX PRINT QUALITY

Try one or more of the following:

- Resolve any print quality defects.

1. Print the **Test Quality Pages**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Troubleshooting › Print Quality Test Pages**.
  2. Correct any print quality defects. For more information, see the **Print quality issues** section.
- If you are using an analog fax, then decrease the incoming fax transmission speed.
    1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Fax › Fax Setup › Fax Receive Settings › Admin Controls**.
    2. In the **Max Speed** menu, select a lower transmission speed.

## MISSING INFORMATION ON THE FAX COVER PAGE

1. Turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
2. Send or retrieve the fax.

## CANNOT SEND THE FAX COVER PAGE FROM THE COMPUTER

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the print driver is updated. For more information, go to [www.support.xerox.com](http://www.support.xerox.com).
- Clear the **Always display settings prior to faxing** setting.
  1. From the document that you are trying to fax, open the **Print** dialog.
  2. Select the printer, and then click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
  3. Click **Fax**, and then clear the **Always display settings prior to faxing** setting.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## Scanning problems

### SCAN QUALITY ISSUES

#### Copies or scans are too light or too dark

##### Issue description

Copies or scanned documents appear consistently faded or overexposed, resulting in reduced readability and poor image quality. Text may appear washed out, gray, or difficult to read in light copies, while dark copies may show excessive background shading, blotches, or loss of detail.

##### Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Troubleshooting › Print Quality Test Pages**. If the test pages are unusually light or dark, then see [Image is too light or too dark](#) in the **Print quality issues** section.
2. Open the scanner cover, and then using a soft, damp, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:
  - ADF glass
  - ADF glass pad



- Scanner glass
- Scanner glass pad

For more information, see [Cleaning the scanner](#).

3. Initiate the color adjust process. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging › Color Adjust**.



**Note:** The color adjust process takes about one minute to complete.

4. Adjust the darkness setting. Do the following:
  - a. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Copy › Darkness**.
  - b. Adjust the darkness level.
    - If image is too light, then increase the darkness setting.
    - If image is too dark, then decrease the darkness setting.
  - c. Send a copy job.

## Light vertical streaks on copies or scans

### Issue description

Light vertical streaks appear on copies or scanned documents, running from the top to the bottom of the page. These streaks are visible on multiple pages and can make text or images look uneven or unclear.

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Troubleshooting › Print Quality Test Pages**. If the same light lines appear on the test pages, then see [Vertical or horizontal lines on page 258](#) in the **Print quality issues** section.
2. Open the scanner cover, and then using a soft, damp, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:
  - ADF glass
  - ADF glass pad
  - Scanner glass
  - Scanner glass pad

For more information, see [Cleaning the scanner](#).

## Spots on copies or scan when using the scanner glass

### Issue description

Spots or small marks appear on copies or scanned documents when using the scanner glass. These spots may appear as dark or light dots or smudges and are visible in the same location on multiple pages.

## Troubleshooting steps

1. Print the **Print Quality Test Pages**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Troubleshooting > Print Quality Test Pages**. If the same spots appear on the test pages, then see **Repeating defects** in the **Print quality issues** section.
2. Load a blank sheet of paper on the scanner glass, and then make a copy. If the copy shows the same spots, clean the scanner glass. For more information, see **Cleaning the scanner**.

## Lines on copies or scans when using the ADF

### Issue description

Horizontal or vertical lines consistently appear on copies or scanned documents when using the automatic document feeder (ADF). The lines may be dark or light and typically run across the full width or length of the page. This defect is visible on multiple pages within the same job and does not appear when scanning or copying from the scanner glass.

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Load a blank sheet of paper into the ADF, and then make a copy.
  - If a line appears on the test copy and matches the line seen on normal copies, cleaning the ADF glass will most likely resolve the issue.
  - If a line appears but it is different from the original defect, the issue is likely with the printer.
  - If no line appears on the test copy, see **Vertical or horizontal lines on page 258** in the **Print quality issues** section.
2. Open the scanner cover, and then using a soft, damp, lint-free cloth, wipe the following areas:
  - ADF glass
  - ADF glass pad
  - Scanner glass
  - Scanner glass pad

For more information, see **Cleaning the scanner**.

## CANNOT SCAN TO A COMPUTER

### Try one or more of the following:

- Perform a copy job. If the job failed, then turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.
- Check the printer connectivity.
  1. Print the **Network Setup Page**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings > Reports > Network**, and then select **Network Setup Page**.
  2. Check the first section of the page and confirm if the status is connected.
- Make sure that the printer and the computer are connected to the same network.

## CANNOT SCAN TO A NETWORK FOLDER

Try one or more of the following:

- Create a network folder shortcut, and then scan a document using the shortcut. For more information, see [Scanning to a network folder using a shortcut on page 108](#).
- Make sure that the network folder path and format are correct. For example, *//server\_hostname/foldername/path*, where **server\_hostname** is a fully qualified domain (FQDN) or IP address.
- Make sure that you have a write access permission to the network folder.
- Make sure that the printer and the network folder are connected to the same network.
- Update the network folder shortcut.
  1. Open a web browser, and then type the printer IP address in the address field.



- You can find the IP address at the top of the printer display.
- Make sure that the printer and computer are connected to the same network.

2. Click **Shortcuts**, and then select a shortcut.



**Note:** If you have multiple shortcut types, then select **Network Folder**.

3. In the **Share Path** field, type the network folder path. For example, *//server\_hostname/foldername/path*.



**Note:** Always use forward slashes when typing the share path.

4. From the **Authentication** menu, select your authentication method.



**Note:** If **Authentication** is set to “Use assigned username and password,” then in the Username and Password fields, type your credentials.

5. Click **Save**.

## PARTIAL COPIES OF DOCUMENT OR PHOTO

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the document or photo is loaded face down on the upper left corner of the scanner glass.
- Check the paper loaded for the following:
  - The paper matches the paper size and type set in the printer. For more information, see [Setting the paper size and type on page 54](#).
  - The paper size, paper type, and paper weight loaded are supported. For more information, see [Supported paper sizes on page 21](#), [Supported paper types on page 23](#), and [Supported paper weights on page 24](#).
- Check the **Copy From** and **Copy To** size settings in the **Copy** menu. Make sure both are set to the correct document and output paper sizes.

## SCAN JOB WAS NOT SUCCESSFUL

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the Ethernet or USB cable is securely connected to the computer and the printer.
- Check the file that you want to scan, and make sure that:
  - The file name is not already used in the destination folder.
  - The document or photo that you want to scan is not open in another application.
- Make sure that the **Append time stamp** or the **Overwrite existing file** check box is selected in the destination configuration settings.

## SCANNER DOES NOT CLOSE

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove any paper, debris, or foreign objects inside the scanner.
- Clean the lid and frame.
- Check if the hinges or latches are damaged or misaligned. Contact [customer support](#) if there are signs of damage.

If the problem persists, then contact [customer support](#).

## SCANNER DOES NOT RESPOND

Try one or more of the following:

- Check if the power cord is connected properly to the printer and the electrical outlet.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

- Check if the printer is turned on, and then resolve any error messages that appear on the display.
- Turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.

## SCAN JOB HANG-UP

### Issue description

Applicable error code: 38.00

### Troubleshooting steps

1. Clear all scan jobs from the printer queue to reset the device and free memory.
2. Perform a Power-On-Reset on the printer. Do the following:
  - a. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord.
  - b. Wait 30 seconds to discharge electrical energy and clear buffered data.
  - c. Plug the power cord back in, and then turn on the printer.
  - d. Allow the printer to fully initialize before sending a print job.

3. Reduce scan job complexity.
  - a. Lower the scan resolution (for example, 300 dpi).
  - b. Select a smaller file size or change the file format to PDF or JPEG.
  - c. Scan fewer pages at a time.
4. Verify scan destination and connectivity.
  - a. Confirm that the scan destination (email server, network folder, or USB device) is available.
  - b. Check network connectivity and ensure the IP address settings are correct.
  - c. Test scanning to an alternate destination to isolate the issue.
5. If you frequently send large or complex print or scan jobs, installing an intelligent storage drive (ISD) can improve job handling and reduce memory-related errors. For more information, see [Installing the intelligent storage drive](#).



**Note:** The ISD is only supported in certain printer models.

## ADJUSTING SCANNER REGISTRATION

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Maintenance** › **Configuration Menu** › **Scanner Configuration** › **Scanner Manual Registration**.
2. In the **Print Quick Test** menu, select **Start**.
3. Place the test page on the scanner glass, and then select **Flatbed Registration**.
4. In the **Copy Quick Test** menu, select **Start**.
5. Compare the test page with the original document.



**Note:** If the margins of the test page are different from the original document, then adjust the **Left Margin** and **Top Margin** settings.

6. Repeat [step 4](#) and [step 5](#) until the margins of the **Copy Quick Test** page closely match the original document.

## ADJUSTING ADF REGISTRATION

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Maintenance** › **Configuration Menu** › **Scanner Configuration** › **Scanner Manual Registration**.
2. In the **Print Quick Test** menu, select **Start**.
3. Place the test page on the ADF tray.
4. Select **Front ADF Registration** or **Rear ADF Registration**.



### Notes

- To align **Front ADF Registration**, place the test page face up, short edge first into the ADF.
  - To align **Rear ADF Registration**, place the test page face down, short edge first into the ADF.
5. In the **Copy Quick Test** menu, select **Start**.

6. Compare the test page with the original document.



**Note:** If the margins of the test page are different from the original document, then adjust the **Horizontal Adjust** and **Top Margin** settings.

7. Repeat **step 5** and **step 6** until the margins of the **Copy Quick Test** page closely match the original document.

## System problems

### COLLATED PRINTING DOES NOT WORK

Try one or more of the following:

- From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Print** › **Layout** › **Collate**, and then select **On [1,2,1,2,1,2]**.
- From the document that you are trying to print, open the Printing Preferences or Print dialog, and then select **Collate**.
- Reduce the number of pages to print.

### INDICATOR LIGHT IS ALTERNATING BETWEEN BLUE AND BLINKING RED

A communication issue has occurred between the controller board and the control panel card.

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Unplug the power cord from the electrical outlet, and then wait for 30 seconds.
3. Connect the power cord to the electrical outlet.



#### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

4. Turn on the printer.

### INSUFFICIENT MEMORY

#### Issue description

Applicable error codes:

- 37.01
- 37.03
- 38.01
- 39.01
- 39.02

#### Troubleshooting steps

1. Clear all print jobs from the printer queue to reset the device and free memory. For more information, see [Canceling a print job on page 96](#).

2. Perform a Power-On-Reset on the printer. Do the following:
  - a. Turn off the printer, and then unplug the power cord.
  - b. Wait 30 seconds to discharge electrical energy and clear buffered data.
  - c. Plug the power cord back in, and then turn on the printer.
  - d. Allow the printer to fully initialize before sending a print job.
3. Reduce print job complexity from the computer.
  - a. Print fewer pages at a time.
  - b. For PDF files, enable **Print as Image**.
  - c. Lower the print resolution. If **Highest Quality** is enabled, change it to **Standard**. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Print** › **Quality** › **Print Resolution**.
  - d. Disable advanced features, such as duplex, booklet printing, and secure print.
4. Verify whether the printer supports the Xerox® Print and Scan Experience app. For more information, see [Xerox® Print and Scan Experience App](#). If not supported, use a PCL driver to reduce memory usage.
5. If you frequently send large or complex print or scan jobs, installing an intelligent storage drive (ISD) can improve job handling and reduce memory-related errors. For more information, see [Installing the intelligent storage drive](#).



**Note:** The ISD is only supported in certain printer models.

## JAMMED PAGES ARE NOT REPRINTED

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Device** › **Notifications** › **Jam Content Recovery**.
2. In the **Jam Recovery** menu, select **On** or **Auto**.

## THE PRINTER IS NOT RESPONDING

Try one or more of the following:

- Check if the power cord is connected to the electrical outlet.



### CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY

To avoid the risk of fire or electrical shock, connect the power cord to an appropriately rated and properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

- Make sure that the electrical outlet is not turned off by a switch or breaker.
- Check if the printer is on.
- Make sure that the printer is not in Sleep or Hibernate Mode.
- Make sure that the cables connecting the printer and computer are connected to the correct ports.
- Turn off the printer, install the hardware options, and then turn on the printer. For more information, see the documentation that came with the option.
- Install the correct print driver.
- Turn off the printer, wait for about 30 seconds, and then turn on the printer.

## TRAY LINKING DOES NOT WORK



**Note:** These instructions apply only to certain printer models.

Try one or more of the following:

- Make sure that the linked trays contain the same paper size and paper type and loaded in the same orientation.
- Make sure that the paper guides are positioned correctly.
- Set the paper size and paper type to match the paper loaded in the linked trays. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Paper** › **Tray Configuration** › **Paper Size/Type**.
- Make sure that **Tray Linking** is set to **Automatic**. For more information, see [Linking trays on page 66](#).

## Color quality problems

### MODIFYING THE COLORS IN PRINTED OUTPUT

1. From the control panel, navigate to **Settings** › **Print** › **Quality** › **Advanced Imaging** › **Color Correction**.
2. In the **Color Correction** menu, select **Manual**.
3. In the **Color Correction Content** menu, select the appropriate color conversion setting.

| Object type                                                   | Color conversion tables                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>RGB Image</b><br><b>RGB Text</b><br><b>RGB Graphics</b>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◦ <b>Vivid</b>—Produces brighter, more saturated colors and can be applied to all incoming color formats.</li><li>◦ <b>sRGB Display</b>—Produces an output that approximates the colors shown on a computer monitor. Black toner usage is optimized for printing photographs.</li><li>◦ <b>Display-True Black</b>—Produces an output that approximates the colors shown on a computer monitor. This setting uses only black toner to create all levels of neutral gray.</li><li>◦ <b>sRGB Vivid</b>—Provides an increased color saturation for the sRGB Display color correction. Black toner usage is optimized for printing business graphics.</li><li>◦ <b>Off</b></li></ul> |
| <b>CMYK Image</b><br><b>CMYK Text</b><br><b>CMYK Graphics</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>◦ <b>US CMYK</b>—Applies color correction to approximate the Specifications for Web Offset Publishing (SWOP) color output.</li><li>◦ <b>Euro CMYK</b>—Applies color correction to approximate Euroscale color output.</li><li>◦ <b>Vivid CMYK</b>—Increases the color saturation of the US CMYK color correction setting.</li><li>◦ <b>Off</b></li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |



## FAQ ABOUT COLOR PRINTING

### What is RGB color?

RGB color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of red, green, or blue used to produce a certain color. Red, green, and blue light can be added in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. Computer screens, scanners, and digital cameras use this method to display colors.

### What is CMYK color?

CMYK color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black used to reproduce a particular color. Cyan, magenta, yellow, and black inks or toners can be printed in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. Printing presses, inkjet printers, and color laser printers create colors in this manner.

### How is color specified in a document to be printed?

Software programs are used to specify and modify the document color using RGB or CMYK color combinations. For more information, see the software program Help topics.

### How does the printer know what color to print?

When printing a document, information describing the type and color of each object is sent to the printer and is passed through color conversion tables. Color is translated into the appropriate amounts of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black toner used to produce the color you want. The object information determines the application of color conversion tables. For example, it is possible to apply one type of color conversion table to text while applying a different color conversion table to photographic images.

### What is manual color correction?

When manual color correction is enabled, the printer employs user-selected color conversion tables to process objects. Manual color correction settings are specific to the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images). It is also specific to how the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations). To apply a different color conversion table manually, see [Modifying the colors in printed output on page 332](#).

If the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations, then manual color correction is not useful. It is also not effective if the software program or the computer operating system controls the adjustment of colors. In most situations, setting the Color Correction to Auto generates preferred colors for the documents.

### How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?

From the printer Quality menu, nine types of Color Samples sets are available. These sets are also available from the Color Samples page of the Embedded Web Server. Selecting any sample set generates multiple-page prints consisting of hundreds of colored boxes. Each box contains a CMYK or RGB combination, depending on the table selected. The observed color of each box is obtained by passing the CMYK or RGB combination labeled on the box through the selected color conversion table.

By examining Color Samples sets, you can identify the box with color closest to the color being matched. The color combination labeled on the box can then be used for modifying the color of the object in a software program. For more information, see the software program Help topics. Manual color correction may be necessary to use the selected color conversion table for the particular object.

Selecting which Color Samples set to use for a particular color-matching problem depends on:

- The Color Correction setting being used (Auto, Off, or Manual)
- The type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images)
- How the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations)

If the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations, then the Color Samples pages are not useful. Additionally, some software programs adjust the RGB or CMYK combinations specified in the program through color management. In these situations, the printed color may not be an exact match of the Color Samples pages.

## THE PRINT APPEARS TINTED

Try one or more of the following:

- From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging**, and then select **Color Adjust**.
- From the control panel, navigate to **Settings › Print › Quality › Advanced Imaging**, select **Color Balance**, and then adjust the settings.

## Contacting customer support

To accurately diagnose your issue, our support agents must perform diagnostic troubleshooting with you during your call. Make sure you are near your device so you can follow the on-screen or spoken instructions.

If you are not near your device, you can call us back when you are ready.

Have the following information ready when you contact support:

- Printer model and serial number
- A brief description of the issue
- Any error messages (if applicable)



### Note:

- For instructions on locating the printer serial number or the , see [Finding the printer serial number on page 14](#).
- Depending on your printer model, the serial number is 9, 10, or 13 digits. Look for **SN** or **XSN—Xerox Serial Number** on the label.

Technical support is also available by phone:

- For Xerox, go to <https://support.xerox.com>, and then click **Contact Support**.
- For Lexmark (U.S. or Canada), call **1-800-539-6257**. For other countries or regions, go to [www.lexmark.com/supportdirectory](http://www.lexmark.com/supportdirectory).

# Recycling and disposal

This chapter contains

|                      |     |
|----------------------|-----|
| All Countries .....  | 336 |
| North America.....   | 336 |
| European Union ..... | 336 |
| Other Countries..... | 337 |

## 12. Recycling and disposal

### All Countries

If you are managing the disposal of your Xerox product, please note that the printer may contain lead, mercury, perchlorate, and other materials whose disposal may be regulated due to environmental considerations. The presence of these materials is fully consistent with global regulations applicable at the time that the product was placed on the market.

For recycling and disposal information, contact your local authorities.

Perchlorate Material: This product may contain one or more Perchlorate-containing devices, such as batteries. Special handling may apply. For more information, go to [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

### BATTERY REMOVAL

Batteries should only be replaced by a manufacturer-approved service facility.

### North America

Xerox operates an equipment take-back and reuse/recycle program. Contact your Xerox representative (1-800-ASK- XEROX) to determine if this Xerox product is part of the program.

For more information about Xerox environmental programs, visit [www.xerox.com/environment](http://www.xerox.com/environment).

For recycling and disposal information, contact your local authorities.

### European Union



These symbols indicate that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) Directive (2012/19/EU), the Battery Directive (2006/66/EC) and national legislation implementing those Directives.

If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol shown above, in accordance with the Battery Directive, this indicates that a heavy metal (Hg = Mercury, Cd = Cadmium, Pb = Lead) is present in this battery or accumulator at a concentration above an applicable threshold specified in the Battery Directive.

Some equipment may be used in both a domestic/household and a professional/business application. Private households within European Union may return used electrical and electronic equipment to designated collection facilities free of charge. For more information about collection and recycling of old products and batteries, contact your local municipality, your waste disposal service or the point of sale where you purchased the items. In some member states, when you purchase new equipment, your local retailer may be required to take back your old equipment free of charge. For more information, contact your retailer.

Business Users in the European Union, in accordance with European legislation, end of life electrical and electronic equipment subject to disposal must be managed within agreed procedures. If you wish to

discard electrical and electronic equipment, contact your dealer or supplier, local reseller or Xerox representative for end of life take-back information prior to disposal.

Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. Your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources.

## **DISPOSAL OUTSIDE OF THE EUROPEAN UNION**

These symbols are only valid in the European Union. If you wish to discard these items, please contact your local authorities or dealer and ask for the correct method of disposal.

### **Other Countries**

Please contact your local waste management authority to request disposal guidance.

# Notices

This chapter contains

|                                                |     |
|------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Product information.....                       | 339 |
| Edition and legal notices .....                | 339 |
| Specifications.....                            | 340 |
| Environmental and sustainability notices ..... | 342 |
| Notices for fax products .....                 | 345 |
| Notices for wireless products .....            | 348 |
| Class B device notices .....                   | 351 |
| Other regulatory notices .....                 | 353 |

# Notices

## Product information

Product name:

Xerox® C245, Xerox® C255a; Xerox® C303a Color Multifunction Printers

Machine type:

3501

Models:

460, 4C0, 6L0

## Edition and legal notices

### EDITION NOTICES

June 2026

**The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:** XEROX CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION “AS IS” WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

For Xerox technical support, go to <https://www.support.xerox.com/>.

For information on Xerox's privacy policy governing the use of this product, go to <https://www.xerox.com/en-us/about/privacy-policy>.

For information on supplies and downloads, go to <https://www.xerox.com>.

### GOVERNMENT END USERS

The Software and accompanying documentation are “commercial” as defined in FAR 2.101. For civilian agencies, consistent with FAR 12.212, commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation are licensed to the U.S. Government under the vendor's standard commercial license(s) customarily provided to the public, and the Government shall have only those rights specified in such license(s), to the extent consistent with Federal law and otherwise meeting Government needs. For Department of Defense (DoD) agencies, consistent with DFARS 227.7202-1 and 227.7202-3, commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation are licensed to DoD under the vendor's standard commercial license(s) customarily provided to the public, and the Government shall have only the rights specified in such license(s), unless additional rights are expressly negotiated and expressly stated in the contract or an addendum.

### LICENSING NOTICES

All licensing notices associated with this product can be viewed from the Xerox support site.

## Specifications

### LASER NOTICE

The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR, Chapter I, Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class 1 consumer laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1:2014, EN 60825-1:2014+A11:2021, and EN 50689:2021.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service conditions. The printer has a non-serviceable printhead assembly that contains a laser with the following specifications:

Class: IIb (3b) AlGaAs

Nominal output power (milliwatts): 10

Wavelength (nanometers): 770–800

### TEMPERATURE INFORMATION

|                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Operating temperature and relative humidity (RH) <sup>1</sup>     | 10 to 32.2°C (50 to 90°F) and 15 to 80 % RH<br>15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F) and 8 to 80 % RH<br>Maximum wet-bulb temperature <sup>3</sup> : 22.8°C (73°F)<br>Non-condensing environment |
| Printer / cartridge / imaging unit long-term storage <sup>2</sup> | 15.6 to 32.2°C (60 to 90°F) and 8 to 80 % RH<br>Maximum wet-bulb temperature <sup>3</sup> : 22.8°C (73°F)                                                                              |
| Printer / cartridge / imaging unit short-term shipping            | -40 to 40°C (-40 to 104°F)                                                                                                                                                             |

<sup>1</sup> In some cases, performance specifications (such as cartridge usage and first-page-out speed) must be measured at a standard office environment of approximately 22.2°C (72°F) and 45 % RH.

<sup>2</sup> Supplies shelf life is approximately 2 years. This is based on storage in a standard office environment at 22°C (72°F) and 45 % humidity.

<sup>3</sup> Wet-bulb temperature is determined by the air temperature and the relative humidity.

### POWER REQUIREMENTS

The following nominal voltage ranges are supported in applicable countries or regions: 100–110 V / 50Hz, 110–127 V / 60Hz, and 220–240 V / 50Hz (not dual-voltage).

### PRODUCT POWER CONSUMPTION

The following table documents the power consumption characteristics of the product.

 **Note:** Some modes may not apply to your product.



| Mode       | Description                                                                           | Power consumption (Watts)                                                              |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Printing   | The product is generating hard-copy output from electronic inputs.                    | One-sided: 386 (C245, C255a); 436 (C303a)<br>Two-sided: 245 (C245, C255a); 272 (C303a) |
| Copy       | The product is generating hard-copy output from hard-copy original documents.         | 392 (C245, C255a); 381 (C303a)                                                         |
| Scan       | The product is scanning hard-copy documents.                                          | 27.6 (C245, C255a); 28.0 (C303a)                                                       |
| Ready      | The product is waiting for a print job.                                               | 15.1 (C245, C255a); 16.4 (C303a)                                                       |
| Sleep Mode | The product is in a high-level energy-saving mode.                                    | 0.77 (C245, C255a); 0.80 (C303a)                                                       |
| Hibernate  | The product is in a low-level energy-saving mode.                                     | 0.1                                                                                    |
| Off        | The product is plugged into an electrical outlet, but the power switch is turned off. | 0.1                                                                                    |

The power consumption levels listed in the previous table represent time-averaged measurements. Instantaneous power draws may be substantially higher than the average. Values are subject to change. See [www.xerox.com](http://www.xerox.com) for current values.

## SLEEP MODE

This product is designed with an energy-saving mode called **Sleep Mode**. The Sleep Mode saves energy by lowering power consumption during extended periods of inactivity. The Sleep Mode is automatically engaged after this product is not used for a specified period of time, called the **Sleep Mode Timeout**.

|                                                                   |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Factory default Sleep Mode Timeout for this product (in minutes): | 15 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----|

By using the configuration menus, the Sleep Mode Timeout can be modified between 1 minute and 120 minutes, or between 1 minute and 114 minutes, depending on the printer model. If the printer speed is less than or equal to 30 pages per minute, then you can set the timeout only up to 60 minutes or 54 minutes, depending on the printer model. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a low value reduces energy consumption, but may increase the response time of the product. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a high value maintains a fast response, but uses more energy. Some models support a **Deep Sleep Mode**, which further reduces power consumption after longer periods of inactivity.

## HIBERNATE MODE

This product is designed with an ultra-low power operating mode called **Hibernate mode**. When operating in Hibernate Mode, all other systems and devices are powered down safely. The Hibernate mode can be entered in any of the following methods:

- Using the Hibernate Timeout
- Using the Schedule Power modes

|                                                                                |        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Factory default Hibernate Timeout for this product in all countries or regions | 3 days |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|

The amount of time the printer waits after a job is printed before it enters Hibernate mode can be modified between one hour and one month.

#### Notes on EPEAT-registered imaging equipment products:

- Standby power level occurs in Hibernate or Off mode.
- The product shall automatically power down to a standby power level of  $\leq 1$  W. The auto standby function (Hibernate or Off) shall be enabled at product shipment.

## OFF MODE

If this product has an off mode which still consumes a small amount of power, then to completely stop product power consumption, disconnect the power supply cord from the electrical outlet.

## TOTAL ENERGY USAGE

It is sometimes helpful to estimate the total product energy usage. Since power consumption claims are provided in power units of Watts, the power consumption should be multiplied by the time the product spends in each mode in order to calculate energy usage. The total product energy usage is the sum of each mode's energy usage.

## Environmental and sustainability notices

## NOISE EMISSION LEVELS

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

 **Note:** Some modes may not apply to your product.

| 1-meter average sound pressure, dBA |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Printing                            | One-sided, mono: 49 (C245, C255a); 51 (C303a)<br>One-sided, color: 51 (C245, C255a); 53 (C303a)<br>Two-sided, mono: 48 (C245, C255a); 50 (C303a)<br>Two-sided, color: 50 (C245, C255a); 52 (C303a) |
| Scanning                            | Mono: 55<br>Color: 45                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Copying                             | Mono: 56 (C245, C255a); 57 (C303a)<br>Color: 50                                                                                                                                                    |
| Ready                               | 14                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

Values are subject to change. See [www.xerox.com](http://www.xerox.com) for current values.

## WASTE FROM ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT (WEEE) DIRECTIVE



The WEEE logo signifies specific recycling programs and procedures for electronic products in countries of the European Union. We encourage the recycling of our products.

If you have further questions about recycling options, visit the Xerox website at [www.xerox.com](http://www.xerox.com) for your local sales office phone number.

## INDIA E-WASTE NOTICE



This product including components, consumables, parts and spares complies with the “India E-Waste Rules” and prohibits use of lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium, polybrominated biphenyls or polybrominated diphenyl ethers in concentrations exceeding 0.1 % by weight and 0.01 % by weight for cadmium, except for the exemption set in the Rule.

## LITHIUM-ION RECHARGEABLE BATTERY



This product may contain a coin-cell, lithium-ion rechargeable battery, which should only be removed by a trained technician. Crossed-out wheelie bin means the product should not be discarded as unsorted waste

but must be sent to separate collection facilities for recovery and recycling. In the event the battery is removed, do not dispose of the battery in your household waste. There may be separate collection systems for batteries in your local community, such as a battery-recycling drop-off location. The separate collection of waste batteries assures appropriate treatment of waste including reuse and recycling and prevents any potential negative effects on human health and environment. Please responsibly dispose of the batteries.

**REGULATION (EU) 2023/1542**

This product may contain a coin-cell lithium rechargeable battery. This battery complies with Regulation (EU) 2023/1542. Compliance is indicated by the CE marking:



This product may contain one of the following coin-cell batteries:

- Battery identification: Seiko Model Number MS621FE  
Manufacturer: Seiko Instruments Inc.  
Manufacturer address: 8, Nakase 1-chome, Mihama-ku, Chiba-shi, Chiba 261-8507, Japan
- Battery identification: Panasonic Model Number ML621  
Manufacturer: Panasonic Energy Co., Ltd.  
Manufacturer address: 1-1 Matsushita-cho, Moriguchi City, Osaka 570-8511, Japan
- Battery identification: FDK Model Number ML621  
Manufacturer: FDK Corporation  
Manufacturer address: Shibaura Crystal Shinagawa, 1-6-41 Konan, Minato-ku, Tokyo 108-8212 Japan

For the latest battery information, go to [https://www.xerox.com/downloads/usa/en/e/environment\\_batterydirectivematrix.pdf](https://www.xerox.com/downloads/usa/en/e/environment_batterydirectivematrix.pdf).

**ENVIRONMENTAL LABELING FOR PACKAGING**

Per Commission Regulation Decision 97/129/EC Legislative Decree 152/2006, the product packaging may contain one or more of the following symbols.

|                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A black recycling symbol consisting of three chasing arrows forming a triangle. Inside the triangle is the number '20'. Below the triangle is the text 'PAP'. | This symbol indicates that the packaging may contain corrugated fiberboard.     |
| A black recycling symbol consisting of three chasing arrows forming a triangle. Inside the triangle is the number '21'. Below the triangle is the text 'PAP'. | This symbol indicates that the packaging may contain non-corrugated fiberboard. |



This symbol indicates that the packaging may contain paper.

For more information, go to [www.xerox.com/en-us/about/ehs/reduce-waste/packaging-and-sorting](http://www.xerox.com/en-us/about/ehs/reduce-waste/packaging-and-sorting), and then choose your country or region. Information on available packaging recycling programs is included with the information on product recycling.

## PRODUCT DISPOSAL

Do not dispose of the printer or supplies in the same manner as normal household waste. Consult your local authorities for disposal and recycling options.

## RETURNING XEROX SUPPLIES FOR REUSE OR RECYCLING

The Xerox Cartridge Collection Program allows you to return used cartridges and other used supplies for free to Xerox for reuse or recycling.

To return Xerox cartridges for reuse or recycling, do the following:

1. Go to [www.xerox.com/recycling](http://www.xerox.com/recycling).
2. Select your country or region.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## ENERGY STAR®

Any Xerox product bearing the ENERGY STAR emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR requirements as of the date of manufacture.



## Notices for fax products

## MODEL-SPECIFIC INFORMATION

The following information applies only to the Xerox® C255a and Xerox® C303a printer models.

## REGULATORY NOTICES FOR TELECOMMUNICATION TERMINAL EQUIPMENT

This section contains regulatory information pertaining to products that contain the analog facsimile card:

Regulatory Type/Model Number:

LEX-M14-002 or LEX-M03-002

## NOTICE TO USERS OF THE US TELEPHONE NETWORK: FCC REQUIREMENTS

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the Administrative Council for Terminal Attachments (ACTA). On the back of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to your telephone company.

This equipment uses the RJ-11C Universal Service Order Code (USOC) jack.

A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises' wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. Use a compliant telephone cord (RJ-11) that is 26 AWG or larger when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network. See your setup documentation for more information.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact your local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (for example, 03 is a REN of 0.3). For earlier products, the REN is shown separately on the label.

If this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. If advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. You will also be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of this equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If you experience trouble with this equipment, for repair or warranty information, contact Xerox Corporation at [www.xerox.com](http://www.xerox.com) or your Xerox representative. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

This equipment contains no user serviceable parts. For repair and warranty information, contact Xerox Corporation. See the previous paragraph for contact information.

Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission, or corporation commission for information.

If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the installation of this equipment does not disable your alarm equipment. If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, consult your telephone company or a qualified installer.

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device, including fax machines, to send any message unless said message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message, and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual. (The telephone number provided may not be a 900 number or any other number for which charges exceed local or long-distance transmission charges.)

See your user documentation in order to program this information into your fax machine.

## NOTICE TO USERS OF THE CANADIAN TELEPHONE NETWORK

This product meets the applicable Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada technical specifications.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) indicates the maximum number of devices allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination of an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices not exceed five. The REN is located on the product label.

This equipment uses CA11A telephone jacks.

## Avis réservé aux utilisateurs du réseau téléphonique du Canada

Ce produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada.

Le numéro REN (ringer equivalence number : numéro d'équivalence de sonnerie) indique le nombre maximum d'appareils pouvant être connectés à l'interface téléphonique. En bout de ligne, le nombre d'appareils qui peuvent être connectés n'est pas directement limité, mais la somme des REN de ces appareils ne doit pas dépasser cinq. Le numéro REN est indiqué sur l'étiquette produit.

Cet équipement utilise des prises de téléphone CA11A.

## NOTICE TO USERS OF THE NEW ZEALAND TELEPHONE NETWORK

The following are special conditions for the Facsimile User Instructions. The grant of a telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Spark has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Spark, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Spark's network services.

This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Spark "111" Emergency Service.

This equipment may not provide for the effective hand-over of a call to another device connected to the same line.

This equipment should not be used under any circumstances that may constitute a nuisance to other Spark customers.

This equipment is not capable, under all operating conditions, of correct operation at the higher speeds for which it is designed. Spark will accept no responsibility should difficulties arise in such circumstances.

The decadic (or pulse) dialing on this device is unsuitable for use on the Spark network in New Zealand.

For correct operation, the total of all the Ringer Equivalence Numbers (RENs) of all parallel devices connected to the same telephone line may not exceed 5. The REN of this device is located on the label.

This device uses an RJ-11C modular connector. Contact your point of purchase if a BT adapter is required.

The Lexmark part number is 80D1873.

Some parameters required for compliance with Spark's telepermit requirements are dependent on the equipment associated with this device. The associated equipment shall be set to operate within the following limits for compliance to Spark's specifications:

- There shall be no more than 10 call attempts to the same number within any 30 minute period for any single manual call initiation, and
- The equipment shall go on-hook for a period of not less than 30 seconds between the end of one attempt and the beginning of the next call attempt.
- The equipment shall be set to ensure that automatic calls to different numbers are spaced such that there is not less than 5 seconds between the end of one call attempt and the beginning of another.

## JAPANESE TELECOM NOTICE

The installed optional modem is in compliance with Japanese Telecommunication Law and has been Certified by JATE, with the following Certification Number:

A18-0046001 or A11-0160001JP

|                                                                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
|  | Lexmark International, Inc.  |
|                                                                                   | LEX-M14-002 or LEX-M03-002   |
|                                                                                   | A18-0046001 or A11-0160001JP |

## USING THIS PRODUCT IN SWITZERLAND

This product requires a Swiss billing tone filter (Lexmark part number 80D1877) to be installed on any line which receives metering pulses in Switzerland.

### Utilisation de ce produit en Suisse

Cet appareil nécessite l'utilisation d'un filtre de tonalité de facturation suisse (n° de référence Lexmark : 80D1877) devant être installé sur toute ligne recevant des impulsions de comptage en Suisse.

### Verwendung dieses Produkts in der Schweiz

Für dieses Produkt muss ein schweizerischer Billing Tone Filter zur Zählzeichenübertragung (Lexmark Teilenummer 80D1877) für jede Leitung installiert werden, über die in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte übertragen werden.

### Uso del prodotto in Svizzera

Questo prodotto richiede un filtro toni Billing svizzero, (codice Lexmark 80D1877) da installare su tutte le linee che ricevono impulsi remoti in Svizzera.

## Notices for wireless products

### REGULATORY NOTICES FOR WIRELESS PRODUCTS

This section contains regulatory information that applies only to wireless models.

If in doubt as to whether your model is a wireless model, then see the "Wireless support" section or go to <https://support.xerox.com/>.

### MODULAR COMPONENT NOTICE

Wireless models contain one of the following modular components:

AzureWave Technologies, Inc. Regulatory Type/Model Number AW-CM267NF; FCC ID:TLZ-CM267NF; IC:6100A-CM267NF

AzureWave AW-CM467-SUR; FCC ID:TLZ-CM467; IC:6100A-CM467

Lexmark Regulatory Type/Model Number LEX-M08-001; FCC ID:IYLLLEXM08001; IC:2376A-LEXM08001

To determine which modular components are installed in your particular product, refer to the labeling on your actual product.



## EXPOSURE TO RADIO FREQUENCY RADIATION

The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

## INNOVATION, SCIENCE AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT CANADA

This device complies with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada license-exempt RSS standards. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

### Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada

Cet appareil est conforme aux normes RSS exemptes de licence d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) cet appareil ne doit pas causer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toutes les interférences, y compris les celles qui peuvent entraîner un fonctionnement indésirable.

## SINGAPORE IMDA STATEMENT

This product is approved for use in Singapore.



## EUROPEAN COMMUNITY (EC) DIRECTIVES CONFORMITY

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directive 2014/53/EU on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to radio equipment. A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Manufacturer or may be obtained at <https://safety sheets.business.xerox.com/>. Compliance is indicated by the CE marking:



### Restrictions

This radio equipment is restricted to indoor use only. Outdoor use is prohibited. This restriction applies to all the countries listed in the table below:



|    |    |    |    |    |         |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|---------|----|----|----|
| AT | BE | BG | CH | CY | CZ      | DE | DK | EE |
| EL | ES | FI | FR | HR | HU      | IE | IS | IT |
| LI | LT | LU | LV | MT | NL      | NO | PL | PT |
| RO | SE | SI | SK | TR | UK (NI) |    |    |    |

### EU and other countries statement of radio transmitter operational frequency bands and maximum RF power

This radio product transmits in either the 2.4GHz (2.412–2.472GHz in the EU) or 5GHz (5.15–5.35, 5.47–5.725GHz in the EU) bands. The maximum transmitter EIRP power output, including antenna gain, is  $\leq$  20dBm for both bands.

### UNITED KINGDOM (UK) CONFORMITY

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of the Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. A declaration of conformity is available upon request from the UK Importer or may be obtained at <https://safetysheets.business.xerox.com>.

Compliance is indicated by the UKCA marking:



### Restrictions or requirements in the UK

This radio equipment is restricted to indoor use only. Outdoor use is prohibited.

### UK statement of radio transmitter operational frequency bands and maximum RF power

This radio product transmits in either the 2.4GHz (2.412–2.472 GHz in the UK) or 5GHz (5.15–5.35, 5.47–5.725 in the UK) bands. The maximum transmitter EIRP power output, including antenna gain, is  $\leq$  20dBm for both bands.

### NOTICE TO USERS IN THAILAND

#### ประกาศถึงผู้ใช้ในประเทศไทย

This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.

เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด



เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้  
รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม  
หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช.  
เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุ  
คมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาต  
วิทยุคมนาคมตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม  
พ.ศ. 2498



**กสทช.** | โทรคมนาคม  
กำกับดูแลเพื่อประชาชน  
Call Center 1200 (InsWรี)

## Class B device notices

### FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION (FCC) COMPLIANCE INFORMATION STATEMENT

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class B limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult your point of purchase or service representative for additional suggestions.

The manufacturer is not responsible for radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

### Notes

To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class B computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

Any questions regarding this compliance information statement should be directed to:  
Responsible Party: Xerox Corporation

Address: 800 Phillips Road, Webster, NY 14580

Email: [regulatory@lexmark.com](mailto:regulatory@lexmark.com)

## **INNOVATION, SCIENCE AND ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT CANADA COMPLIANCE STATEMENT**

This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

### **Avis de conformité aux normes de l'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada**

Cet appareil numérique de classe B est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

## **EUROPEAN COMMUNITY (EC) DIRECTIVES CONFORMITY**

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2014/30/EU, 2014/35/EU, 2009/125/EC, and 2011/65/EU as amended by (EU) 2015/863 on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits, the ecodesign of energy-related products, and on the restrictions of use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment.

A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Manufacturer or may be obtained at <https://safety sheets.business.xerox.com/>.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of EN 55032 and safety requirements of EN 62368-1.

## **UNITED KINGDOM (UK) CONFORMITY**

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of the Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations 2016, the Electrical Equipment (Safety) Regulations 2016, the Ecodesign for Energy-Related Products and Energy Information (Amendment) (EU Exit) Regulations 2019, and the Restriction of the Use of Certain Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Equipment Regulations 2012.

A declaration of conformity is available upon request from the UK Importer or may be obtained at <https://safety sheets.business.xerox.com/>.

This product satisfies the Class B limits of BS EN 55032 and safety requirements of BS EN 62368-1.

## **COMMISSION REGULATION (EU) 2023/826**

As part of this regulation, manufacturers are required to post information about the Off modes and Network Standby ("sleep") modes of products, including the available network connections, the power consumption in sleep mode for each connection and the default timeout to sleep mode.

To view Xerox's declarations of product sleep modes, go to <https://safety sheets.business.xerox.com/>.

## Other regulatory notices

### STATIC SENSITIVITY NOTICE



This symbol identifies static-sensitive parts. Do not touch the areas near these symbols without first touching a metal surface in an area away from the symbol.

To prevent damage from electrostatic discharge when performing maintenance tasks such as clearing paper jams or replacing supplies, touch any exposed metal frame of the printer before accessing or touching interior areas of the printer even if the symbol is not present.

### APPLICABILITY OF REGULATION (EU) 2019/2015 AND (EU) 2019/2020

Per Commission Regulation (EU) 2019/2015 and (EU) 2019/2020, the light source contained within this product or its component is intended to be used for Image Capture or Image Projection only, and is not intended for use in other applications.

### THE UK PRODUCT SECURITY AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS INFRASTRUCTURE ACT 2022 (PSTI ACT)—SUMMARY STATEMENT OF COMPLIANCE

Xerox Corporation, 800 Phillips Road Webster, NY 14580 USA, declares that this product complies with the applicable security requirements in Schedule 1 of The Product Security and Telecommunications Infrastructure (Security Requirements for Relevant Connectable Products) Regulations 2023. The defined support period for this product is a period of five (5) years post ceasing of production, unless otherwise notified to the market by Xerox Corporation.

A copy of the Statement of Compliance is available for download at the following web page: <https://safetysheets.business.xerox.com/>.

### THE AUSTRALIA SECURITY STANDARD FOR CONSUMER GRADE RELEVANT PRODUCTS—SUMMARY STATEMENT OF COMPLIANCE

Xerox Corporation, 800 Phillips Road Webster, NY 14580 USA, declares that this product complies with the applicable security requirements of Part 1 of Schedule 1 of the Cyber Security (Security Standards for Smart Devices) Rules 2025. The defined support period for this product is a period of five (5) years post ceasing of production, unless otherwise notified to the market by Xerox Corporation.

A copy of the Statement of Compliance is available for download at the following web page: <https://safetysheets.business.xerox.com/>.

### THAILAND NBTC TECHNICAL STANDARDS CONFORMITY STATEMENT

คำประกาศเรื่องการเป็นไปตามมาตรฐานทางเทคนิคของ กสทช. ประเทศไทย

This telecommunication equipment conforms to the technical standards or requirements of NBTC. เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้มีความสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานหรือข้อกำหนดทางเทคนิคของ กสทช.

